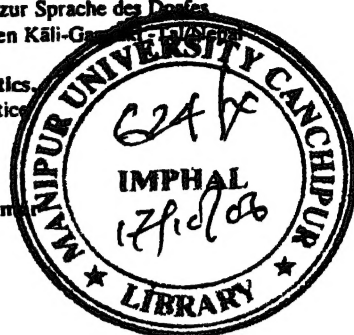


Manipuri Grammar

DNS Bhat & MS Ningomba

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| 01 KAREN EBERT | A Grammar of Athpare |
| 02 STEFAN GEORG | Marphatan Thakali
Untersuchungen zur Sprache des Doxfes
Marpha im Oberen Kāli-Gebeir |
| 03 TSUTOMU AKAMATSU | Japanese Phonetics
Theory and Practice |
| 04 D.N.S. BHAT
& M.S. NINGOMBA | Manipuri Grammar |
- forthcoming :*
- | | |
|------------------------|--|
| 05 SIEW-YUB KILLINGLEY | Learning to Read Pinyin Romanization
and its Equivalent in Wade-Giles:
A Practical Course for Students of Chinese |
| 06 JOHN M. PETERSON | Grammatical Relations in Pāli and
the Emergence of Ergativity in Indo-Aryan |
| 07 BARBARA NIEDERER | Les langues Hmong-Mjen (Miáo-Yáo).
Phonologie historique |
| 10 FRANK F. LI | The Rise and Development of Verb
Compounding in Chinese:
A Historical and Grammaticalization Perspective
with Cross-Linguistic Implications |
| 12 DUCK-YOUNG LEE | Korean Phonology.
A Principle-based Approach |
| 21 GEOFFREY HAIG | Turkish syntax.
A functional-typological approach |
| 25 HEINRICH WERNER | Probleme der Wortbildung
in den Jenissej-Sprachen |



Manipuri Grammar

D.N.S Bhat & M.S. Ningomba

LINCOM Studies in Asian Linguistics 04

4S1739
11. 6. 23

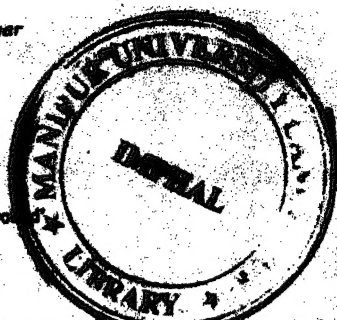
**1997
LINCOM EUROPA
München - Newcastle**

English spelling

ph	'ugly'
fu	'be transparent'
lam	'be left out'
ten	'top'
am	'dream'
phm	'to pump'

Level

th	'search'
ih	'be deep'
lem	'be grave'
thn	'be humble'
ma'g	'cremation ground'
hnm	'go ahead'



11. Distribution of sounds

There are certain important restrictions which affect the distribution of the above mentioned sounds. Some of these restrictions have to do with the morphophonemic changes which affect roots and affixes when they are brought together in compounds and inflected forms of words, whereas others represent merely the arbitrary limitations of the phonetic system. We would be describing most of the former type of restrictions in detail under different headings later on in this chapter, but some of the more general distributional characteristics, especially of the latter type, would be described in the present section.

11.1 The voiced stops *b, d, t* and *p* and the aspirated voiced and voiceless stops *bh, dh, jh, gh* and *ph, th*, respectively have been found to occur only in the syllable-initial position.

The absence of syllable-final voiced consonants in the language has an interesting effect upon the pronunciation of English words by the speakers of Manipuri: words such as *bad, bag, flag, seed, cab*, etc. are generally heard with a final voiceless sound.

11.2 The consonants *m, n, c* and *h* also do not occur in the syllable-final position. There are a few borrowed words, however, such as *hau* 'house', *polis* 'police' and *klas* 'class' in which the fricative *s* occurs in the syllable-final position.

Syllable-final *l* and *n* vary freely in the word-final position. Word-medially also, they are related by morphophonemic alternations, as we would be pointing out later on (2.6.5) in this chapter.

11.3 The consonant *r* is found in the word-initial position also, occurring mainly in loan words like *rag* 'color', *ra* 'kind of dappled cow-juice', etc. However, it is quite frequent word-medially as a syllable-initial consonant, especially after vowels and semivowels. Morphophonemically *r* is related to *l* in this position as we will be pointing out later on in this chapter (2.6.2).

11.4 There are a few word-initial consonant clusters, all having the semivowel *w* as the second member. We have noticed the following clusters of this variety:

clusters

examples

kw	kwa	'betel nut'
khw	khwa	'waist'
gw	gwa	'name of a river'
sw	swa	'here'

In addition to these, there are also a few initial clusters having the lateral *l* or the semivowel *y* as the second member, occurring in loan words such as the following: *plen* 'plane', *phlek* 'flag', *glas* 'glass', *gyas* 'gas'.

Words containing other initial clusters such as *sk*, *sp*, *st*, etc. are borrowed into the language with an initial vowel *i* added to them as in *tsen* 'stand', *isport* 'sport' etc. 'school' etc. Word-final clusters, on the other hand, are reduced through the loss of one of the consonants as in *ben* 'best', *ben* 'hand' etc. This topic needs to be studied in greater detail.

2.2.5 Most of the word-medial two-consonant clusters have a syllabic division occurring between them. This division generally coincides with a morphemic division. We can group these two-consonant clusters into four main classes depending upon whether the first member of the cluster is (a) a voiceless stop (*p*, *t* or *k*), (b) a nasal (*m*, *n*, or *ŋ*), (c) the lateral *l*, (d) a semivowel (*w* or *y*) and (e) the trill *r*.

(a) Voiceless stops provide fifteen clusters each, with the second consonant being (i) a voiceless stop (unaspirated or aspirated), (ii) nasal, (iii) semivowel, (iv) fricative, or (v) lateral. However, the stop + *h* clusters show contrast with the corresponding aspirated stops in the case of *t* and *k* only but not in that of *p*. That is, *t-h* and *k-h* (with an intervening syllabic boundary) are distinct from *th* and *kh*, but *p-h* is non-different from *ph* (see 2.7.2 for details).

(b) Nasals provide nineteen clusters each with the four voiced stops providing four additional clusters (as compared to the previous set). However in the case of the nasal *n*, the second member cannot be the lateral *l* or the fricative *h* because in these two contexts, the nasal would be changed into *l* (see 2.8.5).

(c) The lateral *l* provides only three clusters namely *ll*, *lh* and *ls*.

(d) Semivowels also provide nineteen clusters each, but these differ from the ones containing an initial nasal (set b) in that the place of the lateral *l* as the second member has been taken over by the trill *r*. This difference is actually due to a morphophonemic change which replaces *l* by *r* in this position (see 2.8.2).

(e) There is a single cluster with *r* as the first element occurring in the word *morphu* 'eighty'. This has apparently resulted from the loss of the vowel *i* as found in the word *maru* 'four' (cf. *naphu* 'fifty').

(f) Loan words provide a few additional medial clusters such as *st* as in *baste* 'on the bus', *sk* as in *baski* 'of the bus' and *sp* as in *isprun* 'spring'.

2.2.6 There are also a few word-medial two-consonant clusters, ending in *r* or *w*, which have a syllabic division occurring in front of them but not between their two consonants. Of these, the clusters having the trill *r* as the second element have resulted from the loss of an intervening *ə*. Some of these words remain the vowel *ə* in dialects and also in old Manipuri texts.

There is also a morphophonemic rule by which the vowel *ə* gets deleted in the use of certain suffixes like the infinitive *ba* and the negative *da* when these are followed by suffixes with an initial *r*; this rule also gives rise to medial clusters of the above type.

It has been reported that this morphophonemic rule of *ə* deletion is absent in certain dialects of Manipuri such as Kwatha (Raghumani 1986).

2.2.7 All the word-medial three-consonant clusters that have *r* as their third consonant have resulted from the loss of the vowel *ə* that had occurred immediately before the trill. That is, they resulted from the same kind of change that has given rise to two-consonant clusters having *r* as the second consonant (mentioned above) (2.2.5). We have noticed a few additional consonants, namely *h*, *sk*, *m*, *c*, *h*, *p* and *s*, occurring before the trill in these clusters. Examples *cimbroy* 'peach', *himbroy* 'dirty', *magbroy* 'small pitcher', *apbroy* 'lemon', *həjrag* 'kitchen knife' (see also 2.10 below).

Published by LINCOM EUROPA, München, Newcastle, 1997.

All correspondence concerning *LINCOM Studies in Asian Linguistics* should be addressed to:

**LINCOM EUROPA, Paul-Preuss-Str. 25, D-80995 München, Germany.
LINCOM.EUROPA@t-online.de**

<http://home.t-online.de/home/LINCOM.EUROPA>

All rights reserved, including the rights of translation into any foreign language and the publication on electronic and printed media. No part of this book may be reproduced and distributed in any way without the permission of the publisher.

Printed in Germany

Die Deutsche Bibliothek - CIP-Einheitsaufnahme

Shankara Bhat, Darbhe N.:

Manipuri grammar / Bhat, D.N.S. & Ningomba, M.S. - München

[i.e.] Unterschleißheim : Newcastle : LINCOM Europa, 1997

(Linguistic studies in Asian linguistics ; 04)

ISBN 3-89586-191-X

PREFACE

We have been working together on this *Manipuri Grammar*, off and on, for the past thirty years. We are now happy that we have brought this to a conclusion, and the book is being published, even though there are still innumerable points on which we would very much like to make further inquiry.

Initial work on this grammar was done by us way back in the sixties when Ningomba came to Deccan College, Pune, in order to carry out a contrastive study of Manipuri and Hindi. Much serious work was done, however, only later in the eighties when Bhat joined the Department of Manipuri (of Manipur University, Imphal) and worked there for three years. Ningomba was already working in the department and hence a detailed study of the language could be undertaken by us. The writing of the grammar was completed in 1995 when Ningomba came to CIIL, Mysore, where Bhat was working, for a few weeks.

In view of this long history of this endeavour, it is rather difficult to name all the persons to whom we wish to acknowledge our indebtedness. We must, however, mention Dr. S.M.Katre, who was the Director of Deccan College in the sixties, Prof. K.J.Mahale, who was the Vice-Chancellor of Manipur University and Dr.E.Annamalai, who was the Director of CIIL, Mysore, as all these scholars had special interest in research and gave all possible (and sometimes even impossible) help. We very sincerely thank them all. In addition to this, both of us wish to acknowledge our indebtedness to Dr. H.S.Biligiri who, unfortunately, is no more with us to see this final outcome.

We have benefited from our discussions with our teachers, colleagues and students in all these three places. We wish to thank them all even though we cannot name them individually. The final draft and also the camera-ready copy of the book was prepared in July 1997 by Bhat at the Linguistic Department of Antwerp University (Belgium), thanks to the kind invitation of Prof. Johan van der Auwera to Bhat to spend six months as a Visiting Scholar. We are thankful to Prof. van der Auwera and also to the Research Council, and to the India Study Centre, of Antwerp University for supporting this work.

ABBREVIATIONS

Acc	Accusative <i>bu</i>	Gen	Genitive <i>gi</i>
Adv	Adverbial <i>no</i>	Hab	Habitual <i>gan</i>
Ben	Benefactive <i>bi</i>	Imp	Imperative <i>lu</i>
Com	Complementizer <i>khu, mo</i>	Inf	Infinitive <i>bo</i>
Compl	Completive <i>lam</i>	Loc	Locative <i>do</i>
Con	Concessive <i>si</i>	Neg	Negative <i>de</i>
Cond	Conditional <i>di</i>	NFNg	Nfu Neg <i>de</i>
Conj	Conjunctive <i>go</i>	Nom	Nominative <i>no</i>
Cop	Copula <i>ni</i>	Ord	Ordinal <i>ni</i>
Cs	Causative <i>han</i>	Perf	Perfect <i>le</i>
Dei1	Deictic <i>lo</i>	Pers	Persuasive <i>lo</i>
Dei2	Deictic <i>lu</i>	Pl	Plural <i>sin</i>
Dei3	Deictic <i>lok</i>	Prog	Progressive <i>khi</i>
Dei4	Deictic <i>khi</i>	Proh	Prohibitive <i>ganu</i>
Des	Desiderative <i>ge</i>	Pur	Purposive <i>no</i>
Dur	Durative <i>ti</i>	Q	Question <i>ro</i>
Emph	Emphatic <i>da, di, mak</i>	Rec	Reciprocal <i>no</i>
Fng	Fu Neg <i>lov</i>	Ref	Reflexive <i>jo</i>
Fu	Future <i>gani</i>		

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Preface	iii
List of Abbreviations	iv
<hr/>	
1 Introduction	1
<hr/>	
2 Phonology	4
2.1 Inventory of sounds	4
2.2 Distribution of sounds	6
2.3 Vowel length	8
2.4 Palatalization	9
2.5 Release of stops	9
2.6 Voicing of stops and affricates	10
2.7 Aspiration	12
2.8 Changes in the lateral	14
2.9 Insertion of glides	16
2.10 Deletion of <i>ə</i>	18
2.11 Some additional changes	19
2.12 Relevance of the syllable	20
<hr/>	
3 Word-formation	22
3.1 Introduction	22
3.2 Morphophonemic changes	23
3.3 Structure of compounds	24
3.4 Right-headed endocentric compounds	26
3.5 Left-headed compounds	29
3.6 Exocentric compounds	31
3.7 Co-ordinate compounds	33
3.8 Compounds with three constituent elements	34
3.9 Other derivational processes	37
<hr/>	
4 Sentence structure	39
4.1 Category distinctions	39
4.1.1 <i>Nouns and verbs</i>	40
4.1.2 <i>Identifying adjectives with verbs</i>	41
4.1.3 <i>Absence of an adverbial category</i>	45
4.2 Sentence types	47
4.2.1 <i>Nominal sentences</i>	47
4.2.2 <i>Verbal sentences</i>	50
4.2.3 <i>Case sentences</i>	52

4.3 Grammatical relations	54
4.4 Notion of transitivity	56
4.5 Notion of external argument	60
4.6 word order typology	63
<hr/>	
5 Nominal category	65
5.1 Type of nouns	65
5.2 Common nouns	65
5.2.1 Formative suffixes	
5.2.2 Compound words	
5.3 Pronouns	
5.4 Wh-words	73
5.4.1 Analysis of wh-words	73
5.4.2 Indefinite pronouns	78
5.5 Numerals	84
5.6 Kinship terms	87
5.7 Location and time markers	90
5.8 Nominal inflection	95
<hr/>	
6 Use of case suffixes	98
6.1 Introduction	98
6.2 Morphophonemic changes	100
6.3 Distribution	101
6.4 Use of the nominative suffix	102
6.4.1 Denoting the controller of actions and causations	103
6.4.2 Denoting instrument, material, medium and means	104
6.4.3 Postulation of two distinct cases	105
6.4.4 Restrictions on co-occurrence	108
6.5 Use of the accusative suffix	110
6.6 Use of the locative suffix	115
6.6.1 Introduction	115
6.6.2 Denoting the location proper	115
6.6.3 Denoting the affected object	119
6.6.4 Denoting the instrument or cause	122
6.6.5 Restrictions on co-occurrence	124
6.7 Use of the genitive suffix	125
6.7.1 Use for relating two arguments	125
6.7.2 Use as a case marker	130
6.7.3 Denoting beneficiary	130
6.7.4 Use with an infinitive	131
6.7.5 Denoting source	132
6.8 Use of the conjunctive suffix	133
6.9 Use of unmarked arguments	137
6.9.1 Use for denoting a theme	137
6.9.2 Use in noun-incorporation	138
6.9.3 Use in redundant contexts	139
6.10 Use of case suffixes for denoting pragmatic relations	141
6.10.1 Predictable contexts	142
6.10.2 Generic and habitual	144
6.10.3 Unused contexts	144

7 Verbal category	150
7.1 Sub-grouping of verbs	150
7.2 State verbs	150
7.2.1 Division into semantic groups	150
7.2.2 Division into controllable and non-controllable verbs	155
7.2.3 Differentiating from dynamic verbs	158
7.3 Process verbs	161
7.4 Action verbs	165
7.5 Noun-incorporation	165
7.6 Verbal suffixes	169
8 Directional and deictic distinctions	172
8.1 Introduction	172
8.2 Directional suffixes	173
8.2.1 Meaning of the suffixes	173
8.2.2 Allomorphy	174
8.2.3 Grouping of verbal bases	175
8.2.4 Dynamic verbs unmarked for directionality	175
8.2.5 Dynamic verbs inherently marked for directionality	176
8.2.6 Dynamic verbs which lack directionality	178
8.2.7 Meaning of volitionality	181
8.2.8 Non-dynamic verbs	181
8.2.9 Implicational connotations	184
8.3 Deictic suffixes	185
8.3.1 Meaning of deictic suffixes	185
8.3.2 Allomorphy	187
8.3.4 Event following motion	188
8.3.5 Event preceding motion	189
9 Valency patterns	193
9.1 Introduction	193
9.2 State verbs	196
9.3 Process verbs	204
9.4 Action verbs	207
9.5 Non-core arguments	218
9.6 Variations in valency patterns	218
10 Valency alternations	221
10.1 Introduction	221
10.2 Causative verbs	221
10.2.1 Causatives of action sentences	221
10.2.2 Causatives of state and process sentences	224
10.2.3 Productivity	226
10.2.4 Meaning of permission	227
10.2.5 Analysing as two clauses	227
10.2.6 Distinctions in the causee	228
10.2.7 Causatives with nominalised arguments	230
10.2.8 Notion of hierarchy	231
10.3 Benefactive verbs	231
10.4 Reflexive verbs	234

10.5	Reciprocal verbs	237
10.6	Combinations of valency changing suffixes	239
10.7	Other related processes	241
<hr/>		
11	Tense, aspect and mood	243
11.1	Introduction	243
11.2	Tense distinctions	243
11.2.1	Future indicative suffix	243
11.2.2	Non-future indicative suffix	246
11.2.3	Negative suffixes	248
11.2.4	Other tense-marking suffixes	250
11.2.5	Tense or mood	251
11.3	Aspect distinctions	251
11.3.1	Perfect suffix	251
11.3.2	Completive suffix	254
11.3.3	Durative suffix	257
11.3.4	Progressive suffix	258
11.3.5	Habitual suffix	259
11.3.6	Quantifier suffix	259
11.3.7	Aspectual prefixes	262
11.3.8	Aspectual meaning of spatial suffixes	266
11.3.9	Aspectual meaning of case suffixes	268
11.3.10	Use of aspectual verbs	269
11.4	Modal distinctions	273
11.4.1	Use of modal suffixes	273
11.4.2	Use of modal verbs	274
<hr/>		
12	Modifying constructions	276
12.1	Introduction	276
12.2	Adjectival modifiers	276
12.3	Relative clauses	277
12.3.1	Distinctions in the relativized predicate	279
12.3.2	Distinctions in the coreferential arguments	280
12.3.3	Ambiguity due to loss of case markers	282
12.3.4	Embedding and stacking of relative clauses	283
12.3.5	Use of <i>wh</i> -words	283
12.4	Adverbial modifiers	284
<hr/>		
13	Complementation	290
13.1	Introduction	290
13.2	Sentential complementers	291
13.2.1	Nature of complementizers	291
13.2.2	Changes in the complement	293
13.2.3	Case markers on complementizers	299
13.2.4	Non-specification of complementizers	300
13.2.5	Additional uses of complementizers	301
13.3	Infinitival complementers	302
13.3.1	Types of matrix predicates	304
13.3.2	Sentential distinctions in the complement	306
13.3.3	Case markers on the complements	310
13.3.4	Successive embedding of complements	312

Table of Contents

ix

13.3.5 <i>Other uses of infinitive forms</i>	313
13.3.6 <i>Adverbial complements</i>	316
13.4 <i>Prefixed complements</i>	317
13.5 <i>Compounded complements</i>	319
14 Illocutionary distinctions	
14.1 <i>Introduction</i>	321
14.2 <i>Interrogative sentences</i>	321
14.2.1 <i>Sentential questions</i>	322
14.2.2 <i>Answers to sentential questions</i>	325
14.2.3 <i>Constituent questions</i>	325
14.2.4 <i>Embedded questions and indirect questions</i>	329
14.2.5 <i>Tag questions</i>	331
14.3 <i>Imperative sentences</i>	332
14.3.1 <i>Commands and persuasions</i>	332
14.3.2 <i>Desideratives and concessives</i>	333
14.3.3 <i>Use with other verbal suffixes</i>	334
14.4 <i>Exclamatory sentences</i>	336
References	
Subject Index	338
	340

Chapter 1

INTRODUCTION

1.1 Manipuri (called *Meiteilon* in the language itself) is a Tibeto-Burman language belonging to the Kuki-Chin subgroup. Grierson (1908) considers it to be a link between Kuki-Chin languages and Kachin languages. Shafer (1966) includes it under Kukish section of the Burmic division. Comparative study of this language concerning its relation with neighbouring languages is yet to be undertaken.

1.2 The language is spoken primarily in the valley region of the state of Manipur, India. This state is one of the north-eastern-most states of India, bordering Burma; according to a Manipuri Sahitya Parishad report (1970), its speakers number more than a million, with the state of Manipur having about four hundred thousand speakers, the state of Assam having about one hundred thousand speakers, and Bangladesh and the state of Tripura having fifty and thirty thousand speakers respectively. There are also some additional speakers, according to this report, in the states of Uttar Pradesh and West Bengal.

1.3 As the lingua franca of the state of Manipur, the language is spoken and understood by almost all the speakers of other languages in the state such as Tankhul, Paite, Mizo, Hmar and Kuki. These second language speaker of Manipuri number about nine hundred thousand. It is also understood by several additional speakers as the second language in the bordering countries and states like Burma and Assam.

1.4 The script that is currently being used for writing this language is identical in its symbols with Bengali script. Manipuri had a script of its own, dating back to 15th century A.D., in which several Old Manipuri texts have been rendered. At present only very few scholars can read this script. There is a movement to revive this script at least as a parallel one but for all practical purposes, Bengali script, which replaced the older one in the first quarter of twentieth century, is the script of this language.

While adopting this Bengali script to the language, however, several mistakes have been committed by the scholars as for example in representing the tonal distinctions (tone is irregularly being represented in the script by distinctions like short versus long vowels, with long vowels being used for denoting falling tone, nasals versus anusvara, vowel cluster versus single vowel, etc.), in making use of consonant distinctions which are not needed for Manipuri (Bengali script has 35 consonant symbols while Manipuri needs only 24, but all 35 are being utilized rather inconsistently), and in making use of distinctions in conjoint letters which are not needed for the language. This has created a lot of confusion among the writers, and a lot of spelling problem for the learners. Attempts are now being made to reform the spelling, but as in the case of English spelling reform, these are not making any headway.

1.5 Important literary works of Manipuri start from the seventeenth century; in the pre-British period, these works involved topics like cosmology, genealogy, astrology, rites and rituals, royal chronicles and folk-songs; in the post-British period, short stories, poems, novels and essays took their place; in the modern period, additional types of literary works like dramas, one-act plays and literary criticisms have been produced.

1.6 The language was used for administration from the earliest period: in the period of the British rule, this trend continued, but English was also used side by side; however, Manipuri practically lost its place in the administration after Manipur merged with India in 1949. Attempts are now being made to give greater scope for Manipuri in the administration.

Manipuri is used as an alternative medium of instruction (alternative to English) up to the tenth standard; lack of text-books has made it rather difficult to implement the State Government's and University's decision to use it as a medium of instruction in colleges. Recently, Manipuri has received recognition as one of the National Languages of India.

1.7 The grammar of Manipuri is a fascinating one for the linguist because it shows a number of interesting typological characteristics. There are only two major lexical categories in the language, namely nouns and verbs, with adjectives and adverbs merging rather unrecognizably with verbs; corresponding to this two-fold division of lexical items, inflectional markers also split into two distinct categories, namely nominal and verbal inflections, with exclusive membership.

The absence of adjectives as forming a distinct word-class in this language is correlatable with the absence of nominal (adjectival) modification as a distinct function. Verbal bases occurring in the prenominal or post-nominal position as modifiers are indistinguishable from relative clauses; both have the function of providing presupposed predication (referent-modification) rather than nominal modification (reference-modification). These relative clauses are distinct from nominalizations even though both have the verb changed into an adjective; the former retain the tense distinctions (i.e. they are predicational in nature) whereas the latter do not (they are nominal in nature).

Another interesting characteristic, which is correlatable with this noun-verb dichotomy, occurs in the formation of words and word-forms in this language. The derivation of nouns involves primarily the process of compounding, with monosyllabic bases belonging to the categories of both nouns as well as verbs being utilized for this purpose; nominal forms can also be formed from verbal bases or clauses through the process called nominalization. Verbal forms, on the other hand, do not involve any compounding as such, nominal bases are used in them only through a process called noun-incorporation, which is syntactic rather than derivational. Nouns do not undergo any process of verbalization either in this language.

1.8 Manipuri clearly differentiates between the representations of semantic and pragmatic relations, with case suffixes being used primarily for the former purpose, and word order being used primarily for the latter purpose; that is, case markers are directly related with case roles with practically no grammaticalization involved in their usage; because of this differentiation between semantic and pragmatic roles, there is no need to establish grammatical relations like subject and direct object for describing the sentence structure of this language.

Further, the language makes use of a division of verbs into states, processes and actions while establishing its sentence-structure; this division cuts across the transitive-intransitive distinction, with the latter playing only a minor role in the morphosyntax of this language. There are several contexts in which the two conflict with one another, and in all such contexts, the language favors the former division. This characteristic makes it impossible to establish grammatical notions like subject in this language, notice that these latter notions are dependent upon the transitive-intransitive distinction.

1.9 The occurrence of a direct relationship between case markers and case roles has made it possible for the language to show a lot of variation in the valency structure of its verbs, it allows a lot of freedom for its speakers to use case markers with arguments, an actor can be represented as a patient (i.e. with the

accusative suffix) if external pressure forces him not to act, a patient can be represented as a location (with the locative suffix) if it can be perceived as being the location of the effect of an event, an instrument or means can be viewed as a location if the event can be seen as occurring on it or in it, and so on. In addition to this, the valency structure of verbs can also be altered by adding suffixes like the causative, reflexive and benefactive to them.

1.10 We may consider Manipuri to be a non-configurational language, concepts like c-command subadjacency, movement etc. which constrain the morphosyntactic rules of configurational languages find no place in the structure of its sentences. The notion of external argument cannot also be established in this language because the various core arguments occurring in a sentence are treated uniformly by its morphosyntactic rules.

1.11 Manipuri is different from most of the Tibeto-Burman languages in giving greater prominence to tense than to mood, the basic distinction among verbal forms is between future and non future hence this distinction occurs in the case of affirmative as well as negative sentences, it is maintained in relative clauses but not in nominalizations.

It is similar to other Tibeto-Burman languages, on the other hand in having a complex system of spatial markers that can be attached to its verbs. There is a set of four directional markers ('up', 'down', 'in' and 'out') and another set of four deictic markers that can be attached to the verb, the latter denote the location of an event or characteristic with reference to the location of the speaker.

1.12 Traditional grammars of Manipuri which form the bases of school text-books, have been highly influenced by Sanskrit and Bengali grammars. They generally fail to bring out most of the salient features of this language. Recently, there have been several attempts to describe the various aspects of this language primarily as part of a M.Phil or Ph.D. program. These have been based upon different models of modern linguistics. These attempts have helped us to understand a lot about the nature of Manipuri language.

The present attempt is to write a comprehensive *reference grammar* of Manipuri. We have kept theoretical discussions to a minimum and have tried to provide factual information about the structure of this language with copious examples illustrating each statement. The examples (mostly sentences) are also provided with grammatical and free translations making it easy to follow any given section without any need to look for other sections for clarification. We have also provided frequent cross references for easy access to sections that deal with related topics.

It is hoped that this easy accessibility of this grammar would be appreciated by typologists and its attempt to be comprehensive would be made use of by researchers in exposing its lacuna, and thereby helping us to achieve a greater understanding of this fascinating grammar.

Chapter 2

PHONOLOGY

2.1 Inventories of sounds

'Manipuri makes use of six vowels, twenty consonants and a two fold distinction of tone in its sound system as shown below.

Vowels

i	e	ə	u
e		a	o

Consonants

p	t	c	k
ph	th		kh
b	d	j	g
m	n		ŋ
w	l	v	
	r		
	s		h

Tones

High falling	unmarked
Level	

We can illustrate the contrasts expressed by these sounds with the help of the following sets of words

2.1.1 Vowels

mun(ne)	'together'	mun	'be ripe
men	'stop (a leak)'	mon	'be unusually slow
mon	'be old'	man	'be similar

2.1.2 Consonants

pa	'read'	pha	'catch
ta	'hear'	tha	'send'
ka	climb	lha	'be bitter
ca	eat	sa	be hot

ma	'grope'	na	'be ill'
ŋa	'fish'	hat	'kill'
wa	'bamboo'	ya	'agree'
ɾn	'zinc'	la	'bright'

2.1.3 The voiced stops *b d ɟ* are rather rare in the word-initial position. Their contrast with the corresponding voiceless stops in this position can be shown only with the help of certain borrowed words such as *bon* 'hill', *duken* 'shop', *jaŋgəl* 'forest' and *gom* 'gum'. Initial *ɟ* also occurs in the native word *jəŋm* 'dance'.

However, they are quite frequent medially in the syllable initial position. Historically these have resulted from the voicing of the corresponding voiceless stops (see 2.6 below) but because of the fact that the concerned changes have been rather irregular, especially in the case of compound words, one can easily find several instances of contrast between voiced and voiceless stops in this position (see 2.6.4 for additional examples).

Examples

thum pak	'salt cake'	khəŋ bak	'foot'
səŋ təp	'portico'	khu-dup	'cubit'
həy kən	'orchard'	phəy gen	'thigh'
tha kən	'canopy'	thi-gun	'anus'
mi cəy	'curse'	mi-jaw	'big man'

2.1.4 The contrast between *ɾ* and *l* is also of a similar type in that (i) in the word-initial and word-final positions *ɾ* occurs rather rarely and that too in certain borrowed items such as *ɾaŋ* 'zinc' and *har* 'manure' and (ii) in the word-medial position its occurrence is primarily due to the change of syllable-initial *l* to *ɾ* after vowels and semivowels.

Unlike the voicing of consonants, however, this change of *l* to *ɾ* is very regular even in the case of compounds. But the loss of *ə* medially in certain specific contexts (see 2.10 below) has brought these two sounds into a contrasting position in several instances such as the following:

cəŋm	'four hundred'	ləmlem	'unused land'
cəkɪ	'argument'	cəklem	'left out rice'
cəmpɾa	'lemon'	kəplək	'back of knee'
ləymɾm	'name of a place'	səmlaŋ	'hair'

2.1.5 In addition to the consonants mentioned above, the language makes use of four aspirated voiced stops, namely *bh dh ɟh* and *gh*. The occurrence of these consonants, however, is restricted to certain loan words such as *bhui* 'ghost', *dhon* 'drum (musical instrument)', *ɟhal* 'cymbal' and *ghari* 'wrist watch'.

2.1.6 Tonal contrast

Manipuri shows a two-fold tonal contrast between high falling (which we have left unmarked) and level (which we have marked as */H/*). The tonal distinction, however, appears to be maintained rather irregularly except in those instances in which it is minimally contrastive. We have generally left this distinction unmarked in this grammar except in those instances in which its marking is semantically relevant in the context concerned. The following pairs of words exemplify the contrast between these two tones for the various vowels:

High-falling

thi	'ugly'
lu	'be transparent'
lem	'he left out'
ton	'top'
məŋ	'dream'
han	'to pump'

Level

thi	'search'
lu	'be deep'
lēm	'be grave'
tōn	'be humble'
məŋ	'cremation ground'
hàn	'go ahead'

2.2 Distribution of sounds

There are certain important restrictions which affect the distribution of the above-mentioned sounds. Some of these restrictions have resulted from morphophonemic changes which affect roots and affixes when they are brought together in compounds and inflected forms of words, whereas others represent merely the distributional characteristics of these sounds. We would be describing most of the former type of restrictions in detail under different headings later on in this chapter, but some of the more general distributional characteristics, especially of the latter type, would be described in the present section.

2.2.1 The voiced stops *b, d, j* and *g*, and the aspirated voiced and voiceless stops *bh, dh, jh, gh* and *ph, th, kh* respectively have been found to occur only in the syllable-initial position.

The absence of syllable-final voiced consonants in the language has an interesting effect upon the pronunciation of English words by the speakers of Manipuri: words such as *bad, bag, flag, seed, cab*, etc. are generally heard with a final voiceless sound.

2.2.2 The consonants *r, s, c* and *h* also do not occur in the syllable-final position. There are a few borrowed words, however, such as *bag*, 'bus', *pulis* 'police' and *klas* 'class' in which the fricative *s* occurs in the syllable-final position.

Syllable-final *l* and *n* vary freely in the word-final position. Word-medially also, they are related by morphophonemic alternations, as we would be pointing out later on (2.6.5) in this chapter.

2.2.3 The consonant *r* is rare in the word-initial position also, occurring mainly in loan words like *raŋ* 'color', *ras* 'kind of dance', *ras* 'juice', etc. However, it is quite frequent word-medially as a syllable-initial consonant, especially after vowels and semivowels. Morphophonemically *r* is related to *l* in this position as we will be pointing out later on in this chapter (2.6.2).

2.2.4 There are a few word-initial consonant clusters, all having the semivowel *w* as the second member. We have noticed the following clusters of this variety:

clusters

k
w
khw
gw
sw

examples

kwa 'betel nut'
khwāŋ 'waist'
gway 'name of a river'
swayde 'here'

In addition to these, there are also a few initial clusters having the lateral *l* or the semivowel *y* as the second member, occurring in loan words such as the following: *plen* 'plane', *phlek* 'flag', *glas* 'glass', *gyas* 'gas'.

Words containing other initial clusters such as *sk*, *sp*, *st*, etc. are borrowed into the language with an initial vowel *i* added to them as in *isten* 'stand', *isport* 'sport' *iskul* 'school' etc. Word-final clusters, on the other hand, are reduced through the loss of one of the consonants as in *bes* 'best', *ben* 'band' etc. This topic needs to be studied in greater detail.

2.2.5 Most of the word-medial two-consonant clusters have a syllabic division occurring between them. This division generally coincides with a morphemic division. We can group these two-consonant clusters into four main classes depending upon whether the first member of the cluster is (a) a voiceless stop (*p*, *t*, or *k*), (b) a nasal (*m*, *n*, or *ŋ*), (c) the lateral *l*, (d) a semivowel (*w* or *y*) and (e) the trill *r*.

(a) Voiceless stops provide fifteen clusters each, with the second consonant being (i) a voiceless stop (unaspirated or aspirated), (ii) nasal, (iii) semivowel, (iv) fricative, or (v) lateral. However, the stop + *h* clusters show contrast with the corresponding aspirated stops in the case of *t* and *k* only but not in that of *p*. That is, *t-h* and *k-h* (with an intervening syllabic boundary) are distinct from *th* and *kh*, but *p-h* is non-different from *ph* (see 2.7.2. for details).

(b) Nasals provide nineteen clusters each, with the four voiced stops providing four additional clusters (as compared to the previous set). However, in the case of the nasal *n*, the second member cannot be the lateral *l* or the fricative *h* because in these two contexts, the nasal would be changed into *l* (see 2.8.5).

(c) The lateral *l* provides only three clusters, namely *ll*, *lh* and *ls*.

(d) Semivowels also provide nineteen clusters each, but these differ from the ones containing an initial nasal (set b) in that the place of the lateral *l* as the second member has been taken over by the trill *r*. This difference is actually due to a morphophonemic change which replaces *l* by *r* in this position (see 2.8.2.).

(e) There is a single cluster with *r* as the first element, occurring in the word *morphu* 'eighty'. This has apparently resulted from the loss of the vowel *i* as found in the word *marī* 'four' (cf. *niphu* 'forty').

(f) Loan words provide a few additional medial clusters such as *st* as in *bæstə* 'on the bus', *sk* as in *bæski* 'of the bus', and *sp* as in *isprin* 'spring'.

2.2.6 There are also a few word-medial two-consonant clusters, ending in *r* or *w*, which have a syllabic division occurring in front of them but not between their two consonants. Of these, the clusters having the trill *r* as the second element have resulted from the loss of an intervening *ə*. Some of these words retain the vowel *ə* in dialects and also in old Manipuri texts.

There is also a morphophonemic rule by which the vowel *ə* gets deleted in the use of certain suffixes like the infinitive *bə* and the negative *də* when these are followed by suffixes with an initial *r*; this rule also gives rise to medial clusters of the above type.

It has been reported that this morphophonemic rule of *ə* deletion is absent in certain dialects of Manipuri such as Kwatha (Raghumani 1986).

2.2.7 All the word-medial three-consonant clusters that have *r* as their third consonant have resulted from the loss of the vowel *ə* that had occurred immediately before the trill. That is, they resulted from the same kind of change that has given rise to two-consonant clusters having *r* as the second consonant mentioned above (2.2.5). We have noticed a few additional consonants, namely *b*, *rh*, *m*, *c*, *j*, *p*, and *s* occurring before the trill in these clusters. Examples: *cumbəɽəy* 'peach', *kunthra* 'thirty', *nugɽeg* 'small pebble', *campɽa* 'lemon', *həyɽɽəg* 'kitchen knife' (see also 2.10 below).

2.2.8 Vowels occur only as syllable-peaks in this language. All of them can occur without a coda, and all except *e* can occur without an onset. Only a single vowel can occur in a given syllable, and the peaks of two adjacent syllables are always separated by an onset or a coda (or both).

2.2.9 There do not appear to be any restrictions regarding the co-occurrence of the two tones, high falling and level. Either of these can be preceded or followed by the other, or by themselves. Examples: *ləmpak* 'lawn', *lokčw* 'big stream', *wəkə* 'complaint', *khühəin* 'sacred place'.

However, a tendency to assimilate to the following syllable is shown rather irregularly by some roots in the case of compounding. Examples:

cak	'cooked rice'		
kà	'be burnt'	cəga	'scorched rice'
thà	'month'		
khay	'saw'	thakhay	'fortnight'
ò	'wood'		
kek	'cut'	ukək	'log of wood'

The change is more regular in the case of the pronominal prefixes *i*, *nə* and *mə* occurring before certain terms of kinship, body parts and of other closely associated objects and entities. These prefixes have been found to assimilate with the following root as far as their tone is concerned. Examples:

ipa	'my father'	lpà	'my opponent'
imay	'my face'	lnày	'my servant'
merol	'his language'	mə'ràn	'his fault'
məmaŋ	'his front part'	mə'məŋ	'his grave'

There are, however, a number of exceptions to this rule as well, as seen in words like *ipàŋ* 'my companion', *imilŋ* 'my name', *məva* 'her husband' (cf. *məvə* 'her word') etc. (see Raghunani 1987).

2.3 Vowel length

Vowel length occurs only non-contrastingly in Manipuri words and sentences. For a statement of its distribution, it is convenient to group the vowels *i*, *ə* and *u* into one class and the rest, namely *e*, *a* and *o* into another class (see Bhat 1967).

The vowels *i*, *ə* and *u* are long when followed by a single consonant and *ə*; they are slightly long word-finally and short elsewhere. The vowels *e*, *a* and *o*, on the other hand, are long not only before a single consonant and *a*, but also in monosyllabic words; they are slightly long in other word-final positions, and also when followed by a single consonant and the vowels other than *a*; they are short elsewhere.

This difference between the above two classes of vowels can be seen clearly in the following pairs of words in which the two sets of vowels are followed by a single consonant and a vowel other than *ə*; in this context, the vowels of the first set (*i*, *ə* and *u*) are short, whereas the vowels of the second set (*e*, *a* and *o*) are slightly long.

Set I (short)

piba	'head of a clan'
məri	'four'
muri	'popped rice'

Set II (slightly long)

tera	'cotton'
yari	'gum'
kori	'copper'

The non-contrastive distinctions that occur in the case of each of these vowels can be illustrated with the help of the following sets of words:

Vowels	long	half-long	short
/i/	sibe 'to die'	mi 'man'	hidak 'medicine'
/e/	phebe 'good'	mago 'with him'	pheklan 'wall'
/u/	phube 'to beat'	ceru 'straw'	cum 'lizard'
/e/	tebe 'to tame'	cade 'didn't eat'	ceŋkup 'bran'
/a/	ka 'room'	yari 'gum'	pambon 'arm'
/o/	kok 'head'	caro 'Eat!'	khoyniŋ 'nightingale'

2.4 Palatalization

The three consonants, *c*, *j* and *s*, show palatalization in two main type of environments, namely (i) initially or medially before the vowels *i* or *u* and (ii) medially after a consonant. The distinctions that result from these changes, however, are only allophonic. Examples:

(i) before *i* or *u*

[meci]	'border'
[mecu]	'colour'
[šube]	'to wash cloth'
[phiʃi]	'border (cloth)'
[iʃiŋ]	'paper'

before other vowels

[meca]	'small'
[ucek]	'bird'
[sokpe]	'to touch'
[cəjet]	'piece of paper'
[meca]	'wing'

(ii) after consonants

[loyʃən]	'court'
[meyʃak]	'burning'
[ləmʃen]	'race'
[unʃa]	'skin'

after vowels

[sasən]	'cattle'
[mica]	'others child'
[sajen]	'exercise'
[usa]	'branch'

2.5 Release of stops

Voiceless stops occurring in the word-final position are generally unreleased in this language. In the word-medial position also, syllable-final and syllable-initial stops are differentiated from one another, especially in the case of the velar stop *k*. When followed by a vowel, this syllable-final stop, unlike its syllable-initial counterpart, is very short, and is heard almost like a glottal stop. We have used a hyphen in order to differentiate between this syllable-final *k* from its syllable-initial (but word-medial) counterpart. Examples.

məku	'skun'	tək-u	'Grind!'
mək-i	'way of being afraid'	mək-i	'It is dim'
hakum	'last year'	lak-u	'Come!'
ukon	'grove'	lok-o	'Harvest!'

2.6 Voicing of stops and affricates

2.6.1 There is clearly a contrast between the voiceless consonants *p, t, c* and *k* on the one hand and the corresponding voiced consonants *b, d, j* and *g* on the other, but there is also a morphophonemic alternation which relates these two sets of consonants with one another.

It is possible that historically voicing was not contrastive in Manipuri in the case of any of these consonants, but the fact that the morphophonemic change of voicing has affected the compounds rather irregularly, and also the fact that borrowings from neighboring languages have introduced voiced stops and affricates into the word-initial position in which only the corresponding voiceless consonants had occurred earlier has made it necessary to regard the above-mentioned consonants to be contrastive for voice.

2.6.2 The morphophonemic alternation which is connected with voice is quite regular in the case of inflectional suffixes. The initial unaspirated stop or affricate of these suffixes gets voiced when preceded by a voiced sound, whereas it remains voiceless when preceded by a voiceless consonant (*p, t, c, k* or *s*).

We have generally regarded suffixes with voiceless initials as being morphophonemically derived from the ones with voiced initials in this grammar (except when the alternation is connected with one of aspirati- on -- see 2.7), because the latter alternants have been found to possess a wider scope of occurrence than the former alternants. However, from a historical point of view it would probably be more proper to regard the latter alternants as being derived from the former ones.

The following pairs of inflected forms, involving the suffixes *gəni* 'future', *də* 'locative', *gi* 'genitive', *də* 'negative' and *hə* 'infinitive', exemplify the occurrence of this voicing alternation:

tum-gəni	'I will sleep'	kup-kəni	'I will cover'
khaw-də	'in the bag'	bas-tə	'in the bus'
tha-gi	'moon's'	yumthək-ki	'roof's'
pu-də	'did not give'	pik-tə	'wasn't small'
phubə	'to beat'	phut-pe	'to boil'

2.6.3 This voicing change has also affected unaspirated stops and affricates that have resulted from the deaspiration of aspirated stops and the affrication of *s* when these were preceded by a syllable containing an initial aspirated stop or a fricative (see the next section (2.7) for details regarding this change). Examples:

khoy-gət	'bend up'	hut-kət	'bore up'
hi-dək	'trim out'	khik-tək	'sprinkle out'
thin-jin	'pierce in'	hut-cin	'bore in'
phu-dək	'beat to deformity'	phək-tek	'pull out to deformity'

2.6.4 However, in the case of compound words, the effect of this voicing change is very irregular and idiosyncratic. When preceded by voiceless consonants, the syllable-initial stops and affricates remain voiceless in all the words that we have examined, but when preceded by voiced sounds (like nasals, semivowels and vowels), these show voicing in some instances, but in others they remain voiceless. Examples

voicing		no voicing	
sa-jet	'behavior'	wa-cet-sel	'bribery'
may-da	'shape of face'	ley-tum	'lump of earth'
ce-jet	'piece of paper'	wa-cet	'spilt bamboo'
pa-bot	'pair'	mi-pal	'eyelid'
paw-jen	'news'	law-kon	'group of paddy field'
ta-don	'tip of spear'	ta-ton	'youngest brother'

It is possible, however, to make certain general statements regarding the occurrence of voicing in these compound words.

(i) When the initial consonant of the preceding syllable is an aspirate or a fricative, we find a voiced stop or affricate more frequently than a voiceless one. There are very few instances in which a voiceless stop or affricate occurs in this context. Examples:

(i) Voicing after a syllable with aspirate or fricative

phi-ji	'border of cloth'	khu-bak	'palm'
thow-dok	'event'	phi-ga	'under garment'
saŋ-gon	'cowshed'	sa-jey	'whip'
haw-jik	'now'	hi-ban	'side of boat'

(ii) When the initial consonant of the preceding syllable is a nasal, lateral or semivowel, or when the preceding syllable is open, voicing is generally absent; however, when this preceding syllable is closed by a nasal, we find voicing, especially if the syllable in which the stop or affricate occurs is also closed by a nasal. Examples:

Absence of voicing

na-kon	'ear'	na-ton	'nose'
mi-kup	'minute'	mi-cem	'layman'
law-ca	'estate'	ley-kon	'land'
ya-ton	'tip of teeth'	wa-pum	'whole bamboo'
u-tup	'leg'	i-ka	'flood water'

Presence of voicing (with nasal closure)

nem-bo	'load'	noŋ-ju	'rainfall'
mon-dum	'pad'	l:n-bən	'fort'
yen-du	'feather (hen)'	yug-gom	'urinal'

(iii) When a syllable ends in a voiceless stop, its initial stop or affricate is more frequently left voiceless than voiced; the latter occurs mainly when the preceding syllable has an initial aspirate or fricative. Examples:

Absence of voicing when closed by a stop

kren-pak	'brass vessel'	ciŋ-cop	'cliff'
tao-pak	'bread'	ceŋ-pak	'flat rice'
maŋ-kup	'gravel'	miŋ-cot	'fame'
khon-cot	'journey'	khon-pak	'foot'

Presence of voicing

Uu-dop	'ring'	phi-jet	'costume'
phi-dup	'folding of cloth'	thaw-dok	'incident'
kon-gut	'pit'	ce-jet	'piece of paper'

(iv) Voicing is more frequent after a nasal and less so after a vowel or semivowel.

2.6.5 It might be noted in passing that voicing affects only syllable-initial stops and affricates. It does not influence syllable-final stops.

2.6.6 In view of these points, Chelliah's (1990) claim that voiced stops can be derived by the application of a single voice assimilation rule and that it need not therefore be postulated for the 'underlying structure' of the language will have to be regarded as untenable.

2.7 Aspiration

2.7.1 Aspiration is contrastive primarily in the case of voiceless stops (*p*, *t* and *k*); voiced stops *b*, *d* and *g* and also the voiced affricate *j*, show aspirated counterparts only in a few loan words such as *ghumti* 'hood of bullock cart', *biin* 'ghost', *dhan* 'drum', and *jhan* 'cymbal'.

The affricate *tʃ* does not have an aspirated counterpart. As we would be pointing out below, however, it does function morphophonemically as the unaspirated (or rather the affricated) counterpart of the fricative *s* in the case of certain roots (in compounds) and also in the case of certain suffixes.

2.7.2 Aspirated consonants occur only in the syllable-initial position. While occurring intervocally in the word-medial position, they contrast with, and are phonetically distinct from, the corresponding unaspirated counterparts + *h* clusters in the case of the stops *t* and *k*. In the case of the stop *p*, however, the cluster *p* + *h* is indistinguishable from (or rather changes to) the corresponding aspirated consonant, namely *ph*.

We have used a hyphen as in *t-h* and *k-h*, (in this chapter only), in order to differentiate between these *pp* + *h* clusters from the corresponding aspirated stops, namely *th* and *kh* respectively. We can regard this hyphen as representing the syllabic boundary in these cases. We have found it necessary to use this hyphen in another context also, namely to distinguish between syllable-final *k* and syllable-initial *k*, both occurring phonetically as in *t-kə* 'rotten hay' versus *tk-ə* 'heat!' or *lu-kəŋ* 'skull' versus *cik-ammi* 'had bitten' (see 2.5).

The following pairs of words illustrate the contrast between the aspirated *th* and *kh* on the one hand and the clusters *t-h* and *k-h* on the other respectively.

pe-tha-bə	'to start crying'	pet-hən-bə	'to make something soft'
pa-khot-pə	'to start reading'	pak-hən-bə	'to widen'

The absence of a similar contrast in the case of *p* can be exemplified with the help of the following pairs of words:

u-phəy	'branch of tree'	u	'tree'	phəy	'thigh'
u-phən-bə	'to cause to wear'	up	'to wear'	hən	'cause'

2.7.3 The occurrence of aspirated stops is affected by the change of non-immediate deaspiration which takes place regularly in the case of certain suffixes, and rather irregularly in the case of roots (compounding). We can describe this change in general terms as follows:

When a syllable-initial aspirated stop is preceded by a syllable containing an initial aspirate or fricative, the former gets deaspirated (and also voiced, if immediately preceded by a voiced sound— see 2.6.3).

We can regard this change as affecting the fricative *s* also because in the above-mentioned context, *s* has been found to become *c* (and further to become *j* after voiced sounds). However, the actual change involved in this case is affrication rather than deaspiration.

The suffixes that get affected by this change are (i) the three directional suffixes *khət* 'up', *thok* 'out' and *sin* 'in' (the fourth directional suffix, *thə* 'down' is unaffected by this change), (ii) certain manner suffixes, which are indicative of destruction, namely *thək* 'deform' *khay* 'destroy' and *thə* 'destroy', and (iii) the adverbial suffix *thrik* 'unusually'. Examples:

- | | | | | |
|-------|---------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| (i) | <i>ɣ-thok-pə</i> | 'to give out' | <i>khik-tok-pə</i> | 'to sprinkle out' |
| | <i>cət-thok-pə</i> | 'to go out' | <i>hut-tok-pə</i> | 'to bore out' |
| | <i>ɣə-khet-pə</i> | 'to begin to swallow' | <i>hip-kət-pə</i> | 'to begin to lie down' |
| | <i>cət-sin-bə</i> | 'to go in' | <i>hut-cin-bə</i> | 'to bore in' |
| (ii) | <i>cə-thək-pə</i> | 'to burn to deformity' | <i>phuk-tek-pə</i> | 'to pull to deformity' |
| | <i>mət-khay-bə</i> | 'to crush and break' | <i>sət-kay-bə</i> | 'to tear off (paper)' |
| (iii) | <i>nəy-thrik noy-bə</i> | 'to be unusually fat' | | |
| | <i>səy-thrik səy-bə</i> | 'to be unusually green' | | |
| | <i>kəy-thrik kəy-bə</i> | 'to be unusually thin' | | |
| | <i>thəy-thrik thəy-bə</i> | 'to be unusually late' | | |

Notice, however, that the adverbial suffix *thrik* does not show the voicing of its initial stop after it gets deaspirated.

2.7.4 The change is also found to occur in compound words, but it affects them rather irregularly leaving behind a number of exceptions. Examples:

(i) *Instances showing deaspiration (and voicing)*

<i>thə</i>	'duty'		
<i>thək</i>	'occur'	<i>thaw-dok</i>	'event'
<i>pə</i>	'cloth'		
<i>thə</i>	'spread'	<i>phi-da</i>	'mat'
<i>sən</i>	'money'		
<i>khə</i>	'bag'	<i>sen-gaw</i>	'purse'
<i>phə</i>	'cloth'		
<i>kha</i>	'in'	<i>phi-ga</i>	'inner garment'
<i>phi</i>	'cloth'		
<i>phə</i>	'dry'	<i>phi-bəw-phəm</i>	'place for drying cloth'

(ii) Instances not showing deaspiration

phi	'cloth'	phi-khan	'curtain'
khan	'obstruct'		
khan	'voice'	khon-thag	'echo'
thag	'relay'		
sen	'money'	sen-thag	'subscription'
thag	'give'		
thaw	'oil'	thaw-thi	'oil cake'
thi	'dung'		

As in the case of suffixes mentioned earlier, this change involves affrication (and voicing after voiced sounds) of *s* as against deaspiration of *ph*, *th* and *lh*, in the case of compounds also. The following are a few instances of the affrication of *s* affecting compounds irregularly:

(iii) Instances showing affrication (and voicing)

phay	'cross'	phay-jup	'blanket' (cloth)
sup	'cover oneself'		
sa	'body'	sa-jen	'physical exercise'
sen	'guard'		
phi	'cloth'	phi-jet	'costume'
set	'to dress'		
sem	'hair'	sem-jet	'comb'
set	'to dress'		

(iv) Instances not showing affrication

tha	'moon'		
si	'to die'	tha-si	'new moon'
khon	'leg'		
sa	'branch'	khon-sa	'toe'
phi	'cloth'	phi-sa	'texture of cloth'
sa	'to make'		

2.8 Changes in the lateral

In order to properly understand the changes that affect the lateral *l* in this language, it is necessary to distinguish between its syllable-initial and syllable-final occurrences. The former is morphophonemically related to *r*, whereas the latter is related to *n*.

2.8.1 When mots or affixes beginning with a lateral are preceded by a vowel or semivowel, their initial consonant is regularly changed into *r*. This alternation is very regular both in compound words as well as in inflected word-forms. Examples:

(i) *Compounds*

ga	'fish'		
lew	'roast'	ga-rew	'roasted fish'
lan	'battle'		
phi	'cloth'	phi-ran	'flag'
mi	'man'		
lan	'to cross'	mi-ran	'stranger'
ley	'flower'		
lik	'piece'	ley-rik	'pollen'

(ii) *Word-forms*

pi	'give'		
le	'Perf'	pi-re	'has given'
hey	'pour'		
ri	'Dur'	hey-ri	'is pouring'
kaw	'forget'		
lem	'Compl'	kaw-rem-mi	'had forgotten'
ca	'eat'		
li	'Dur'	ca-ri	'is eating'

However, there are two suffixes, namely the non-future *li* and the imperative *lu*, in which the lateral shows certain additional changes such as the assimilation to *w* after *w*, and deletion after vowels and the semivowel *y*. (In addition to this, the vowel *i* of the non-future suffix changes to *y* after the vowels *a*, *u* or *ə* and gets deleted after the vowel *i* or semivowel *y*; and the vowel *u* of the imperative suffix changes to *w* after *a* and *ə* and gets deleted after *u* and *o*.) Examples:

(i) *Non-future li*

law	'to take'	lew-wi	'took'
ca	'to eat'	ca-y	'ate'
hey	'to pour'	hey	'poured'
pi	'to give'	pi	'gave'

(ii) *Imperative lu*

	'to eat'	ca-w	'Eat!'
pi	'give'	pi-yu	'Give!'
pu	'carry'	pu	'Carry!'

2.8.2 In the remaining environments, the syllable-initial *l* remains unchanged in the case of compounds, whereas in that of word-forms (inflectional suffixes) it undergoes certain assimilatory changes such as the following:

(i) It gets assimilated to the preceding consonant when that consonant is *p*, *m* or *g*, and (ii) it gets deleted when the preceding consonant is *k*. Examples:

(a) Occurrence as *l* in compounds

khog	'foot'	khog-lem	'footpath'
lem	'land'		
puk	'stomach'	puk-li	'girth'
li	'string'		
pot	'thing'	pot-lem	'surplus'
lem	'to be left over'		

(b) Occurrence in word-forms

(i) Assimilation after *p, m, and ŋ*

kup	'to cover'	kup-pe	'has covered'
le	'Perf'		
phom	'to sit'	phom-mi	'is sitting'
li	'Dur'		
cig	'to pull'	cig-goy	'will not pull'
loy	'Fu Neg'		

(ii) Loss after *k*

yek	'to paint'	yek-i	'painted'
li	'NFu'		
ca-rak	'to eat and come'	ca-rek-e	'has eaten and come'
le	'Perf'		

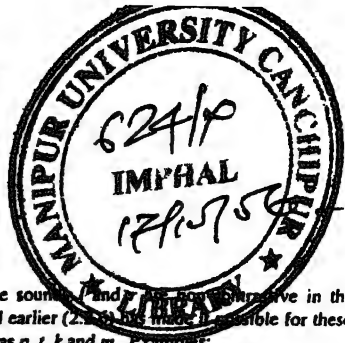
(iii) Unchanged in other contexts

ut	'to show'	ut-li	'showed'
li	'NFu'		
thet	'to insert'	thet-le	'has inserted'
le	'Perf'		

The following sets of words illustrate clearly the occurrence of a morphophonemic alternation between *r* and *l* in the two sets of environments mentioned in 2.8.1 and 2.8.2.

lem	'land'	khog-lem	'canal'
		i-rəm	'my land'
		lay-rəm	'old ditch'
ley	'to whirl'	i-rəy	'whirlpool'
		nog-ley	'whirlwind'
		sa-rəy	'epilepsy'
lew	'paddy field'	pam-lew	'paddy field on a hill'
		lay-rəw	'god's paddy field'
		lew-kut	'low lying paddy field'

lag 'snare'	taw-rag 'reed'
	mi-rag 'cobweb'
	lag-len 'a big trap'
	lik-lag 'necklace'
	səm-lag 'hair'



2.8.3 The above-mentioned points make it appear that the sounds /l/ and /r/ are both contrastive in the syllable-initial position. However, the deletion of *r* mentioned earlier (2.8.2) has made it possible for these two sounds to contrast with one another after consonants such as *p*, *t*, *k* and *m*. Examples:

naprum 'eel'	kəplak 'inside part of knee'
petrukley 'a flower'	phetlawbə 'to be angry suddenly'
col-pra 'does he go?'	utupla 'is it a log?'
cakn 'argument'	caklem 'left out rice'
camri 'four hundred'	ləmlem 'unused land'

Further, the trill *r* has been introduced into the word-initial position and also into the word-final position through loan words as seen in *rag* 'zinc', *har* 'manure', *car* 'sapling, etc.

2.8.4 In the case of the syllable-final position, the contrast that gets neutralized is the one between *l* and *n*. These two sounds vary freely in the word-final position, whereas in the word-medial position, they get neutralized as *l* before *l* or *h*, and as *n* elsewhere. Examples:

(i) Word-final occurrence

lal ~ lan 'war'
noŋdon ~ noŋdol 'sky'
khəyrim ~ khəyri 'navel cord'

(ii) Occurrence before *l* and *h*

nonbe 'to be humble'	
lukpə 'to bow down'	nol-lukpə 'to be meek'
cenbo 'to run'	
le 'Perf'	cel-le 'has run'
yonbe 'to sell'	
hen 'cause'	yol-helli 'made him sell'

(iii) Occurrence in other contexts

centə 'to run'	cen-geŋi 'will run'
thinbə 'to pierce'	yathin-jey 'tooth brush'
yonbə 'to sell'	yon-de 'did not sell'
tonbə 'to be meek'	tonan- 'lazy'

It may be noted here that some of the borrowed words such as *bol* 'ball', *jol* 'water' (religious) 'roll', etc. also show the above-mentioned alternation occurring otherwise in native words. Examples:

bol - hen	'ball'	bonda	'in the ball'
jol - jen	'water'	jongi	'water's'

2.9 Insertion of glides:

When two vowels come together in the process of compounding or suffixation, they are generally kept separated from one another through the insertion of a semivowel in this language. We have noticed the insertion of *y* in the case of instances in which the second vowel is *i*, and of *w* in the case of instances in which it is *e* or *u*. Examples.

(i) *the prefix a or na*

ibe	'to write'	ma-yi	'mode of writing'
aba	'to vomit'	a-wabe	'vomit'
uho	'to see'	a-wuba	'person who sees'
upa	'to show'	ma-wut	'way of showing'

(ii) *In compound words*

na	'ear'		
in	'to wear'	nay-in	'ear ring'
ya	'mouth'		
um	'put in'	ya-wum	'mouthful'
m:	'man'		
oyhe	'to be'	mi-woyba	'human being'
sa	'body'		
on	'shape'	sa-won	'figure (body)'
sa	'animal'		
un	'skin'	sa-wun	'leather'

2.10 Deletion of *a*:

2.10.1 The vowel *a* gets deleted in two main types of contexts, namely

(i) in trisyllabic words in which *a* precedes an *r* in the second syllable, and

(ii) in the case of affixes *ba* 'infinitive', *khə* 'away', and *de* 'negative' (which has the alternant *do* word-medially), when these are followed by suffixes beginning with *r* such as *re* (and alternant of *le*) 'perfect', *ra* (an alternant of *la*) 'interrogative', *ri* (an alternant of *li*) 'non-future', and *ro* (an alternant of *lo*) 'imperative'.

2.10.2 The first of these two types of contexts provides two main types of consonant clusters, namely (i) of two consonants and (ii) of three consonants. In the former case the syllabic division falls prior to the consonant cluster, whereas in the latter case it falls in-between the first and the second of the three consonants. That is, both these situations provide roughly the same type of syllable-initial two-consonant clusters. Examples.

Two-consonant clusters

gaprum	'eel'
petrukley	'a flower'
segrak	'armpit'
camri	'four hundred'

Three-consonant clusters

campra	'lemon'
keptrcg	'spinning machine'
mengra	'sweet potato'
leymram	'name of a place'

This loss of *ə* is a historically attested change; the vowel is retained in Old Manipuri texts.

Some of these words also show morphophonemic alternations as can be seen, for example, in *camri* 'four hundred', which is derived from *camə* 'hundred' (*əmə* 'one') and the root *ri* 'four' (as found in the word *məri* 'four').

2.10.3 There is a set of adverbial suffixes, used with reduplicated forms of verbs in order to indicate intensity; these suffixes also contain *r* clusters of the above-mentioned type. Examples:

yaŋ	'be light'	yaŋ-thrik yaŋ	'be very light'
waw	'be dirty'	waw-throk waw	'be very dirty'
saŋ	'be long'	saŋ-droŋ saŋ	'be very long'
pa	'be thin'	pa-drit pa	'be very thin'

2.10.4 In the second type of context that leads to the loss of *ə*, we clearly have a morphophonemic change. The suffixes in which the vowel *ə* gets deleted are *bə* 'infinitive' *kəə* 'away' (Dei4) and *də* (an alternant of *də*) 'negative'. When followed by suffixes other than the ones mentioned above, these retain the vowel *ə* as seen in the following pairs of sentences.

ə retained

məhak ca-bə-ni
he eat-Inf-Cop
'He is the eater'

ə deleted

məhak cabra?
he eat-Inf-Q
'Did he eat?'

məhak ca-də-bə-ni məhak ca-d-re
he eat-Neg-Inf-Cop he eat-Neg-Perf
'He is the non-eater' 'He has not eaten'

In the case of the suffix *kəə* 'away' (Dei4), the variation is dialectal.

2.11 Some additional changes

2.11.1 We have noticed a few irregular changes such as (i) assimilation of the nasals *m* and *n*, (ii) loss of syllable-final consonants such as *t*, *k* and *n*, and (iii) change of the vowels *o*, *a* and *e*. Excepting the change of *e* to *a*, all these occur in compound forms.

The following are a few examples which illustrate the occurrence of these changes in compounds. (Notice that the words *cəga* 'burnt rice' and *khudug* 'hind leg' illustrate two different changes each.)

(i) Assimilation of nasals

kəra	'pit'		
kəra	'depressed'	koŋ-gut	'pit'

yen	'hen'		
kon	'shed'	yen-gon	'poultry shed'
son	'cow'		
pon	'entangle'	son-bon	'fence'

(iii) *Loss of syllable-final consonant (and vowel change)*

khut	'hand'		
cin	'tip'	khu-jin	'nail'
cak	'cooked rice'		
ka	'blacken'	co-ga	'burnt rice'
khəp	'leg'		
tup	'behind'	khu-dup	'hind leg'
yen	'hen'		
lum	'egg'	ye-rum	'hen's egg'

2.12 Relevance of the syllable

2.12.1 The concept of the syllable as well as that of the word are relevant for describing the organization of sounds in Manipuri. As we have seen above, the concept of the syllable plays a crucial role in the description of (i) certain allophonic distinctions such as that of velar sounds, (ii) certain distributional characteristics such as that of voiced stops, aspirates, affricates and fricatives which are restricted to the syllable-initial position, and (iii) certain morphophonemic rules such as the voicing of stops, deaspiration and de-spirinization of aspirates and *s* respectively, change of lateral to trill or nasal, and the loss of *a*.

The concept of word, on the other hand, is relevant for describing constraints such as the ones which affect the distribution of *l*, *n*, and *r*, of voiced sounds, vowel length, palatalization of affricates and *s*, and the change of *p-h* clusters to *ph*.

We have used simple space for denoting word-boundary and hyphen for denoting syllable boundary. However, we have restricted the use of the hyphen only to those contexts in which its non-use can lead to loss of information, as for example in the case of the distinction between syllable-initial and syllable-final *k* (as in *nəku* 'skin' vs. (*ni* : : *sak-u* 'sing (a song)') or of the distinction between clusters *t-h* and *k-h* (with an intervening syllabic boundary) on the one hand, and the aspirated *th* and *kh* (with no such intervening syllabic boundary) on the other.

2.12.2 The concept of the syllable also has morphological relevance in this language. We generally find each individual syllable to be representing a single morpheme in spite of the fact that word-forms can sometimes have several syllables in them. We have noticed word-forms containing upto eleven syllables in our data. The word *ca-lha-co-həw-ran-məy-da-be-ni* 'I would not have started to go up by myself', containing nine distinct syllables, can be analyzed as having the morphemes *ca* 'go', *lha* 'up', *co* 'reflexive', *həw* 'start', *ran* 'completive', *məy* 'future negative', *da* 'emphatic', *be* 'infinitive' and *ni* 'copula'.

All the verbal roots of this language are monosyllabic in nature, and almost all the nouns and words of other categories are analyzable into monosyllabic roots of different types.

The affixes of this language are also of one syllable length each. When these affixes are added to different kinds of stems, they generally retain their identity as individual syllables. Because of this particular characteristic of affixes, we find it possible to analyze almost all polysyllabic word-forms of this language as being made up of monosyllabic roots and affixes whose number is exactly the same as that of the syllables that occur in those word-forms.

2.12.3 There is, however, one important exception to this general rule, which has been provided by the deletion of *o* in certain specified contexts (see 2.10). This deletion has the effect of merging two adjacent syllables into one, and thereby coalescing two different morphemes into a single syllable. However, we can easily recognize the contexts in which this change has taken place because almost all medial clusters having *r* as the last member (excepting the ones in which the semivowel *y* and *w* precede them) have resulted from this particular change.

2.12.4 In spite of this relevance and importance of the concept of the syllable, the establishment of syllabic boundary in the case of intervocalic consonants, especially when that consonant is a semivowel or a nasal, is rather problematic.

In the case of semivowels, an intervocalic occurrence could result (i) from a syllable-final sound as in *thawog* 'method' (cf. *thav* 'work') or *mayoni* 'screen' (cf. *may* 'face'), (ii) from a syllable-initial sound as in *hiyag* 'boat race' (cf. *hi* 'boat' and *yag* 'be fast'), or *iwa* 'my word' (cf. *i* 'I' and *wa* 'word'), or (iii) from neither of them as in *nayin* 'ear ring' (cf. *na* 'ear' and *in* 'wear') or *sawun* 'skin' (cf. *sa* 'body' and *un* 'skin'). In the last case the semivowel has resulted from glide-formation (see 2.9).

In the case of nasals also, an intervocalic occurrence can result from either (i) a syllable-final nasal as in *khogup* 'shoe' (cf. *khog* 'leg' and *up* 'wear shoes'), or (ii) from a syllable-initial nasal as in *una* 'leaf' (cf. *u* 'tree' and *ma* 'leaf').

It is possible to regard intervocalic consonants as belonging to the following syllables in all these instances from a phonological point of view, but in such an analysis, the morphologically syllable-initial and syllable-final consonants would fail to get differentiated from one another.

Another type of situation that provides a similar problem for syllabic division is the case of intervocalic *ph* which, in some contexts, would have resulted from the merger of a syllable-final *p* with the initial *h* of the following syllable. For example, the aspirated *ph* occurring in the word *kuphan* 'cause to cover' has resulted from the joining of the root *kup* 'cover' with the suffix *han* 'cause'. It is indistinguishable from other intervocalic instances of *ph*, such as for example, the one occurring in the word *wapham* 'topic' (cf. *wa* 'word' and *pham* 'sit').

2.12.5 Traditionally, some of the vowel + semivowel combinations have been regarded as diphthongs, but we have treated all such instances as involving vowel + consonant sequences. From a distributional point of view, semivowels behave very much like consonants (such as, for example, the nasals) in this language. There is therefore no basis for providing any special status for them in the structure of the syllable.

Chapter 3

WORD-FORMATION

3.1 Introduction

3.1.1 Manipuri makes use of a large number of suffixes, and quite a few prefixes also, in its grammar, but rather interestingly, the use of these affixes is almost exclusively associated with the inflectional system. The derivational system, on the other hand, is served almost exclusively by the process of compounding.

It is true that the distinction between roots and affixes (and therefore between compounding and affixation) is not very sharp and clear-cut. There are several marginal cases in which it is rather difficult to decide as to whether a given element is to be regarded as a root or an affix. In fact, it is quite possible to assume that historically both these processes (compounding and affixation) derive from one single original process, namely compounding. In spite of this difficulty, however, there appears to be a clear distinction in this language between word-formation (derivation) and the formation of word-forms (inflection); the process that gets associated with the former is almost exclusively that of compounding.

It may be noted, however, that some of the composite words derived through the process of compounding do contain affixes that belong to the latter process, namely the formation of word-forms. That is, the formation of words, even though distinct from the formation of word-forms, is not independent of it. We cannot claim that one of them completely precedes the other.

3.1.2 Another interesting characteristic of Manipuri is that its process of word-formation is primarily concerned with the category of nouns. There are very few verbal bases that can be regarded as resulting from the functioning of this process. As we will be pointing out in detail in the seventh chapter, the formation of noun + verb constructions (called 'noun-incorporation') is a syntactic rather than a morphological process in this language.

3.1.3 Compound words of Manipuri are mostly endocentric in nature, and are generally made up of two constituent elements (roots). These compound words fall into two distinct groups, namely right-headed and left-headed, depending upon the nature of the second constituent element occurring in them: if this second constituent element is a nominal root, the compound word would be right-headed, whereas if it is a verbal root, the compound word would be left-headed.

3.1.4 Another interesting aspect of Manipuri words (and also of word-forms) is that their internal morphemic structure can very easily be correlated with their internal syllabic structure. That is, as we have seen in the previous chapter (see 2.12), each syllable in a given word or word-form can be identified with a monosyllabic root or affix in this language. There are very few exceptions to this general rule.

3.1.5 It is very well known that the formation of compound words (through derivational processes), as compared to that of word-forms (through inflectional processes) is generally very irregular and idiosyncratic in natural languages. Manipuri is not an exception to this rule. The morphophonemic rules that affect

the derived words are very irregular, and further, the semantic relationship between the derived words and their constituent elements is also idiosyncratic and sometimes hard to establish.

However, in the case of most of the derived words of this language, identification of constituent elements is rather straightforward. As an illustration of this particular characteristic, the structure of the following compound words may be examined:

potpumen	'freight'	pot	'thing'
		pube	'to carry'
		memen	'price'
thaphegnug	'whet-stone'	thag	'knife'
		phegbe	'to sharpen'
		nug	'stone'
pawninkhon	'rumour'	paw	'news'
		ninbe	'to be noisy'
		khon	'voice'
nawsum	'cradle'	naw	'child'
		sumbe	'to put to sleep'

There are a few compound words, however, in which the identity of one or more of the constituent elements, or the semantic relationship between such elements and the compound word, is not very clear. For example, in the word *thambal* 'lotus', the second element can clearly be identified as being the root *pal* 'flower', but the first one is rather difficult to identify. In the word *laycin* 'cloud', the first element can be identified as being *lay* 'earth' but its semantic relation with the compound word is difficult to establish, especially because the second element *cin* is not identifiable with any known root. However, compound words with such problematic derivations are very few in number.

3.2 Morphophonemic changes

3.2.1 Manipuri shows an interesting contrast between compound words and word-forms in the case of its system of morphophonemic changes as well. In addition to the changes being irregular and idiosyncratic in the case of compound words and very regular in that of word-forms (inflection), the actual changes that affect the former are a somewhat different from the ones which affect the latter. Some changes affect both of them, but some affect only one or the other.

3.2.2 For example, there are two main types of changes that regularly affect inflectional affixes, namely (i) the loss of *l* after *k* and (ii) the assimilation of *l* after *p*, *m* and *g*. Neither of these changes affect compound words. Examples:

(ia) Loss of *l* after *k* in inflected forms

thopka	'to drink'		
li	'non-future'	thok-i	'(I) drank'
phupkpa	'to pull out'		
le	'present perfect'	puk-e	'(I) have pulled out'

(ib) Absence of the change in composite words

puk li	'belly' 'string'	pukli	'girth'
cak lem	'cooked rice' 'be left over'	caklem	'left out rice'

(iia) Assimilation of *l* after *p, m* and *ŋ* in inflected forms

kuppo li	'to cover' 'Non future'	kuppi	'(I) covered'
tumbo le	'to sleep' 'present perfect'	tumme	'(I) slept'
cimbo loy	'to pull' 'future negative'	cimnoy	'(I) will not pull'

(iib) Absence of the above-mentioned change in composite words

lombi lon	'path' 'to have branches'	lamlon	'cross-road'
khon lombi	'leg' 'path'	khonglomb	'foot-path'

It is interesting to note in this connection that these two changes have failed to take place in some of the dialects of Manipuri even in inflected word-forms (see Raguhmani 1987).

3.2.3 As against these regular changes, some of the sporadic ones that have affected compounds, such as (i) the assimilation of nasals to adjacent stops or nasals, (ii) the loss of syllable-final stops and nasals, and (iii) the change of vowels such as *o* to *u* and *a* to *ə* have not affected the inflectional system. Even in the case of compounds, these changes have primarily affected certain frequently occurring formations only.

For example, the final nasal *n* of the root *sən* 'cow' has changed to *ŋ* before roots beginning with a velar sound, as in *səŋon* 'cowshed', and *səŋnem* 'milk', but in several other roots the same sound has remained unchanged in a similar context, as can be seen in compound words like *lənŋəy* 'treasury', (*lən* 'wealth') *pənkhəy* 'chapter' (*pən* 'dam') etc. The change does not occur in inflected forms also, as can be seen, for example, in word-forms like *kənkhəy* 'start to become hard' and *kənŋəy* 'begin to think'.

Similarly, the change of *o* to *u* affecting the root *khon* 'leg' (and also the loss of its final nasal) as seen in compound words such as *khunig* 'heel' (*nig* 'back'), *khumag* 'foreleg' (*mag* 'front'), *khuga* 'sole' (*kha* 'below') etc., or the change of *a* to *ə* (along with the loss of final stop) of the root *cak* 'rice' as seen in compound words such as *cəŋn* 'scorched rice' (*kəbə* 'to be scorched'), *cəŋnm* 'wasted rice' (*kumbə* 'to be wasted') etc., are also irregular and occur in some of the compound words only.

3.3 Structure of compounds

3.3.1 Compound words of Manipuri are mostly endocentric in nature (i.e. having one of the constituent elements functioning as the head of that compound). There do occur some exocentric (and a few co-ordinate) compounds as well, but as we will be seeing later in this chapter, some of the exocentric compounds can also have endocentric alternants in which the head noun has been retained in tact in the

composite word itself; hence, we may as well regard exocentric compounds as being derived from the ones that were originally endocentric (through the loss of the head noun).

Compound words of Manipuri are mostly disyllabic in nature. There are some trisyllabic compounds also, derived primarily through the retention of one of the inflectional affixes that occur in the underlying structure. Compounds containing more than three syllables are very rare in this language. This is in sharp contrast to the structure of word-forms of this language; the latter may contain upto eleven different syllables, as we have pointed out in the previous chapter (see 2.12.2).

3.3.2 Endocentric compounds are mainly of two different types, namely right-headed and left-headed. In the case of right-headed compounds, both the constituent elements are generally nominal roots, whereas in that of left-headed compounds the second element is a verbal root. Examples:

(i) *Right-headed compounds*

mirag	'cobweb'	mi	'spider'
		lag	'snare'
kwagom	'pit for storing betel nuts'	kwa	'betel nur'
		kom	'pit'
cigmi	'tribals'	cig	'hill'
		mi	'man'

(ii) *Left-headed compounds*

potlum	'load'	pot	'thing'
		lumbe	'to be heavy'
thasi	'new moon'	tha	'moon'
		sibe	'to die'
lawca	'estate'	law	'paddy field'
		cabe	'to eat'
laynag	'clay'	ley	'mud'
		nagbe	'to be smooth'

3.3.3 Some right-headed compounds appear to be exceptions to this general rule in that they have a verbal root as the second constituent element. For example, the second element of composite words like *khupak* 'palm', (*paicə* 'to be broad') or *lamsi* 'accidental death' (*sibe* 'to die') is a verbal root, but these words appear to be right-headed. However, in order to assume that their second element functions as the head, it is necessary to assume further that it is a verbal noun rather than a verb whose nominalizing prefix has been deleted during the process of compounding, as shown below. That is, in effect, these are also noun + noun compounds.

khut-ki mopak hand-Gen breadth 'breadth of hand'	khupak	'palm'
lam-de sibe road-loc death 'death on the road'	lamsi	'accidental death'

3.3.4 It may be noted further that a number of nominal roots occur with the prefix *ma* only when they are used by themselves; when attached to some other root in compounds, they give up this prefix. For example, this prefix occurs obligatorily in the case of nouns like *mari* 'string', *masa* 'branch' and *mahi* 'liquid' when these nouns are used by themselves, but not when they are used in compounds as in *thawri* 'rope', *masa* 'branch of a tree' and *khoyhi* 'honey'.

3.3.5 There are several right-headed compounds which contain the root *pham* (occurring in the noun *mapham* 'place' and the verb *phamba* 'to sit') as the second element, and a verbal root as the first element. We may regard these (and a few others which contain other verbal bases) as forming a third set in which a verb + noun (or verb + verb) combination gives rise to a compound noun. Examples:

thangpham	'kitchen'	thogbo	'to cook'
tugpham	'receptacle'	tugbo	'to store'
yawpham	'destination'	yawbo	'to reach'

We will discuss these different types of compounds in a somewhat greater detail below (see 3.4.7):

3.4 Right-headed endocentric compounds

3.4.1 As we have pointed out earlier, these compounds are generally made up of two different nominal roots, which are related with one another either (i) by the possessive suffix *gi* or (ii) by one of several verbal bases, that are not actually retained in the final composite word. Examples:

(i) Possessive relation

loygi mama		loyma	'queen'
earth's mother			
khoggi masa		khogsa	'toe'
leg's branch			
meygi meri		meyri	'flame'
fire's string			
kumgi macin		kumjin	'early part of a year'
year's border			

(ii) Verbal relation

mi-ne sa-bo lag		miran	'cobweb'
spider-Nom make-Inf snare			
mey-da-gi thek-pa morik moyrik			'spark'
fire-Loc-Gen come-Inf piece			
thum yaw-bo mōhi	thumhi		'salt water'
salt contain-Inf liquid			
lwa li-na-bo krom	kwagom		'betel nut pit'
betel nut store-Rec-Inf pit			

3.4.2 The possessive relationship can be regarded as involving either (i) a part-whole relationship or (ii) a directional relationship. Examples:

(i) Part-whole relationship

loygi mana flower's leaf	loyna	'petal'
tagi mekhok spear's handle	takhok	'handle of spear'
khoygi mari fish-hook's thread	khoyri	'fishing line'

(ii) Directional relationship

loygi maton tongue's tip	loyton	'tip of the tongue'
khutuki mayay hand's middle	khuyay	'middle finger'
khutuki monij hand's back	khunij	'elbow'
mitki mapan eye's border	mitpan	'eyelid'

3.4.3 Regarding the verbal relation between the constituent elements of compounds, it has been claimed by some scholars that such relationships can be reduced to a small number of ten or twelve basic verbs or particles. For example, in the case of compounds of the above nature occurring in English, such as *tear gas*, *honey bee*, *tax law*, *marine life*, etc., it has been found possible to reduce the underlying relationships to nine distinct elements which can be denoted by the words *cause*, *have*, *make*, *use*, *be*, *in*, *for*, *from* and *about* (see Levin 1978).

Manipur appears to be an exception to this general rule; we have found it impossible to reduce the verbal relationships to such a small number of general concepts. For example, in order to account for the verbal relationships occurring in about one hundred compounds of the above type that we have examined, we have found it necessary to postulate about fifty distinct verbal relations; it does not appear to be possible to reduce these into a smaller set, especially in view of the type of trisyllabic compounds that are found in Manipuri which retain this verb, as shown below (see 3.4.6).

3.4.4 It is possible, however, to classify these compounds into three distinct groups, depending upon the kind of endings that these verbs take in the underlying structure, as follows:

(i) Resultatives (verbs ending in the infinitive suffix *bə*)

təw-ne sa-bə phək reed-Nom make-Inf mat	təwphək	'reed mat'
ciŋ-də ley-bə mi hill-Loc live-Inf man	ciŋmi	'tribals'

Manipuri Grammar

thum yaw-bo mahi
salt contain-Inf liquid

thumhi 'salt water'

(ii) Purposives (verbs ending in the purposive suffix *no* and the infinitive suffix *bo*)

phi hap-no-bo luk
cloth put-Pur-Inf basket

phiruk 'cloth basket'

hey tha-no-bo kon
fruit grow-Pur-Inf place

heykon 'orchard'

sa phu-no-bo coy
animal beat-Pur-Inf stick

sajoy 'whip'

(iii) Relationals (verbs ending in the infinitive suffix *bo* and the genitive suffix *gi*)

thow tow-bo-gi mawog
work do-Inf-Gen manner

thowwog 'method'

ceg cam-bo-gi mohi
wash-Inf-Gen liquid

ceghi 'water in which rice has been washed'

khog-na cot-po-gi merom
foot-Nom walk-Inf-Gen path

khoglom 'footpath'

3.4.5 It may be noticed further that in the case of all these compounds, it is possible to provide derivations with the possessive form. Examples:

tawgi phok
reed's mat

tawphok 'reed mat'

ciggi mi
hill's man

cigmi 'tribes'

phigi luk
cloth's basket

phiruk 'cloth basket'

thowgi mawog
work's manner

thowwog 'method'

3.4.6 There are some instances in which the verbs that relate the two nouns of a compound in the above-mentioned fashion have been retained in tact in the compound, and have thereby given rise to trisyllabic compounds. Examples:

un-na pan-bo tha
ice-Nom reign-Inf month

unbantha 'winter'

phi yon-no-bo merhom
cloth sell-Pur-Inf place

phiyonphom 'cloth shop'

lew yay-no-bo merhom
paddy thrash-Pur-Inf place

lewyoophom 'thrashing place'

khut-no su-be-gi momon khutuman 'wages'
 hand-Nom work-Inf-Gen price

3.4.7 As we had mentioned earlier (3.3.3.) some of the left-headed endocentric compounds appear to have a verbal root as their second element, but in order to consider that element as the head constituent, it is necessary to derive such compounds from underlying noun + noun structures. Compounds of this type can be classified into two main groups depending, once again, upon the kind of relationship that exists between the two constituent elements as shown below:

(i) Possessive relationship

thag	makhay	thakhay	'fortnight'
month	's half	(kхайbe)	'to cut and separate')
lug	mepaw	lupaw	'dandruff'
head	's roughness	(powbe)	'to be rough')
sag	mathek	sathek	'gesture'
body	's bending	(theapbe)	'to bend')
khutk	mepak	khubak	'palm'
hand	's breadth	(pakpe)	'to be broad')

ii) Other relationships (such as that of object, location, and instrument)

lay-bu	nag-be	laynag	'prayer'
god-Acc	wish-Inf	(nagbe)	'to wish')
leg-no	tay-be	legday	'seam'
thread-Nom	stitch-Inf	(taybe)	'to stitch')
cay-no	lak-pe	cayrak	'strictness'
stick-Nom	control-Inf	(lakpe)	'to control')
lom-do	si-be	lomsa	'accidental death'
road-Loc	die-Inf	(sibe)	'to die')

3.5 Left-headed compounds

These contain only a single nominal base (functioning as the head) which gets modified by the verb that follows it. (It may be noted here that Manipuri also allows noun + verb constructions to function as *verbs*, i.e. as having the verbs as their heads, but as we point out elsewhere in this grammar (see 7.5), these constructions involve the process of noun incorporation, which is a syntactic process and not a morphological one.)

3.5.1 We can divide the left-headed compounds of this language into two main classes, namely adjectival and dynamic, depending upon the nature of the verb (stative or non-stative) that occurs as their second element. Examples.

(i) Adjectivals

stoppe	na	mutop	'stranger'
distinct	man	(toppe)	'to be distinct')

Manipuri Grammar

arunbo pur heavy object	porlum (lumbo	'load' 'to be heavy')
onambo lay smooth mud	loyman (nagbo	'clay' 'to be smooth')
ohambo lay tasty earth	loyhaw (hawbo	'manure' 'to be tasty')

(iii) Dynamics

esibe tha dead moon	thasi (sibe	'new moon' 'to die')
othangbo sen lifted money	senthan (thanbo	'subscription' 'to lift')
othambo kay displayed barn	kaythen (thenbo	'market' 'to display')
ayunbo u erected tree	uyun (yungbo	'post' 'to erect')

3.5.2 The dynamic compounds can also be derived from structures in which the verbs occur in some tensed form such as, for example, the compound *thasi* 'new moon' from *siraba tha* 'the moon that has died', or the compound *senthan* 'subscription' from *thaggabo sen* 'money that has been raised'.

3.5.3 In the case of some compounds, the relationship is preferably that of purpose, as shown in the following examples:

ca-ne-be low eat-Pur-Inf paddy-field	lowca (paddy field for eating)	'estate'
set-ne-bo phi wear-Pur-Inf cloth	phiyet (cloth for wearing)	'dress'
su-ne-be cay hit-Pur-Inf stick	caytu (stick for hitting the ground)	'walking stick'

3.5.4 There are also a few left-headed compounds which contain an *adverb* as the second element. These can be derived from underlying structures in which the verb *thagbo* 'to be' or *oybo* 'to be (characterized)' relates the noun with the verb. Examples:

(ii) Related by the verb *thagbo* 'be'

methok thag-bo ya above be-Inf tooth	yathok	'upper tooth'
mekha thag-bo phi below be-Inf cloth	phiga	'under garment'
man thag-bo khog front be-Inf leg	khumag	'foreleg'

(ii) *Related by the verb oybo 'be characterized'*

ten oy-bo phi best be-Inf cloth	phiren	'best cloth'
mepum oy-bo wa whole be-Inf bamboo	wapum	'unbroken bamboo'
mahut oy-bo mi substitute be-Inf man	mihut	'substitute'

3.5.5 There is a class of compounds that can be regarded as either right-headed or left-headed. Actually, the compounds contain a noun and a verb as their constituent elements, but by deriving the second element from an underlying verbal noun we can make them right-headed, and by deriving it from an underlying verb (relative clause) we can make them left-headed. Examples:

(a)	cakiki mothun rice's share		
(b)	ethugbo cak shared rice	cakthun	'share'
(a)	ugi mopak tree's plank		
(b)	apakpe u broad wood	upak	'plank'
(a)	wagi maphey word's crossing		
(b)	aphaybo wa crossed word	waphey	'digression'

3.6 Exocentric compounds

These are generally made up of a noun and a verb. Since neither of their constituent elements can be regarded as the head, there is a need to postulate a covert element such as *pot* 'thing', *phi* 'cloth', *maphan* 'place', *nu* 'man', etc. as the head for these compounds.

3.6.1 These exocentric compounds can be divided into two main types, namely purposive and resultative, depending upon the kind of relationship that exists between the noun and the verb in the underlying structure. Examples:

(i) *Purposive*

naw sum-no-bo pot child put to sleep-Pur-Inf thing 'thing for putting the child to sleep'	nawsum	'cradle'
mey khet-no-bo pot fire scrape-Pur-Inf thing 'thing for scraping fire'	meykhet	'match box'

loy khel-no-bo poi
tongue scrape-Pur-Inf thing
'thing for scraping the tongue'

loykhol 'tongue scraper'

kwa cop-no-bo poi
betel nut cut-Pur-Inf thing
'thing for cutting the betel nut'

kwajap 'nut cracker'

(d) *Recurrence*

u moy-ho mophom
tree dense-Inf place
'place where the trees are dense'

umog 'forest'

moci thik-po mophom
border bend-Inf place
'place where the border bends'

cihek 'corner'

loy do-gi saw-ho tin
earth-Loc-Gen come-Inf worm
'worm that comes out of earth'

loisaw 'white ant'

nom-do po-ho poi
back-Loc carry-Inf thing
'thing that is carried on the back'

nombo 'bundle'

3.6.2 When the covert head noun is *mi* 'man', the infinitive suffix *bo* is generally retained in the compound Examples

pun yay-ho mi
drum beat-Inf man
'man who beats the drum'

pun yaybo 'drummer'

lamby-de pox-ho mi
road Loc wander-Inf man
'man who wanders on the road'

lamboybo 'monk'

nun-do su-ho mi
stone-Loc work-Inf man
'man who works with stone'

nun^cube 'mason'

phi sa-ho mi
cloth weave-Inf man
'man who weaves cloth'

phisabo 'weaver'

3.6.3 This word-final *ho* is generally changed to *bi* when the person referred to is a woman. However, this change is only of recent innovation in the language; it is also not very obligatory. Examples:

phi lon-ho nupi
cloth embroider-Inf woman

phuronbi 'the woman who
embroiders (the border of cloth)'

asw biy-be nupi child tend to-Inf woman	nawroybi	'midwife'
phi sa-be nupi cloth weave-Inf woman	phisabi	'weaver'(woman)
lambi-de poy-be nupi road-Loc wander-Inf woman	lamboybi	'nun'

Notice, however, that the element *bi* occurring in these compounds can alternatively be regarded as denoting a female person (by identifying it with the head noun), but in that case, these compounds cannot be regarded as exocentric (see 3.8.2. below)

3.6.4 There are also a few compound words that have an object like *pot* 'thing' as the covert head; these compounds show *bi* rather than *be* in place of the infinitive suffix. Examples:

muk ca-be pot mk eat-Inf thing 'thing which eats ink'	mukcabi	'blotting paper'
səm pha-be pot hair catch-Inf thing 'thing which catches the hair'	səmphabi	'hair-pin'
mey-de lan-be tin fire-Loc die-Inf insect 'insect that dies in the fire'	meyranbi	'moth'
ɔ-de taj-be pambi tree-Loc depend-Inf plant 'plant that depends upon a tree'	utajbi	'parasitic plant'

3.7 Coordinate compounds

These are generally made up of two different nouns joined together through the conjunctive suffix *ga*. Examples:

sa-gə sən-gə animal-Conj cow-Conj	sa-sən	'cattle'
sa-gə key-gə animal-Conj tiger-Conj	sa-key	'wild animals'
tu-gə khog-gə stream-Conj ditch-Conj	tu-khog	'marshy place'
cak-ke isiŋ-gə rice-Conj water-Conj	cak-isiŋ	'meal'

These composite words are rather different from the ones described earlier in that these appear as twin words rather than as single compound words. Their constituent elements retain their identity to a certain extent.

3.2 Compounds with three different constituent elements

Most of the compound words in Manipuri have two syllables (or two roots) each, but there do occur several compounds containing three different syllables each. The derivation of these trisyllabic compounds can be established through one of the following four processes.

3.2.1 First of all, as we have pointed out above (3.4.6.), there are certain trisyllabic compounds that can be regarded as having the same underlying structure as that of the comparable right-headed endocentric disyllabic compounds with the difference that the linking verb has been retained in tact in the former (trisyllabic) compounds. This similarity in the underlying structure of these two types of compounds is evident in the following pairs of words:

- | | | | |
|-----|--|------------|----------------|
| (a) | phi hap-na-ho luk
cloth put-Pur-Inf basket | phiruk | 'cloth basket' |
| (b) | phi yon-na-ho maphom
cloth sell-Pur-Inf place | phiyonphom | 'cloth shop' |
| (a) | taw-na sa-ho phok
reed-Nom make-Inf mat | tawphok | 'reed mat' |
| (b) | un-na pan-ho tha
ice-Nom reign-Inf month | unbantha | 'winter' |

There are also instances in which the same set of roots have been found to form both disyllabic as well as trisyllabic compounds (i.e. with or without the deletion of the linking verb respectively), and in such cases, the disyllabic compounds, in contrast to the trisyllabic ones, appear to have a very general linking verb such as /a/ 'to be'. Examples:

- | | | | |
|-----|---|------------|------------------------|
| (a) | lay lay-ra-ho sen
god be-Perf-Inf hut | laysen | 'temple' |
| (b) | lay nin-na-ho san
god think-Pur-Inf hut | layninsen | 'prayer hall' |
| (a) | nun lay-ra-ho maphom
stone be-Perf-Inf place | nunphom | 'mark left by a stone' |
| (b) | nun pek-na-ho maphom
stone break-Pur-Inf place | nunpekphom | 'stone quarry' |

3.2.2 Secondly, some of the trisyllabic compounds can be regarded as having the same underlying structure as the comparable exocentric disyllabic compounds with the difference that the head noun, which would normally be left unspecified, has been retained in the trisyllabic compound (see 3.6.). Notice, however, that these trisyllabic compounds are not exocentric, as they contain the head noun as one of their constituent elements. Examples:

- | | | | |
|-----|---|-----------|---------------|
| (a) | naw sum-na-be pot
child put to sleep-Pur-Inf thing | nawsum | 'cradle' |
| (b) | lay niq-na-be sog
god pray-Pur-Inf hat | layniqsog | 'prayer hall' |

Some of the disyllabic exocentric compounds like *umag* 'forest' and *laysew* 'white ant' can optionally retain the head noun as in *umagpham* and *laysewthin*, (*umagpham* refers to a particular forest, as against *umag* 'forest'), whereas some like *nambot* 'bundle', containing a general term like *pot* 'thing' as the head noun, cannot. In contrastive situations like the following also, the retention of the head noun occurs in those instances in which the compound refers to a specific rather than a general entity (as in the case of link verbs mentioned in 3.8.1). Examples:

- | | | | |
|-----|---|-----------|------------------------------|
| (a) | phi yan-be-gi thebek
cloth hang-Inf-Gen work | phiyan | 'the work of hanging cloths' |
| (b) | phi yan-na-be pot
cloth hang-Pur-Inf thing | phiyanpot | 'cloth stand' |
| (a) | ya thin-be-gi mewog
tooth clean-Inf-Gen method | yathin | 'way of cleaning the teeth' |
| (b) | ya thin-na-be cay
tooth clean-Pur-Inf stick | yathinjay | 'tooth brush' |
| (a) | pot pu-be-gi mewog
thing carry-Inf-Gen method | potpu | 'way of carrying things' |
| (b) | pot pu-be-gi memon
thing carry-Inf-Gen price | potpumen | 'freight' |

3.8.3 Thirdly, trisyllabic compounds can also result from the retention of one of the inflectional affixes that occur in the underlying structures. These affixes are generally deleted at the time of compounding, but they are retained in tact optionally in the case of some words and obligatorily in that of others.

We have already seen the case of exocentric compounds in which the head noun *mi* 'person' is deleted (see 3.6.3.), but the infinitive suffix *be* is retained, as seen, for example, in compound words like *puqyaybe* 'drummer', *nugsube* 'mason', etc. We have also seen the change of this infinitive suffix *be* to *bi* in some of the contexts in which the person referred to is a female as in *phisabi* 'female weaver', *lucigbi* 'female leader' etc. (3.8.4).

Other inflectional affixes like *bi* 'benefactive', *ne* 'purposive', and the four spatial suffixes, namely *sin* 'in', *tok* 'out', *khar* 'up' and *tho* 'down' also get retained in some compounds. In some of these instances the retention is optional. Examples:

- | | | |
|---|----------|---------------|
| tam-bi-be-gi memol
learn-Ben-Inf-Gen price | tambimol | 'tuition fee' |
| ia-na-be phi
wrap-Pur-Inf cloth | innophi | 'wrapper' |

Manipuri Grammar

ek-no-be mophom
enter-Inf-Pur-Inf place

coyelnphom 'entrance'

ek-thek-no-be mophom
enter-Perf-Inf place

cothokphom 'exit'

Another interesting situation in which trisyllabic compounds are produced through affixation is that of compounds in which the first element is a verbal root. Compounds having an initial verbal root are very rare in Manipuri (those having the root *pham* as the second element (see 3.3.5.) are exceptions to this rule); consequently in order to avoid such compounds, the language adds the prefix *a* in situations of the above kind in which the element is a verbal root. Examples:

ek-be-gi momen
stitch-Inf-Gen price
'price for stitching'

otumen 'stitching charge'

sem-be-gi momen
work-Inf-Gen price
'price for working'

enommen 'wages'

ek-no-be pot
eat-Pur-Inf thing
'thing for eating'

ecapot 'food'

yeek-a-be sa
rear-Perf-Inf animal
'animal that has been reared up'

eyoksa 'pet animal'

3.3.4 The fourth process that can form the basis of trisyllabic compounds in Manipuri is the use of disyllabic compounds as one of the constituent elements of compounding, as seen in the following instances:

(a) opak-pe lay
broad-Inf earth

laybak 'country'

lay-gi laybak
god-Gen country
'god's country'

layraybak 'heaven'

(b) u-gi makhok
tree-Gen shaft

ukhok 'timber'

oten-be ukhok
short-Inf timber

ukhokten 'pillar'

(c) oka-be isin
climb-Inf water

ika 'flood'

ika-gi na
flood-Gen fish

ikana 'fish which come up during a flood'

3.8.5 Compound words containing more than three syllables are very rare in Manipuri. We have noticed only a few such compounds like *thawmnikak* 'star' and *mupantakpham* 'urinal'. However, as we have noted in the previous chapter (see 2.12 and also 4.1), inflected forms of words in Manipuri can quite easily have four or more syllables.

3.9 Other derivational processes

3.9.1 We have pointed out earlier that the derivational system of Manipuri is served almost exclusively by the process of compounding. Some of the affixes that have been found to occur in composite words, such as the prefix *o* as in *acapot* 'food' (see 3.8.3) or the suffix *ba* as in *nugzuba* 'mason' (see 3.6.4) have been shown to occur as remnants of the underlying structures of compounding.

However, there do occur some composite words for which we may have to postulate affixation as the underlying process, at least from a synchronic point of view. For example, there is a set of words containing the morpheme *loy*, such as *patholloy* 'messenger', *cakloy* 'cook', *sakiloy* 'person who cuts grass', *sannarev* 'player', etc. as involving compounding only from a historical point of view. (In old Manipuri *loy* had the meaning 'servant'). Synchronically, we may have to regard this *loy* as a suffix.

3.9.2 Secondly, there are certain instances in which forms of words containing inflectional affixes have developed additional idiosyncratic connotations, and in some instances of this nature, there is a possibility of regarding the forms as distinct words involving a derivational process rather than an inflectional one.

For example, the prefix *mo* can generally be added to any given verbal root in order to produce word-forms that denote the mode of carrying out the relevant action or process. This is a regular productive process and can therefore be regarded as an inflectional one. Examples:

pabe	'to read'	mopa	'way of reading'
khoyme	'to plough'	mekhoym	'way of ploughing'
lambe	'to be noisy'	meraj	'way of being noisy'
kanbe	'to be dry'	mekanj	'way of being dry'

However, there are some words produced by adding this prefix *mo* to verbal roots which, rather irregularly, denote abstract entities or even concrete objects that have resulted from the concerned events. Examples:

(i) Denoting abstract objects

poikto	'to be born'	mepok	'birth'
lepe	'to stand'	merep	'height, depth'
habe	'to be tasty'	mehaw	'taste'
layto	'to turn'	meroy	'trick, argument'

(ii) Denoting concrete objects

pambe	'to bind'	mepun	'bundle'
phembe	'to sit'	mephem	'place, location'
yanbe	'to be many'	meyam	'many objects'
ibe	'to write'	meyi	'mark'
pebe	'to help'	mepanj	'friend'

3.9.3 Another interesting context in which the prefix *mo* occurs as a formative is in the case of certain bound roots which, when used by themselves must necessarily have the prefix *mo* attached to them; while

Manipuri Grammar

cəŋ-sin-ne-bə məphəm
enier-in-Pur-Inf place

cəŋsinphəm 'entrance'

cəθ-thək-ne-bə məphəm
go-out-Pur-Inf place

cəθhokphəm 'exit'

Another interesting situation in which trisyllabic compounds are produced through affixation is that of **disyllables** in which the first element is a verbal root. Compounds having an initial verbal root are very rare in Manipuri (those having the root *phəm* as the second element (see 3.3.5.) are exceptions to this rule); really in order to avoid such compounds, the language adds the prefix *ə* in situations of the above in which the element is a verbal root. Examples.

tə-bə-ŋi məməŋ
stitch-Inf-Gen price
'price for stitching'

ətumən 'stitching charge'

nəm-bə-ŋi məməŋ
work-Inf-Gen price
'price for working'

ənəmman 'wages'

cə-ne-bə ɣət
eat-Pur-Inf thing
'thing for eating'

əcəpət 'food'

yək-ə-bə əŋ
rear-Perf-Inf animal
'animal that has been reared up'

əyəkə 'pet animal'

3.4 The fourth process that can form the basis of trisyllabic compounds in Manipuri is the use of disyllabic compounds as one of the constituent elements of compounding, as seen in the following instances:

(a) əpək-pe ləy
broad-Inf earth

ləybak 'country'

ləy-ŋi ləybak
god-Gen country
'god's country'

ləyɣəybak 'heaven'

(b) u-ŋi məkhok
tree-Gen shaft

ukhok 'timber'

ətən-bə ukhok
short-Inf timber

ukhekten 'pillar'

(c) əka-bə isin
climb-Inf water

ika 'flood'

ika-ŋi ɣa
flood-Gen fish

ikəŋa 'fish which come up during a flood'

3.8.5 Compound words containing more than three syllables are very rare in Manipuri. We have noticed only a few such compounds like *thawanmicak* 'star' and *mepanthakphen* 'urinal'. However, as we have noted in the previous chapter (see 2.12 and also 4.1), inflected forms of words in Manipuri can quite easily have four or more syllables.

3.9 Other derivational processes

3.9.1 We have pointed out earlier that the derivational system of Manipuri is served almost exclusively by the process of compounding. Some of the affixes that have been found to occur in composite words, such as the prefix *a* as in *acapot* 'food' (see 3.8.3) or the suffix *bo* as in *nugsubo* 'mason' (see 3.6.4) have been shown to occur as remnants of the underlying structures of compounding.

However, there do occur some composite words for which we may have to postulate affixation as the underlying process, at least from a synchronic point of view. For example, there is a set of words containing the morpheme *loy*, such as *pakhloy* 'messenger', *cakloy* 'cook', *sakloy* 'person who cuts grass', *sannarev* 'player', etc. as involving compounding only from a historical point of view. (In old Manipuri *loy* had the meaning 'servant'). Synchronically, we may have to regard this *loy* as a suffix.

3.9.2 Secondly, there are certain instances in which forms of words containing inflectional affixes have developed additional idiosyncratic connotations, and in some instances of this nature, there is a possibility of regarding the forms as distinct words involving a derivational process rather than an inflectional one.

For example, the prefix *mo* can generally be added to any given verbal root in order to produce word-forms that denote the mode of carrying out the relevant action or process. This is a regular productive process and can therefore be regarded as an inflectional one. Examples:

pabe	'to read'	mepa	'way of reading'
khoybo	'to plough'	mekhoy	'way of ploughing'
lambo	'to be noisy'	meraj	'way of being noisy'
kanbo	'to be dry'	mekaj	'way of being dry'

However, there are some words produced by adding this prefix *mo* to verbal roots which, rather irregularly, denote abstract entities or even concrete objects that have resulted from the concerned events. Examples:

(i) Denoting abstract objects

poikpa	'to be born'	mapok	'birth'
leppa	'to stand'	morep	'height, depth'
hawbo	'to be tasty'	mehaw	'taste'
laybo	'to turn'	morey	'trick, argument'

(ii) Denoting concrete objects

ponbo	'to bind'	mepun	'bundle'
phembo	'to sit'	mephem	'place, location'
yanbo	'to be many'	meyam	'many objects'
ibo	'to write'	meyi	'mark'
pacbo	'to help'	mepaj	'friend'

3.9.3 Another interesting context in which the prefix *mo* occurs as a formative is in the case of certain bound roots which, when used by themselves must necessarily have the prefix *mo* attached to them; while

Manipuri Grammar

occurring with other roots as parts of compound words, however, this prefix need not occur with them (see 3.4 for examples). Further, in the case of some words, the use of this prefix *me* is optional. Examples:

taṅ	-	metan	'joint'
teṅ	-	meten	'fresh'
na	-	mena	'leaf'

There is another prefix, namely *ka*, which also shows similar irregularity in its usage. Examples:

keran	'the place where the thighs join the body'	landay	'joint'
kabuk	'inner part of bamboo'	puḥ	'belly'
kəbək	'parched rice'	pokkhaybo	'be burst'

The occurrence of the suffix *bi* in some compounds, especially when the person referred to is female (see 3.6.4.1) may also necessitate the postulation of the process of affixation in some cases. The situation is as follows: normally, the infinitive form ending in *be* can be used for denoting both male as well as female agents. Examples:

Male or female

cephusabo	'potter'	telhanba	'archer'
usubo	'carpenter'	yotsuba	'blacksmith'
sonasabo	'goldsmith'	wariliba	'story teller'

In the case of some words, however, a distinction is made between male and female agents by changing the suffix *ba* to *bi* for denoting female agents. This appears to be a recent development. Examples:

Male		Female	
phisabo	'weaver'	phisabi	'weaver'
lucinba	'leader'	lucinbi	'leader'
imannaba	'friend'	imannabi	'friend'
mayba	'priest'	maybi	'priestess'

In the case of personal names also, similar distinction appears to get established in the modern period. However, there are also personal names ending in *bi* such as *tombi* and *canbi* and in *ba* such as *tomba* and *canba* which are used for both men as well as women.

In the case of pairs of words of the above-mentioned nature (showing male-female distinction), one might regard the feminine forms as being derived through affixation, i.e. by the use of the feminine suffix *i* (*bi*). Notice, however, that *bi* also functions as a nominal root in this language in the sense of 'female' or 'other of beasts', it occurs in composite words like *nupi* 'woman, wife', *maybi* 'midwife', *sabi* 'grown female animal', etc.

Chapter 4

SENTENCE STRUCTURE

4.1 Category distinctions

The sentences of Manipuri are mainly of two different types, which we might call as nominals and verbals. The former contain primarily two different noun phrases which are linked by the copula *ni* 'be'. The latter contain a verb as their predicate and one or more noun phrases occurring as arguments. The former show only an affirmative-negative- interrogative distinction, whereas the latter show several additional distinctions such as those of tense, aspect and mood. Examples:

Nominal sentences

- (1a) mahak oja ni
he teacher Cop
'He is the teacher'
- (1b) mahak oja nat-te
he teacher be-Neg
'He is not the teacher'
- (1c) mahak oja-ra
he teacher-Q
'Is he the teacher?'

Verbal sentences

- (2a) aykhoy ehum su-y
we three number-NFu
'We are three persons'
- (2b) mahak eygon-de saw-wi
he I-Loc angry-NFu
'He is angry with me'
- (2c) ey-ne komla khok-i
I-Nom orange peel-NFu
'I peeled the orange'
- (2d) mahak bejar-de cat-te
he market-Loc go-Neg
'He did not go to the market'

(2c)

mahak isin thok-a-ra
 he water drink-Perf-Q
 'Has he drunk water?'

Corresponding to this primary two-fold disjunction in the types of sentences, Manipuri makes a two-fold distinction among its lexical items (word classes), namely between nouns and verbs. It includes adjectivals, and also some of the adverbials, in the category of verbs and differentiates them sharply from the category of nouns. (Adverbial notions are otherwise denoted by verbal affixes). It also has a category of inflectional affixes which, however, is grammatical rather than lexical. These also divide into two distinct groups, namely nominal and verbal.

As we have mentioned earlier (2.1.1), word-formation involves primarily the process of compounding in this language. This compounding process is restricted to the derivation of nominal bases. Verbal bases, on the other hand, involve either a syntactic process called noun incorporation, or an inflectional process by which adverbial affixes, spatial affixes and valency changing affixes are attached to the verb.

These nominal and verbal processes of base-formation differ from one another most importantly by the fact that the constituent elements retain their identity in the latter case but not in the former case (i.e. in nominal base-formation).

There is generally a correlation, in Manipuri, between individual syllables occurring in a word or word-form on the one hand, and monosyllabic roots or affixes on the other. Almost all roots of this language are monosyllabic (see 2.12). The affixes which occur with these roots are also rather uniformly represented by individual syllables and not by parts of syllables or forms that involve two or more syllables. These roots and affixes are clearly separable from one another even in long stretches of forms containing ten or more syllables. Examples:

- (3a) thap-dok-4nn-nə-jə-rəm-gə-da-bə-ni-də-ko
 carry-cut-together-Rec-Refl-Compl-Fu-Emph-Inf-Cop-Emph-wish
 'I wished that (I) would have carried (it) out together (with someone)
- (3b) pu-thok-min-nə-rəm-gə-da-bə-de-bu
 carry-cut-together-Rec-Compl-Fu-Emph-Inf-Acc
 'I should have carried it out with (somebody) by that time (but did not)'

The lexicon of the language shows an interesting disparity between nominal and verbal roots. We have been able to collect only about three hundred monosyllabic nominal roots whereas the number of monosyllabic verbal roots that we have been able to gather exceeds one thousand. Nominal bases are derived by using both these types of roots in the process of compounding. They may also be derived through the inflectional process of nominalization. However, the language does not possess a corresponding process of verbalization which apparently reflects the above-mentioned disparity between the nominal and verbal categories.

4.1.1 Nouns and verbs

The distinction between the categories of nouns and verbs is sharp and clear-cut in this language. The two are employed for carrying out two very distinct sets of functions in the sentences. Verbs are used to denote actions, processes or states, whereas nouns are used for denoting persons, objects and other types of entities which participate in actions or processes, or are characterized by states. This functional distinction between nouns and verbs gets reflected in the above-mentioned fact that there are two distinct sets of inflectional

affixes which are associated, rather exclusively, with these two lexical categories for producing various word-forms.

For example, nouns take case suffixes like the nominative, accusative and locative for denoting various types of participants that they represent in the action, process or state that the sentences in which they occur denote; verbs cannot take these suffixes as they are; they need to get nominalized by taking the infinitive suffix, or one of the nominalizing prefixes, before these case suffixes can be attached to them. Nouns also occur with other nominal inflectional affixes like plural, possessive, conjunctive and demonstrative (proximate or remote). None of these nominal affixes can be attached directly to verbal roots.

Verbs, on the other hand, can directly take certain directional and deictic suffixes for denoting different kinds of motions or orientations; they can take several adverbial affixes for associating the relevant adverbial meanings with them; they can also take valency changing suffixes like the causative, reflexive, reciprocal and benefactive for making the necessary modifications in the valency pattern; further, they can occur with the various tense, aspect and mood suffixes and the affixes for denoting negation.

None of these verbal inflectional affixes can be attached to nominal bases in Manipuri. While verbal bases can occur with nominal inflections after they have been nominalized, the language does not have any verbalizing process with the help of which nominal bases can be changed into verbal bases such that one or more of these verbal inflectional affixes can be attached to them. Nouns can occur in the predicative position only in identifying or equational sentences in which the identity between the referents of two different arguments is expressed by the copula *ni*.

Verbal bases can also occur as modifiers of nouns by taking the relativizing suffix, and as modifiers of verbs by taking an adverbial suffix. The former, however, are more like presupposed predicates than adjectives, as they can retain almost all the inflectional affixes that occur with verbs in their function as predicates. The fact that there are distinct modifying constructions for nouns and verbs (relative clauses and adverbial clauses respectively) also reflects the distinctiveness of these two categories in this language.

4.1.2 Identifying adjectives with verbs

Manipuri does not have a distinct category of adjectives. Bases which translate as adjectives in familiar languages like English get included in the category of verbs in this language (see Bhat 1994:189). As we will be describing in detail in a later chapter (7.2), Manipuri verbs fall into three distinct groups, namely actions, processes and states, of which the state verbs include bases that translate as adjectives.

Our claim that adjectives are indistinguishable from verbs in this language is primarily based upon the following points:

(i) Adjectives (or rather, bases which translate as adjectives) take all the inflectional affixes that occur with bases which translate as verbs. These include directional and deictic suffixes, valency changing suffixes, and also tense, aspect and mood suffixes. Examples:

- (4a) *məhak-nə ca-rə-y*
 he-Nom eat-Dei I-NFu
 'He came here and ate'

- (4b) *məhak-phə-rə-y*
 he good-Dei I-NFu
 'He came here and is good'

32

(5a)

mehak-no mathonto las rik pi-jo-y
he-Nom self book give-RefI-NFu
'He gave the book to himself'

(5b)

mehak mathonto saw-jo-y
he self angry-RefI-NFu
'He is angry with himself'

(6a)

ay nia-bu u-de
I he Acc see-Neg
'I did not see him'

(6b)

phi edis gan-de
cloth that red-Neg
'That cloth is not red'

Notice that the addition of a tense suffix like NFU, or a negative suffix which carries the connotation of tense, is obligatory in the case of both adjectival as well as non-adjectival verbal bases. Linguists generally consider such obligatory occurrences of verbal inflections directly with adjectival bases as the clinching evidence for the claim that in such a language adjectives and verbs form a single category.

(ii) Adjectives are indistinguishable from verbs in Manipuri in their adnominal use as well. Both these require the addition of the relativizing (infinitive) suffix *ba* for occurring in the adnominal position. Examples:

(7a)

ca-da-be mi nay
eat-Neg-Inf man ill
'The man who did not eat is ill'

(7b)

paq-da-be mi nay
stupid-Neg man ill
'The man who is not stupid is ill'

When an adjective is directly followed by the infinitive (relativizing) suffix, and is not accompanied by any of its arguments, it generally takes the prefix *a* for occurring in this adnominal position. Traditional grammarians of this language describe this prefix as an adjective-forming prefix. However, non-adjectival verbs also take this prefix when they are used in their bare form in the adnominal position. Examples:

Use of adjectival bases

pik	'small'	epikpa layrik	'small book'
san	'long'	asapba cay	'long stick'
nap	'red'	enapba ce	'red paper'

Use of non adjectival bases

ca	'eat'	acaba mi	'man who eats'
pa	'read'	apaba enap	'boy who reads'
kap	'cry'	okappa mi	'man who cries'

In the case of languages in which adjectives form a distinct category, one generally finds adjectives being used in their bare form (i.e. without any need to attach affixes to them) in the adnominal position (see Bhat 1994:191); the obligatoriness of attaching one or more affixes to them for this purpose in Manipuri

indicates that being a nominal modifier is not an 'unmarked' or natural (categorical) use for them in this language.

Another interesting aspect of the adnominal use of adjectival and other non-adjectival verbs in Manipuri is that they can retain all their tense, aspect and mood distinctions in such a usage. Examples:

- (8a) lak-em-be mi-du cat-kh-re
come-Compl-Inf man-that go-Dei4-Perf
'The man who had come has left'

- (8b) saŋ-gi-be cōy-du ma-gi-ni
long-Dur-Inf stick-that he-Gen-Com
'The stick which is still long is his'

That is, the language does not appear to make any distinction in this regard between predicative use and adnominal (or 'adjectival') use of these adjectival and non-adjectival verbal bases.

(iii) Familiar languages like English, which distinguish between adjectives and verbs, generally make a distinction, among their adnominal modifiers, between modification and presupposed predication (see Bhar 1994:159). In English, for example, prenominal adjectives have the function of modifying the meaning (or *reference*) of the noun whereas postnominal adjectives have the function of providing a presupposed predication regarding the *referent* of that noun. Such a distinction occurs in pairs of expressions like the following (Bolinger 1967):

<i>Reference modification</i>	<i>Referent modification</i>
the responsible man	the man responsible
the only navigable river	the only river navigable

The crucial difference between these two usages is that the former (prenominal adjectives) tend to denote fairly permanent properties, whereas the latter (postnominal adjectives) tend to denote transient properties; only the latter generally show tense, aspect and mood distinctions, as these reflect the transience of the properties concerned.

Manipuri does not make any comparable distinction among its adnominal modifiers; both prenominal as well as postnominal modifiers can retain the tense, aspect and mood distinctions in this language, and hence both of them will have to be considered as denoting only presupposed predications. Examples:

- (9a) gaŋ-ŋem-be phi-du esi-ni
red-Compl-Inf cloth-that this-Cop
'This is the cloth which has been red'
- (9b) phi gaŋ-g-m-be-du esi-ni
cloth red-Compl-Inf-that this-Cop
'This is the cloth which has been red'

This absence of any nominal modifiers proper, which are distinct from presupposed predicates, is correlatable with the fact that Manipuri does not have a distinct adjectival category.

The above-mentioned claim about the nature of adnominal modifiers in Manipuri, namely that they are basically presupposed predications rather than proper modifiers of nouns, is supported by the fact that there is an interesting distinction between nominalizations and relativizations in this language. Both of them are derived by adding the infinitive suffix *ba* to the verb, but in the case of nominalizations, the verb fails to retain tense and tense-bound aspect and mood distinctions, whereas in the case of relativizations, the verb retains all such distinctions (see 1.3.3.2).

That is, the relative clauses of Manipuri fail to show characteristics which are considered to be typical of nominal modifiers and which ascribe some amount of permanence to the properties denoted by them.

As we have mentioned earlier, adjectives occur as state verbs in this language. They do not, however, form a distinct group of their own in that the group of state verbs includes certain adverbial bases and also others which function neither as adverbials nor as adjectivals (see 7.2). Examples:

a) Adjectival state verbs

caw	'big'	pik	'small'
thum	'sweet'	kha	'bitter'
sa	'hot'	in	'cold'

b) Adverbial state verbs

nek	'near'	lap	'far'
hon	'again'	hup	'together'
toy	'frequent'	lot	'infrequent'

c) Other state verbs

tin	'made of'	gay	'only'
khon	'know'	cog	'need'

but is the grouping of verbs into states and non-states (with the latter including actions and processes) is based upon their verbal function as predicates, and not upon their adjectival function as modifiers of nouns.

Some of the verbal affixes of Manipuri show distinct connotations when used with state verbs; some others, on the other hand, have their usage restricted to state verbs; however, in all these instances, the function is based upon the state/non-state division of verbs: both adjectival as well as non-adjectival state verbs behave uniformly in all these instances.

For example, the spatial suffix *tha* 'down' and the adverbial suffix *kum* 'apparently' provide degree modification and convey the meaning of 'very' and 'slight' respectively when attached to state verbs; but this is true of adjectival, adverbial and other types of state verbs. Examples:

- 2a) *chon kop kum taw wɪ*
child cry-apparently does
'The child appears to be crying'

- 2b) *masi mi-gum taw wɪ*
this black-slightly does
'This is slightly black'

- (10c) *mesi cag-gum tawwi*
 this need-appear does
 'There is some (little) need'

Similarly, the reflexive suffix *ja* provides the 'reflexive' meaning (namely that two different case roles are assigned to the same referent) when attached to action and process verbs, whereas it provides the meaning 'by nature' when attached to state verbs; this, however, is true of adjectival as well as non-adjectival state verbs. Examples:

- (11a) *mahak-na mirsen-da (ma-bu-da) yen-ja-y*
 he-Nom mirror-Loc (he-Acc-Emph) look-Refl-NFu
 'He looked at himself in the mirror'
- (11b) *modu ken-ja-y*
 that hard-Refl-NFu
 'It is hard by nature'
- (11c) *makhoy msa-na khare then-joy*
 they self-Nom little late-Refl-NFu
 'Normally they are a little late'

When certain suffixes like perfect *le* and completive *lan*, directional suffixes like *sin* 'in', *thok* 'out' and *khæ* 'up,' and aspectual verbs like *thu* 'be quick' are associated with state verbs, the meaning of the verbs changes from state to process. This change also affects adjectival as well as non-adjectival state verbs. Examples:

- (12a) *mahak-na lak-e*
 he-Nom come-Perf
 'He has come'
- (12b) *ce asi mu-re*
 paper this black-Perf
 'This paper has become black'
- (12c) *warhem asi lu-re*
 matter this difficult-Perf
 'This matter has become difficult'

4.1.3 Absence of an adverbial category

Adverbs also do not form a distinct category in Manipuri. Those denoting time, place, direction and quantity function as state verbs, and take all the tense, aspect, mood, directionality and valency suffixes that occur with other state verbs. However, other adverbial notions like manner and degree, and some of quantity, are denoted by affixes or particles which are attached to verbs. Some of the place and time distinctions are also denoted by nominal bases which function as non-core arguments of sentences and take case markers either directly or as parts of noun phrases (see 5.7).

The following sentences exemplify the occurrence of adverbials as state verbs:

- (23b) *layrik pa-be ey ni*
 book read-Inf I Cop
 'I am the one who reads books'

(iii) *Relative word*

- (24a) *nerap lak-po-du kona-no ome ni*
 yesterday come-Inf-that who-Q one Cop
 'It is somebody (that I don't know) who came yesterday' (and not Tomba)
- (24b) *mohak-no pam-be-du kori-no shum khek ni*
 he-Nom want-Inf-that what-Q three only Cop
 'What he wants are some (unknown) three things only'

(iv) *Possessive phrases*

- (25a) *layrik map-khi-be tomba-gi-ni*
 book lose-Deid-Inf Tomba-Gen-Cop
 'The book which was lost is Tomba's'
- (25b) *khongup esi ey-gi ipa-gi-ni*
 shoe this I-Gen father-Gen-Cop
 'This shoe is my father's'

(v) *Numerals*

- (26a) *ce esi-gi momol lupa oni ni*
 paper this-Gen price Rupee two Cop
 'The price of this paper is two Rupees'
- (26b) *toroi-ke mapon-go tora-toruk-ni*
 seven-Conj nine-Conj ten-six-Cop
 'Seven plus nine is sixteen'

(vi) *Time or space markers*

- (27a) *mohak-no phom-be mokha ni*
 he-Nom sit-Inf below Cop
 'He sits below'
- (27b) *mohak-no lak-ke-de-be heyeg ni*
 he-Nom come-Fu-Emph-Inf tomorrow Cop
 'His arrival is tomorrow'

They may also have a relativized sentence as their constituent, in which case the predicate in the infinitive would be contrasted with the rest of the clause. Example:

- (28a) *ey-no mapon-de layrik ome pi*
 I-Nom he-Loc book one gave
 'I gave him a book'
- (28b) *ey-no mapon-de layrik ome pi-be ni*
 I-Nom he-Loc book one give-Inf Cop
 'What I did was give him a book'

Notice that the infinitive form of the verb occurring in these nominal sentences is a relative clause functioning as a noun phrase by itself and not a nominalized clause. This claim is supported by the fact that the infinitive forms retain their tense and tense-based aspect and mood distinctions in these constructions (see 13.3.2). Examples

- (29a) cak ca-de-be ni tombe ni
food eat-NGNg-Inf man Tomba Cop
'The man who did not eat food is Tomba'
- (29b) cak ca-rov-de-be ni tombe ni
food eat-ING-Emph-Inf man Tomba Cop
'The man who will not eat food is Tomba'

It is possible to shift any of the noun phrases of such a relativized nominal sentence to the pre-copula position and thereby have it contrasting with the rest of the sentence for the purpose of equation. Examples.

- (28c) ey-ne magon-de pi-be layrik ome ni
I-Nom he-Loc give-Inf book one Cop
'What I gave him was a book'
- (28d) ey-ne layrik ome pi-be magon-de ni
I-Nom book one give-Inf he-Loc Cop
'It was to him that I gave a book'
- (28e) magon-de layrik ome pi-be ey-ne ni
he-Loc book one give-Inf I-Nom Cop
'It was I that that gave him a book'

This is also true of other types of nominal sentences; either of the two noun phrases occurring in them can be shifted to the pre-copula position (which is the focus position). Examples:

- (30a) ey-gi merup tombe ni
I-Gen friend Tomba Cop
'My friend is Tomba'
- (30b) tombe ey-gi merup ni
Tomba I-Gen friend Cop
'Tomba is my friend'

The copula *ni* occurring in these nominal sentences can have one other form, namely the negative *natte* as shown below:

- (31) layrik mag-khi-be tombe-gi natte
book lose-Dei4-Inf Tomba-Gen not
'The book which was lost is not Tomba's'
- (32) ey-ne keythel-de cat-lu-be gosi natte
I-Nom market-Loc go-Dei2-Inf today not
'It is not today that I go to the market'

While forming sentential questions from nominal sentences, the copula is deleted and the question particle *lo* is used in its position. Examples:

- (33a) mohak-ki marup tomba-ni
he-Gen friend Tomba-Cop
'His friend is Tomba'
- (33b) mohak-ki marup tomba-ro
he-Gen friend Tomba-Q
'Is his friend Tomba?'

4.2.2 Verbal sentences

The verbal sentences fall into three different sub-types depending upon whether the verbs occurring in them denote a state, a process or an action.

In addition to the copulative verb *ni* which connects two different noun phrases of a nominal sentence, (as described in the previous section), Manipuri has certain additional copulative verbs like *oy* 'be the characteristic', *nan* 'be similar' and *su* 'be the number' which also relate the referents of two different noun phrases, but these verbs behave like other state verbs in taking inflectional suffixes; sentences containing these latter copulative verbs can therefore be regarded as forming verbal sentences. Examples:

- (34) mohak oja oy-re
he teacher be-Perf
'He has become a teacher'
- (35) ma mo-pa mahli
he his-father resemble-NFu
'He resembles his father'
- (36) eykhoy ohum su-ram-mi
we three number-Compl-NFu
'We were three (persons)'

Among the three types of verbal sentences, the ones containing state and process verbs are similar to one another in their sentence structure, but the ones containing action verbs are rather different. The former generally have a theme only or a theme and a related argument (like location) as their core argument, whereas the latter generally have (i) an actor and a patient or location, or (ii) an actor, a patient, and a location as their core arguments. Action verbs that occur only with an actor (i.e. without an accompanying patient or location) are rather rare in this language.

In view of this difference between action and non-action sentences, we may probably correlate the patient (or location) of the former with the theme of the latter. In fact, the two are related, as for example, through the process of causativization. When the causative suffix *ham* is attached to a state or process verb, the verb takes ambiguously either a causer or an actor as a new argument, and its theme changes into a patient or location. Examples:

- (37a) coy esi telli
stick this short
'This stick is short'

- (37b) *ey-ne cay esi ten-helli*
I-Nom stick this short-caused
'I shortened this stick'
- (38a) *mehak khoggi*
he knows
'He knows'
- (38b) *ey-ne mehak-pu khog-helli*
I-Nom he-Acc know-caused
'I informed him'
- (38c) *ey-ne majon-de khog-helli*
I-Nom he-Loc know-caused
'I informed (to) him'
- (39a) *pukham tebel-de uppi*
plate table-Loc upside down
'The plate is (rests) upside down on the table'
- (39b) *ey-ne pukham tebel-de up-helli*
I-Nom plate table-Loc upside down-caused
'I placed the plate upside down on the table'

There are also several state and process verbs which can occur as action verbs without the need to attach any suffixes to them. In such instances, the verbs may either take a new actor argument (in which case, their theme would function as a patient), or have their theme replaced by an actor (see 10.2.1). Examples:

- (40a) *tebel majol-lom-de leggi*
table he-towards-Loc moved
'The table moved towards him'
- (40b) *ey-ne tabel majol-lom-de leggi*
I-Nom table he-towards-I.Loc moved
'I moved the table towards him'
- (40c) *ey-ne majol-lom-de leggi*
I-Nom he-towards-Loc moved
'I moved towards him'
- (41a) *lambi esi cummi*
road this straight
'This road is straight'
- (41b) *ey-ne lambi esi cummi*
I-Nom road this straight
'I straightened this road'

4.2 Case marking

Manipuri uses three different case suffixes, namely the nominative *na*, accusative *hu*, and locative *da* for relating the various arguments of the sentence with the verb. These case suffixes are directly associated with semantic (thematic) relations. The nominative suffix denotes the controller of actions and causations (i.e. actors and causers) and also of process verbs (natural forces); it is also used to denote the cause, instrument, material and means, which can be regarded as controllers or co-controllers of the relevant actions or processes (see 6.4 for details). Examples:

- (42a) *ey-ne ma-hu kawwi*
I-Nom he-Acc called
'I called him'
- (42b) *ey-ne ma-hu kap-helli*
I-Nom he-Acc cry-caused
'I made him cry'
- (42c) *nupit-ne ce celli*
wind-Nom paper carried
'The wind carried away the paper'
- (42d) *ey-na wa-ne sen khelli*
I-Nom bamboo-Nom house built
'I built a house with bamboo'
- (42e) *ey-ne nup-ne than pheppi*
I-Nom stone-Nom knife sharpened
'I sharpened the knife with a stone'

Manipuri contrasts this use of the nominative suffix with its non-use (i.e. the use of arguments in their unmarked form) by having the latter denote the theme of state and process verbs. Examples:

- (43a) *ey-ne ma-bu yenpi*
I-Nom he-Acc looked
'I looked at him'
- (43b) *ey-na bu uy*
I-Nom he-Acc saw
'I saw him'
- (44a) *mehak-ne semcet haili*
he-Nom comb combed
'He combed (his hair) (with) a comb'
- (44b) *mehak mesa moy*
he body fat
'He is fat (in the body)'

The accusative suffix denotes the affected participant (patient); it is used with both actions as well as processes, but not with states; the suffix is generally left unspecified in the case of inanimate patients, but

in contexts in which there is a need to emphasize or disambiguate the patient, it does get specified even in the case of inanimate patients (see 6.5). Its use is the most frequent with arguments that denote an animate patient (especially a human patient). Examples:

- (45) *huy-na ma-hu ciki*
 dog-Nom he-Acc bit
 'The dog bit him'
- (46a) *ey-na layrik pay*
 I-Nom book read
 'I read a book'
- (46h) *ey-na layrik-tu-hu pay*
 I-Nom book-that-Acc read
 'I read that (particular) book'

The locative suffix has a wide range of usages, as it can denote not only the location proper (which can include meanings like 'in', 'on', 'over', 'at', 'by', etc), but also the source ('from'), goal ('to') and even the experiencer of actions, processes and states (characteristics). It alternates with the patient in the case of some action verbs (where the patient can be perceived as the location rather than as the affected participant) and with the instrument in the case of some other verbs (where the instrument or material can be viewed as the location of the action concerned). Notice, however, that in all these different usages, the notion of a location is clearly discernible (see 6.6). Examples:

- (47a) *layrik tchel-de ley*
 book table-Loc is
 'The book is on the table'
- (47b) *nej-gi sel upu-de ley*
 you-Gen money box-Loc is
 'Your money is in the box'
- (47c) *lin-na u-de yetli*
 snake-Nom tree-Loc coiled
 'The snake coiled around the tree'
- (47d) *ey-na majon-de isey temmi*
 I-Nom he-Loc song learnt
 'I learnt a song (from) him'
- (47e) *mesi eyjon-de say*
 it I-Loc hot
 'This is hot for me'
- (47f) *ey-na hes-te lak-i*
 I-Nom bus-Loc come-NFt
 'I came by bus'

In addition to these three case suffixes (which contrast with the unmarked argument), the language also makes use of the genitive *gi* for denoting the beneficiary in the case of some verbs, and the conjunctive *go*

for denoting the associate. These two uses may be regarded as extended uses of these suffixes respectively (see 6.7 and 6.8). Examples:

- (48a) *mesi tomba-gi layrik ni*
this Tomba-Gen book Cop
'This is Tomba's book'
- (48b) *mesi tomba-gi ok-i*
this Tomba-Gen sufficient-Nfu
'This is sufficient for Tomba'
- (49a) *oy-go nta-go celli*
I-Conj he-Conj ran
'I and he ran'
- (49b) *oy-ne ma-go celli*
I-Nom he-Conj ran
'I ran with him'
- (50) *oy-ne ma-go yay*
I-Nom he-Conj agree
'I agree with him'

4.3 Grammatical relations

As pointed out in detail in Bhat (1991), Manipuri makes a clear-cut distinction in the representations of semantic (thematic) and pragmatic relations. Semantic relations like controllers of actions (actors or causers), affected participants of actions or processes (patients) and locations of various types are represented directly by case markers, whereas pragmatic relations like topic and focus are represented by the relative order of arguments and also by certain redundant aspects of the use of case markers. In view of this distinctiveness of the representation of semantic and pragmatic relations, there is no need to postulate abstract grammatical relations like subject and direct object for describing the sentence structure of this language.

For example, a patient or a location can be shifted to the topic position in a sentence merely by moving it to the sentence-initial position; an actor (or any other argument) can be suppressed by merely leaving it out of the sentence. The fact that the language does not attach any agreement markers to the verb makes this suppression of an argument in a sentence very easy. One does not require any special grammatical processes like passivization for this purpose. This removes, from the grammar of Manipuri, one important situation in which the postulation of grammatical relations is generally considered to be necessary. Examples:

- (51a) *tomba-ne cawbo-de cak happi*
Tomba-Nom Chaoba-Loc food served
'Tomba served food to Chaoba'
- (51b) *cawbo-de tomba-ne cak happi*
Chaoba-Loc Tomba-Nom food served
'Chaoba was served food by Tomba'

- (51c) cawbe do cak happi
 Chaoba-Loc food served
 Chaoba was served food'

- (51d) cak happi
 food served
 Food was served

Another important area in which grammatical relations have been generally found to be very useful is the description of various morphosyntactic processes that occur in the language. Processes like causativization, compound formation, complementation, coreference in infinitive constructions and in sentence conjoining, formation of reflexive and reciprocal constructions, etc., are generally found to be conditioned by grammatical relations like subject in familiar languages; in Manipuri, however, these are either non-constrained or constrained by notions like volitionality (see below for examples).

Manipuri also does not provide any set of characteristics that can be used for selecting one of the arguments of its sentences as the subject. As we have mentioned earlier, its verbs do not show any agreement with any of the arguments of the sentence and hence this particular feature is unavailable for identifying the subject.

Case marking is also unhelpful in this regard because the use of nominative suffix for denoting a core argument is restricted to action sentences. It marks a 'controlling' argument (which occurs only in action sentences) as a core argument. In the case of state and process sentences also, the suffix is used for denoting non-core arguments like the natural force or cause which are perceived as non-volitional controllers or the ones like instrument, material or means which are perceived as co-controllers in the corresponding action sentences. Manipuri does not mark the theme of state and process verbs, i.e. the core argument which is generally regarded as the subject of such sentences in familiar languages with its nominative suffix.

In contexts in which the semantic relation (or case role) of a given argument is predictable, Manipuri allows the nominative suffix to be used for denoting the pragmatic relation of focus (contrastive reference or comparative meaning). Themes of states and processes as well as actors of actions can occur with the nominative suffix in this fashion. Further, patients and locations, even when unmarked for their case roles, can take the nominative suffix for denoting the focus relation in this fashion (see 6.10.3.1). Examples:

- (52) əy ne thebak tok i
 I Nom work stop-NFu
 I stopped work (but others did not)
- (53) lombi esi-ne pak i
 path this Nom wide-NFu
 This path is wider (than others)
- (54) lombi-ne cəy-re cawbe ne cəy d re
 Tombi Nom scolded Perf Chaoba Nom scolded Neg Perf
 (They) scolded Tombi but not Chaoba

This pragmatic use of the nominative (and of other case suffix as well) is quite distinct from their semantic use; we cannot, however, make use of either of these two occurrences of the nominative suffix for identifying one of the arguments of a sentence as its subject in this language.

Word order also does not help us in selecting one of the arguments of a sentence as its subject. As pointed out elsewhere in this grammar, Manipuri uses the relative order of arguments in the sentence rather exclusively for denoting pragmatic relations like topic and focus. Semantic relations are unaffected by word order change, except that in a few instances of the use of unmarked arguments, word order is helpful in identifying semantic relations. Since this is only an exceptional aspect of word order, it cannot be regarded as forming the basis for characterizing the subject in this language.

4.4 Notion of transitivity

The notion of transitivity plays a prominent role in identifying the subject and direct object in familiar languages like English. The two obligatory arguments of monotransitive sentences are identified as subject and direct object, whereas the single obligatory argument of intransitive sentences is uniformly identified as their subject. The characteristics shown by these three arguments are then used for identifying the subject and direct object in the case of other types of sentences.

This procedure is unavailable in Manipuri because the notion of transitivity does not play a prominent role in its grammar. As we have pointed out earlier, the structure of sentences in Manipuri is based upon a classification of verbs into states, processes and actions, and not upon a classification into transitive and intransitive bases. All the three types of verbs mentioned above (states, processes and actions) show both transitive as well as intransitive valency structures; that is, the state-process-action classification cuts across the transitive-intransitive classification, and the sentence structure and case-marking of this language is unconstrained by the latter classification.

The fact that several languages like Manipuri fail to identify, uniformly, the single argument of intransitive verbs with one of the arguments of transitive verbs has led to the suggestion (Perlmutter 1978) that intransitive verbs might be divided into 'unergatives' and 'unaccusatives' with the latter being regarded as having only a direct object in the underlying structure. It is claimed, however, that both these types of verbs have the single argument functioning uniformly as the subject in the surface structure. However, Manipuri does not appear to provide any basis for this latter claim as well. The unergative-unaccusative distinction continues to be maintained even in the surface structure, as shown by the fact that only the single argument of unergative verbs (action verbs), but not the single argument of unaccusative verbs, is marked by the nominative case suffix.

The non-prominence of transitivity in Manipuri is also evidenced by the fact that in the case of several of its morphosyntactic processes, there is a possibility of the notion of transitivity providing the constraint, but in the actuality it does not. Instead, we find the notion of volitionality playing the crucial role in constraining all of them.

For example, the effect of adding the causative suffix to verbs in familiar languages is to change intransitive bases into monotransitives and monotransitive bases into bitransitives (see Comrie 1985:337). The process of causativization can therefore be regarded as supporting strongly the primacy of transitivity in these familiar languages. In Manipuri, on the other hand, causativization has an entirely different kind of effect on verbal bases, which depends upon the notion of volitionality.

Irrespective of the number of arguments occurring with the verb, the addition of causative suffix changes states and processes (non-volitional verbs) ambiguously into direct (contactive) or indirect (non-contactive) causations, whereas it changes actions (volitional verbs) unambiguously into indirect (non-contactive) causations. Examples:

(i) Change of states and processes ambiguously into direct and indirect causations:

- (55a) isig sawwi
water boiled
'The water boiled'
- (55b) ey-ne isig saw-helli
I-Nom water boil-caused
'I boiled the water' (direct causation)
- (55c) ey-ne ma-bu isig saw-helli
I-Nom he-Acc water boil-caused
'I made him boil the water' (indirect causation)
- (56a) ma layrik phoggi
he book got
'He got a book'
- (56b) ey-ne ma-bu layrik phog-helli
I-Nom he-Acc book get-caused
(i) 'I obtained a book for him' (direct causation)
(ii) 'I made him get a book' (indirect causation)

(ii) Change of actions unambiguously into indirect causations

- (57a) ma-ne celli
he-Nom ran
'He ran'
- (57b) ey-ne ma-bu cel-helli
I-Nom he-Acc run-caused
'I made him run' (indirect causation)
- (58a) ma-ne cak cay
he-Nom food eat
'He ate food'
- (58b) ey-ne ma-bu cak ca-helli
I-Nom he-Acc food eat-caused
'I made him eat food' (indirect causation)

Notice that the notion of transitivity does not play any role in this process of causativization; the first two sentences are non-volitional and therefore lead ambiguously to contactive or non-contactive causations, whereas the next two are volitional and therefore lead non-ambiguously to non-contactive causations. Both these sets of sentences contain intransitive as well as transitive verbs, but this latter fact has no observable effect upon the process of causativization.

Notice further that causative sentences derived from volitional verbs (57b, 58b) denote only non-contactive causation and not contactive causation; that is, they indicate instigations and not actions on the part of the causer; they are therefore quite different from the two causative sentences given earlier, namely those of states (55b-c) and processes (56b i-ii).

Manipuri uses either lexically distinct verbs as in (57c and 58c) given below, or other devices like the addition of the benefactive suffix *bi* to the verb as in (59c) in order to provide the meaning of contactive causation in the case of action sentences. Examples:

- (57c) *ey-ne ma-hi talli*
I-Nom he-Acc chased
'I chased him'
- (58c) *ey-ne ma-bu cak illi*
I-Nom he-Acc food fed
'I fed him food'
- (59a) *ma-ne yim-da helli*
he-Nom house-Loc returned
'He returned home'
- (59b) *ey-ne ma-bu yim-da hoi-helli*
I-Nom he-Acc house-Loc return-caused
'I made him return home' (non-contact causation)
- (59c) *ey-ne ma-gi poya hen-bi*
I-Nom he-Gen money returned-Ben
'I returned his money' (contact causation)

Manipuri also allows the same verbal base to be used ambiguously as intransitive (action) or transitive (contact causation) in some cases. Examples:

- (60a) *ey-ne pay*
I-Nom flew
'I flew'
- (60b) *ey-ne telonka pay*
I-Nom kite flew
'I flew a kite'
- (61a) *ey-ne mangol-lom-do leggi*
I-Nom he-towards-Loc moved
'I moved towards him'
- (61b) *ey-ne mangol-lom-do tobel leggi*
I-Nom he-towards-Loc table moved
'I moved the table towards him'

Another interesting example which indicates the non-prominence of transitivity in Manipuri concerns the use of two different complementizers, namely *haybo* 'that (factive)' and *hayne* 'that (non-factive)'; these two complementizers are the infinitival and adverbial forms respectively of the verb *hay* 'to say' (see 13.2 for details regarding the use of these complementizers).

The recurrence of complements containing these two complementizers is constrained by the fact that the one containing the factive complementizer can have, as its predicate, only a non-volitional (mostly episte-

mic) verb, whereas the one containing the non-factive complementizer can have, as its predicate, only a volitional (mostly deontic) verb. That is, the use of these two complementizers is constrained by the notion of volitionality, but is unconstrained by the notion of transitivity, as can be seen from the following set of verbs that can occur as predicates of these complementizers:

(i) Verbs that can take a non-factive complementizer

Intransitives	transitives
man 'appear'	kaw 'forget'
ya 'possible'	ninsɔŋ 'remember'
ta 'necessary'	
cum 'true'	

(ii) Verbs that can take a factive complementizer

Intransitive	transitive
hay 'say'	heŋ 'ask'
nig 'wish'	ni 'request'
khen 'think'	tək 'persuade'
lep 'decide'	pən 'mention'
ya 'agree'	cɔy 'abuse'

Examples.

- (62a) ma-ne wa hay haybo ɔy kawwi
 he-Nom word said that I forgot
 'I forgot that he spoke'

- (62b) *ma-ne wa hay hayne ɔy kawwi
 he-Nom word said that I forgot

- (63a) *ma-ne kɛppi haybo ɔy-ne hɔy
 he-Nom wept that I-Nom said

- (63b) ma-ne kɛppi hayne ɔy-ne hay
 he-Nom wept that I-Nom said
 'I said that he wept'

There do occur some predicates like *khəp* 'know', *ta* 'hear', *ɪw* 'worry', *u* 'see, realize', which may take either of these two types of complements, but there are subtle meaning differences involving volitionality which differentiates between the two usages. Examples:

- (64a) ma lak-kəni haybo ɔy ciŋney
 he come-Fu that I doubt
 'I doubt that he will come' (doubt based upon general knowledge)

- (64b) ma lak-kəni hayne ɔy ciŋney
 he come-Fu that I doubt
 'I doubt that he will come' (doubt based on the speaker's own presumption)

Notice that these latter group of predicates also include both transitive as well as intransitive verbs.

4.5 Notion of external argument

As pointed out by Bhat (1991:110), the notion of an external argument derives from the grammaticalization of topic (which is a pragmatic relation) in familiar languages like English. This grammaticalization has the effect of making an argument occur obligatorily as an external argument in all sentences (i.e. even in those sentences in which there is no topic). It also has the effect of making that argument function as the pivot for the various morphosyntactic processes that occur in the language (see Foley and Van Valin 1984). It has been generally claimed that this external argument can be identified as the subject of the sentence.

Manipuri is rather different from these familiar languages in that it has not grammaticalized the topic of its sentences in that fashion. It has quite distinct representations for semantic and pragmatic relations as we have pointed out above. Further, it is not possible to specify any particular argument of its sentences as the pivot of its various morphophonemic processes. The processes appear to treat all the arguments of the sentence uniformly for their application.

4.5.1 For example, when two sentences are conjoined, Manipuri allows a coreferential argument occurring in the second clause to be deleted; however, this deleted argument can be coreferential with any of the arguments of the first clause; there is no constraint, as in English, that it can only be a specific one, called the external argument (or subject), of the first clause. Examples:

- (65) nupa-ne nupi-bu phuy adgo koppi
man-Nom woman-Acc beat and cried
(i) 'The man beat the woman and (the man) cried'
(ii) 'The man beat the woman and (the woman) cried'
- (66) mi-tu-ne ucek-te nuy log-bo-do taroki
man-that-Nom bird-Loc stone throw-Inf-Loc fell
(i) 'As the man threw a stone at the bird, (the bird) fell'
(ii) 'As the man threw a stone at the bird, (the man) fell'

Notice that the coreferential noun in the first clause can be either the one in the nominative or the one in the accusative in (65); in (66) also, it can be either the noun in the nominative or the one in the locative. English, on the other hand, allows coreference only with the argument in the nominative (see Comrie 1981).

4.5.2 This is also true of the use of pronouns in Manipuri. The constraint which affects them is only that their antecedent must precede them; notions like relative dominance or 'c-command' do not have any relevance in their usage. Examples:

- (67a) tombagi morup-ne ma-bu kowwi
Tomba's friend-Nom he-Acc called
'Tomba's friend called him (Tomba)'
- (67b) tombagi morup-pu ma-ne kowwi
Tomba's friend-Acc he-Nom called
'Tomba called his (Tomba's) friend'

- (67c) *ma-ne tombagi marup-pu kawwi*
 he-Nom Tomba's friend-Acc called
 'He (someone else) called Tomba's friend'
- (67d) *ma-bu tombagi marup-ne kawwi*
 he-Acc Tomba's friend-Nom called
 'Tomba's friend called him (someone else)'

Notice that the word *tomba* can be the antecedent of the pronoun *ma* 'he' only in (67a) and (67b) where it precedes the pronoun, but not in (67c) and (67d) where it follows the pronoun. It can function as the antecedent of the pronoun in (67b) in spite of the fact that it is being c-commanded by the pronoun, whereas in (67d) it fails to function as the antecedent in spite of its being in the command position.

It is possible, in all these sentences, for the pronoun *ma* 'he' to be coreferential with some other argument (i.e. an individual who has been referred to in a previous sentence or is being contextually determined) because of the ambiguity of that pronoun; this is true of other third person pronouns as well.

In order to remove this ambiguity from third person pronouns, Manipuri makes use of a special anaphoric pronoun (see Bhat 1977) which can be coreferential only with an argument that has been specified in the sentence itself. Unlike the ordinary third person pronouns, this special anaphoric pronoun can be coreferential either with a preceding or a following argument. Examples:

- (68a) *cawba-bu mesagi para tombe-ne tombi*
 Chaoba-Acc self's lesson Tomba-Nom taught
 'Tomba taught his (T's or C's) lesson to Chaoba'
- (68b) *mesagi para tombe-ne cawba-bu tombi*
 self's lesson Tomba-Nom Chaoba-Acc taught
 'Tomba taught his (T's or C's) lesson to Chaoba'
- (68c) *tombe-ne mesagi layrik cawba-de pi*
 Tomba-Nom self's book Chaoba-Loc gave
 'Tomba gave his (T's or C's) book to Chaoba'

4.5.3 Adverbials occurring in a clause can have ambiguously either the actor or the patient (or location) as their controller, and on this point also Manipuri does not make any differentiation among the arguments of a given sentence. Examples:

- (69) *ay-ne nungay-ne-be tombe-de layrik pi*
 I-Nom happy-Pur-Inf Tomba-Loc book gave
 (i) 'I gave a book to Tomba (for myself) to be happy'
 (ii) 'I gave a book to Tomba (for him) to be happy'
- (70) *phamun-de hip-pi-ney-de tombe-ne cawba-bu kawwi*
 bed-Loc lie-Dur-time-Loc Tomba-Nom Chaoba-Acc called
 (i) 'Tomba called Chaoba while (Tomba was) lying on bed'
 (ii) 'Tomba called Chaoba while (Chaoba was) lying on bed'

4.5.4 Another interesting illustration of this absence of any pivot in Manipuri sentences is the use of the reflexive suffix *jo*; when this suffix is added to the verb, one of the arguments of the sentence would be

unspecified, but this unspecified argument can be coreferential with any of the remaining arguments in the sentence. Example:

- (71) *ey-ne tombo-bu sel khore pi-jo-helli*
 I-Nom Tomba-Acc money some give-Rec1-caused
 'I made Tomba give some money (to himself)'
 (i) 'I made Tomba give some money (to himself)'
 (ii) 'I made Tomba give some money (to me)'

Notice that the argument left unspecified in (71), namely the recipient, can be coreferential with the causer as in (i) or with the causer as in (ii).

4.5.5 This is also true of reciprocal verbs in Manipuri, which are formed by adding the suffix *ne* to them. Example:

- (72) *mokhey-ne huy thaw-jon-na-y*
 they-Nom dog set-Rec-NFu
 (i) 'They set dogs at one another (at themselves)'
 (ii) 'They set dogs at one another (at the dogs)'

4.5.6 When sentences are nominalized and made 'tenseless', languages with an external argument (or subject) are found to shift their subject to the position of an oblique argument. In English, for example, the subject of infinitive clauses occurs in its genitive form. Example:

- (73a) *He will go tomorrow*
 (73b) *I agreed to his going tomorrow*

Manipuri has an infinitive (nominalized) construction that can be regarded as 'tenseless' as it fails to show any tense and tense-based aspect and mood distinctions. However, the construction retains all the arguments of the original clause unchanged. Examples:

- (74a) *ma-ne heyey cel-keni*
 he-Nom tomorrow go-Fu
 'He will go tomorrow.'
 (74b) *ey-ne ma-ne heyey cel-pe yay*
 I-Nom he-Nom tomorrow go-Inf agreed
 'I agreed to his going tomorrow.'
 (75a) *ma-ne tombo-de layrik pi-goni*
 he-Nom Tomba-Loc book give-Fu
 'He will give the book to Tomba.'
 (75b) *ey-ne ma-bu tombo-de layrik pi-be thay*
 I-Nom he-Acc Tomba-Loc book give-Inf sent
 'I sent him to give the book to Tomba.'

Manipuri does change the case markers of arguments in the case of nominalizations that are derived by attaching the prefix *khui* or *mo* to the verb, but in such nominalizations, all the arguments occurring in the sentence are uniformly changed into genitives. Example:

- (76a) ma-ne cak cay
 he-Nom food ate
 'He ate food'
- (76b) ma-gi cak-ki khuca phoje-de
 he-Gen food-Gen eating good-not
 'His way of eating food is not good'

4.5.7 The need to have passivization as a grammatical device in familiar languages may be regarded as deriving from the fact that they have grammaticalized the pragmatic notion of topic. That is, these languages have assigned the position of topic (as the subject) to certain specific arguments in the sentence (like the actor of action sentences), and in order to bring some other argument like patient or location to the topic position, and also the position of the pivot for coreference and other similar purposes, they require a special grammatical device called passivization. They also require such a device for suppressing the argument that normally occupies the position of the topic.

Since Manipuri has not grammaticalized the topic of its sentences, it does not require any special grammatical device like passivization for bringing any of the arguments of the sentence to the topic position. It can use its usual topicalization device for this purpose. Further, since coreference and other such features of this language are not constrained by any pivot as we have mentioned above, Manipuri also does not require any grammatical device of altering the pivot.

The suppression of an argument is rather easy in Manipuri sentences as we have pointed out earlier in this chapter; one has to merely leave the argument unspecified; Manipuri allows any of the arguments to be left unspecified in this fashion, excepting the ones which occur as classifiers or incorporated ones primarily for the purpose of disambiguation. Since the verbs in Manipuri sentences do not agree with any of their arguments, non-specification of an argument has the effect of completely suppressing that argument. Examples:

- (77a) pulis-ne huranbe-bu pha-re
 police-Nom thief-Acc catch-Perf.
 'The police have caught the thief'
- (77b) huranb-bu pha-re
 thief-Acc caught-Perf
 'The thief has been caught'

Notice that in (77b) the actor of the sentence has been left out, and this has the effect of completely suppressing the actor of the action that the sentence represents.

4.6 Word-order typology

One might perhaps claim that Manipuri is an SOV language, but as we have pointed out in the previous two sections, grammatical notions like subject and object are unavailable in this language. Hence, the aspect of this typological claim which is relevant for this language is only that its sentences are verb-final. All the arguments that are associated with the verb occur to the left of the verb. This is true of adverbial constructions also; they too precede the verb in a sentence.

The relative order of arguments to the left of the verb is based upon pragmatic factors like topicality and focus. The topic occurs at the left-most position of the sentence whereas the focus is generally placed

closest to the verb. The latter may be marked by emphatic particles like *ra* when necessary. Any given argument can be shifted to the position of the topic or of the focus. Examples:

- (76a) *ey-ne mañon-de sel khara pi*
 I-Nom he-Loc money some gave
 'I gave him some money'
- (76b) *mañon-de ey-ne sel khara pi*
 he-Loc I-Nom money some gave
 'He was given some money by me'
- (76c) *sel khara mañon-de ey-ne pi*
 money some he-Loc I-Nom gave
 'Some money was given to him by me'

In order to place stronger emphasis on one of the arguments, the whole sentence may be relativized and the argument to be emphasized as the focus may be shifted to the right of the relativized verb with the copula *ni* added to it. Examples:

- (76d) *sel khara mañonde pi-be ey-ne ni*
 money some he-Loc give-Inf I-Nom Cop
 'It was I who gave him some money'
- (76e) *ey-ne sel khara pi-be mañon-de ni*
 I-Nom money some give-Inf he-Loc Cop
 'It was to him that I gave some money'

Chapter 5

NOMINAL CATEGORY

5.1 Types of nouns

As we have pointed out in the previous chapter (4.1.1), Manipuri makes a primary distinction between nouns and verbs. Nouns have the function of identifying the participants that are involved in the action, process or state that the verbs denote. They take (i) case suffixes in order to indicate the nature of this participation (case roles), (ii) genitive *gi* and conjunctive *go* for denoting their relation with other participants, and (iii) other suffixes like *sig* 'plural', *si* 'proximate', and *du* 'remote' for denoting their internal characteristics. They also occur with particles like *to* 'emphatic', *ti* 'only' and *su* 'also', for denoting other types of meaning distinctions. The use of these affixes and particles, with some isolated exceptions, is restricted to the nominal category.

We may classify the bases which occur in this category into several subgroups depending upon the function that they perform in the sentence, and also upon the morphosyntactic characteristics that they manifest, with the latter distinctions apparently resulting from the former distinctions. Our description of this category is based upon the following subgrouping of these bases:

- | | |
|-----|---------------------------|
| 5.2 | Common nouns |
| 5.3 | Pronouns |
| 5.4 | Wh-words |
| 5.5 | Numerals |
| 5.6 | Kinship terms, and |
| 5.7 | Location and time markers |

5.2 Common nouns

Compared to verbal bases, the number of nominal bases that function as common nouns is rather small in Manipuri. We have recorded only about three hundred independent (monosyllabic) nominal bases of this nature. This does not mean, however, that the number of nouns in the language is small. There are, in fact, a large number of polysyllabic nominal bases (mostly disyllabic) but almost all of them are derived by joining together two or more monosyllabic nominal bases, or by joining together nominal bases with verbal bases. We have described in detail the general structuring of these derived nominal words (compounds) in the third chapter.

Underived nominal bases denote primarily artifacts, abstract ideas, institutionalized parts, flora and fauna, and body parts. The following is a sample list of these monosyllabic nominal bases. Some of these bases require a prefix *mo* (related to the third person pronominal prefix *mo*), to be added to them if they are to be used by themselves (see below 5.2.1).

(i) *Articles*

(a)	kon khan pun	'utensils' 'frying pan' 'pitcher'	than (mō)na	'knife' 'handle (of basket)'
(b)	in khev lon	'fishing net' 'fish-hook' 'fishing basket'	kaw lan	'fishing trap' 'snare'
(c)	ce (mō)vek phan tum	'paper' 'letter' 'stool' 'pin'	muk pan ca tan	'ink' 'sheet' 'sealing wax' 'chapter'

(ii) *Abstract ideas*

mol	'opinion'	paw	'news'
ciŋ	'whim'	(mō)way	'argument'
(mō)lom	'vengeance'	mōŋ	'dream'
nat	'culture'	thow	'duty, work'

(iii) *Institutionalized parts*

yum	'house'	soŋ	'hut'
ka	'room'	thoŋ	'door'
khun	'village'	pat	'lake'
mōŋ	'cremation ground'	pan	'dam'
khon	'canal'	low	'paddy field'

(iv) *Flora and fauna*

(a)	u ku cey pan	'tree' 'bark' 'stick' 'flower'	sa khok na pom	'branch' 'stem' 'leaf' 'bud'
(b)	phow kwa siŋ	'paddy' 'betel nut' 'ginger'	cu wa tow	'sugarcane' 'bamboo' 'reed'
(c)	lin mi mo khoy	'snake' 'spider' 'insect' 'bee'	ga cum kug ma	'fish' 'lizard' 'mosquito' 'bed bug'
(d)	sa sen yaw ycŋ	'animal' 'cow' 'sheep' 'monkey'	key kaw huy kwak	'tiger' 'bull' 'dog' 'crow'

(v) *Body parts*

(a)	kha	'mouth'	un	'skin'
	thuk	'breast'	lu	'bone'
	may	'face'	ya	'tooth'
	khog	'leg'	mit	'eye'
	tu	'hair'	kok	'head'
	khut	'hand'	puk	'belly'
(b)	ci	'horn'	mey	'tail'
	ku	'shell'	sa	'wing'
	tu	'feather'	mu	'sting'
	soj	'mane'	lum	'hump'

In addition to these, there are a few groups of nominal bases containing only a few members each, such as the following:

(a)	nog	'rain'	mey	'fire'
	khu	'smoke'	nin	'vapour'
	ciŋ	'hill'	təm	'valley'
	then	'plateau'	ləm	'land'
(b)	i	'water'	un	'ice'
	thum	'salt'	yot	'iron'
	yay	'precious stone'	len	'hail'
(c)	mi	'man'	pi	'female'
	poŋ	'human being'	pey	'group'
	tha	'small group'	ca	'child'

5.2.1 Formative affixes

As mentioned earlier, common nouns of Manipuri are generally disyllabic in their form; even when monosyllabic bases are used in their bare form, there is a tendency to prefix a syllable like *mə* or *kə* and thereby change them into disyllabic words. The prefix *mə* has the function of denoting a third person possessor in other contexts as we would be pointing out below (see 5.6); the prefix *kə* does not have this function in Manipuri, but in certain neighbouring languages like Tankhur Naga, it does have that function.

The following sets of words exemplify the occurrence of these prefixes with monosyllabic nouns; they appear to have the function of providing phonological weight to those nouns. The disyllabic (derived) words given in the opposite column indicate that the nouns occur without this prefix when used with other elements.

mə-phəm	'place'	thog-phəm	'kitchen'
phəm	'to sit'	thog	'to cook'
mo-kup	'grit'	siŋkup	'piece of firewood'
kup	'be small'	siŋ	'firewood'
ke-buk	'inner part of bamboo'	puk-niŋ	'mind'
puk	'belly'	niŋ	'to wish'

There are also a few words like the following which contain other formative syllables like *co* and *u*; notice, however, that these can be related to nominal bases such as *ceg* 'rice' and *u* 'tree' respectively.

<i>co-gem</i>	'broken rice'	<i>co-jik</i>	'stale rice'
<i>co-khom</i>	'mouthful'	<i>co-ga</i>	'overcooked rice'
<i>co-nig</i>	'abdomen'	<i>co-buk</i>	'middle'
<i>co-rəm</i>	'neck'	<i>co-phu</i>	'pitcher'
<i>u-ci</i>	'rat'	<i>u-cek</i>	'bird'
<i>u-ku</i>	'culvert'	<i>u-khun</i>	'hole'
<i>u-ru</i>	'box'	<i>u-rik</i>	'necklace'

The prefix *a*, occurring regularly with verbs that are used in the adjectival position in their bare infinitive form, also occur as a formative in some nominal bases like the following:

<i>a-nim</i>	'fever'	<i>a-me</i>	'one'
<i>a-mom</i>	'female'	<i>a-ni</i>	'two'

5.2.2 Compound words

We have described in detail the formation of compound nouns and their relation to underlying structures in the third chapter. We propose to describe some of the salient features of their semantic structure in this section. Compound words in Manipuri are generally disyllabic in their structure with their two syllables representing either (i) two different nominal bases or (ii) a nominal base followed by a verbal base. The former are right-headed and the latter left-headed.

Corresponding to this structural distinction between these two major types of compound words, there is an interesting semantic distinction, namely that the right-headed compound words have a generic term as the second element with the first element adding specificity to that term, and the left-headed compound words have a generic term as the first element with the second element adding specificity to it.

This contrast between the two major types of Manipuri compound words can be exemplified with the help of the following sets of composite words:

(i) Right-headed compound words: with (*mə*)ri 'string' as the head

<i>uri</i>	'creeper'	<i>u</i>	'tree'
<i>məyri</i>	'flame'	<i>məy</i>	'fire'
<i>wari</i>	'story'	<i>wa</i>	'word'
<i>khəyri</i>	'fishing line'	<i>khoy</i>	'fish-hook'
<i>pukli</i>	'girth'	<i>puk</i>	'stomach'
<i>yari</i>	'gum'	<i>ya</i>	'tooth'
<i>yotli</i>	'wire'	<i>yot</i>	'iron'

(ii) Left-headed compounds: with *wa* 'word' as the head

<i>wakot</i>	'complaint'	<i>kot</i>	'to offer'
<i>wakoy</i>	'diagression'	<i>koy</i>	'to wander'
<i>wəpən</i>	'speech'	<i>pən</i>	'to speak'
<i>wəcop</i>	'obscene word'	<i>cop</i>	'be insulted'
<i>wəphəy</i>	'diagression'	<i>phəy</i>	'be slant'

Nominal Category

warej	'prose'	lej	'to compose'
warep	'resolution'	lep	'to decide'
waron	'statement'	lon	'to knit'
waroy	'conclusion'	loy	'to finish'
wayen	'judgement'	yen	'to dispense'

Such sets of words are more productive and are comparatively larger in their size in the case of left-headed compounds, especially with characterizing state verbs as their specifying second elements. State verbs like *caw* 'be big', *pak* 'be wide' and *tum* 'be round' occur with several nominal elements as their specifiers in this fashion. Examples:

(iii) With *caw* 'big' as the specifier

icaw	'flood'	i	'water'
cinjaw	'mountain'	cin	'hill'
potcaw	'luggage'	pot	'thing'
lanjaw	'war'	lan	'fight'
cayjaw	'cudgel'	cay	'stick'
lɛmjaw	'meadow'	lɛm	'land'
lujaw	'back-bone'	lu	'bone'
wajaw	'big talk'	wa	'word'
yonjaw	'ape'	yongnaw	'small monkey'
mijaw	'big person'	mi	'man'

(iv) With *pak* 'wide' as the specifier

ipak	'ocean'	i	'water'
upak	'plank'	u	'tree'
khubak	'palm'	khut	'hand'
khongpak	'foot'	khong	'leg'
nuppak	'stone slab'	nug	'stone'
lɛypak	'earth'	lɛy	'mud'
ceɲpak	'flat rice'	ceɲ	'rice'
thabak	'chest'	tha	'chest'
thapak	'blade'	thap	'knife'
mompak	'mattress'	mon	'pillow'
lɛmpak	'lawn'	lɛm	'land'

(v) With *tum* 'round' as the specifier

khuttum	'fist'	khut	'hand'
cigdum	'rock'	cin	'hill'
nugdum	'round stone'	nug	'stone'
lɛytum	'clod'	lɛy	'mud'

3.3 Pronouns

There are three different personal pronouns in Manipuri corresponding to the three persons, namely first, second and third. These have two different forms each, of which one (a free form) occurs when they are used alone, and the other one (a bound form) occurs when they are attached to some other element like the plural marker, kinship term, body part term, etc. as shown below:

Manipuri Grammar

pronoun	<u>free form</u>	<u>bound form</u>
I	ay	i
II	ney	no
III	ma	me

Examples:

- (1a) ay-ne keythel-de cat-li
I-Nom market-Loc go-NFu
'I went to the market'
- (1b) i-pa-ne keythel-de catli
my-father-Nom market-Loc went
'My father went to the market'
- (2a) ney-ne kori pammi
you-Nom what want
'What do you want?'
- (2b) ne-khey-gi layrik keday-de lay
you-Pl-Gen book where-Loc is
'Where is your book?'
- (3a) ma-ne cawbe-de peysa pi
he-Nom Chaoba-Loc money give-NFu
'He gave money to Chaoba'
- (3b) ma-ne me-khut-ne thebek suy
he-Nom his-hand-Nom work works
'He works with his (own) hand'

The third person pronoun *ma*, even though generally translated as 'he' in this grammar, makes no gender distinction; it can as well be translated as 'she' or 'it' depending upon context.

5.3.1 The pronouns have an extended form derived by adding the suffix *hak* to them; first person pronoun has its free form before this suffix but the other two have their bound forms. There is no meaning difference between the extended and unextended forms, except that the extended form does not occur with the plural suffix. Examples:

- (4) eyhak meysor-de lay
I Mysore-Loc live
'I live in Mysore'
- (5) nehak keday-de lay
you where-Loc live
'Where do you live?'

5.3.2 When used with the locative suffix *de*, all the three pronouns take the increment *pon* but they retain their free form. Examples:

- (6) *eygon-de isin khare piyu*
I-Loc water some give
'Give me some water!'
- (7) *neggon-de kari nungay-te-be lay*
you-Loc what happy-Neg-Inf is
'What problem do you have?'

5.3.3 The pronouns take the suffix *khoy* for denoting plural number. In this case also, the first person pronoun has its free form, whereas the other two have their bound form. Examples:

- (8) *ey-khoy eyuk-te cat-thok-keni*
I-Pl morning-Loc go-out-Fu
'We will go out in the morning'
- (9) *me-khoy gerag lak-p-re*
he-Pl yesterday come-Inf-Q
'Did they come yesterday?'

5.3.4 There is also a dual form for these pronouns which, however, is used mainly in the spoken form: it is derived by adding *ba-ni* (in which *ba* appears to derive from the root *pa* 'be matching' and *ni* 'two') to the bound forms of personal pronouns. Examples:

- (10) *i-ba-ni keythel-de cat-keni*
I-match-two market-Loc go-Fu
'We two will go to the market'
- (11) *ne-ba-ni pun-ne lak-u*
you-match-two together-Adv come-Imp
'You two come together'

It may be noted here that the use of this dual marker is restricted to personal pronouns.

5.3.5 In addition to these, two different demonstrative pronouns can be formed by attaching to the demonstrative particles, *du* 'remote' and *si* 'proximate', either the third person prefix *me* or the nominal prefix *a*. There do not seem to be any meaning distinction in the use of these two prefixes.

Remote		Proximate	
<i>medu</i>	'that (one)'	<i>mesi</i>	'this (one)'
<i>edu</i>	'that (one)'	<i>esi</i>	'this (one)'

Examples:

- (12a) *mesi ey-ne keythel-de-gi purek-i*
this I-Nom market-Loc-Gen bring-NFu
'I brought this one from the market'
- (12b) *ay-ne layrik-si edu-de them-gani*
I-Nom book-this that-Loc place-Fu
'I will place this book there'

The demonstrative particles can also be attached directly to nouns in order to denote the remote-proximate distinction concerning their referents. They are also used to disambiguate sentences in some contexts concerning the generic-specific (or habitual-specific) distinction. Examples:

- (13) *əŋaŋ-ɖu məhak-ki meca ni*
boy-that he-Gen son Cop
'That boy is her son'
- (14a) *əŋaŋ-siŋ ləmpak-si-de sənəy*
boy-Pl lawn-this-Loc play
'Boys play in this lawn'
- (14b) *əŋaŋ-siŋ-ɖu ləmpak-si-de sənəy*
boy-Pl-that lawn-this-Loc play
'Those boys play in the lawn'

5.3.6 The two demonstrative pronouns that are derived by using the prefix *a*, can form the bases of several other pronouns, and can denote concepts like location, manner and quantity.

Remote		Proximate	
<i>ədude</i>	'there'	<i>əsido</i>	'here'
<i>ədwaydo</i>	'around there'	<i>əswaydo</i>	'around here'
<i>ədum</i>	'like that'	<i>əsum</i>	'like this'
<i>əduk</i>	'that much'	<i>əsuk</i>	'this much'

Examples:

- (15) *məhak əsway-de ləy*
he around here-Loc lives
'He lives around here'
- (16) *məhak ədum ləy-ri*
he like that live-Dur
'He is living like that'
- (17) *məhak-ne pam-be əduk əy-su pammi*
he-Nom want-Inf that much I-also want
'I want as much as he wants'

The first set of locational pronouns, namely *ədude* 'there' and *əsido* 'here', are related to a third pronoun, namely *ada* 'yonder (farther than there)' which makes it possible to establish a three-way contrast in the case of locational pronouns.

The second set of locational pronouns, namely *ədwaydo* 'around there' and *əswaydo* 'around here', on the other hand, can be attached to other location markers like *məhak* 'above', *məkha* 'below', *məya* 'near' and *məny* 'in the middle' in order to provide related meanings; the prefix *a* is deleted in this usage. Examples:

- (18) *məhak məkha-dway-de phəmni*
he below-around there-Loc sit
'He sits somewhere below'

- (19) benk edu sway-maya-da' ley-re
 bank that around here-near-Loc be-Perf
 'The bank has been shifted to somewhere near here'

5.4 Wh-words

Manipuri has a set of pronouns formed uniformly by using the element *ke* (corresponding to the element *wh* of English occurring in words like *who*, *what*, *when*, *where*, etc.) and having a distinct set of functions of their own; we may call these as *wh-words*.

These words are used by a speaker primarily for denoting his lack of knowledge concerning a particular element in a sentence such that (i) he can obtain the relevant information from the addressee through questions, (ii) he can denote his surprise through exclamations, or (iii) he can merely indicate his lack of knowledge through the so-called "indefinite" pronouns in which these *wh-words* occur. There are also certain extended uses for these words, as for example in internal relative clauses in which the relevant information is provided elsewhere in the same sentence (see Bhat 1989).

Tibeto-Burman languages generally use two or three distinct bases for forming these *wh-words*. These distinct bases may represent animate-inanimate distinction as in Tibetan, or other additional distinctions like 'concrete', 'abstract' and 'spatial' as in Mishmi (Shastri 1984). Manipuri is rather different from most of these languages in that it makes use of only a single base, namely *ke* for forming the various *wh-words*. It indicates distinctions like human/non-human or specific/non-specific, or distinctions concerning the quantity or degree, with the help of roots or affixes which follow this *wh-base*.

5.4.1 Analysis of *wh-words*

We have recorded several derived *wh-words* which contain the *wh-element ke*; one of them contains the element *kam* rather than *ke* but it is possible that this is a shortened form of a derived word; there is also the element *kay* alternating with *ke* in some words.

We may arrange these derived *wh-words* into the following six groups:

- | | | | | | |
|-----|--|---|-----|------------------------|------------------|
| (a) | ke-na
ke-ri | 'who'
'what' | (b) | ke-rem-be
ke-rem-ne | 'which'
'how' |
| (c) | ke-day
ke-day-way-de | 'which'
'where' | (d) | ke-dom-de | 'where to' |
| (e) | kadow-be - ?
koy-daw-be
ke-daw-ney
kam-dew-ne | 'why, what for'
'why, what for'
'when'
'how' | | | |
| (f) | ke-ya
ke-yam | 'how many'
'how much' | | | |

(i) The first group consists of human (*kain*) and non-human (*kari*) *wh-words*; these are used for indicating the speaker's lack of knowledge regarding the identity of a person or object respectively. They can occur with all case markers just like a common noun. We will exemplify their usage (and also that of other *wh-words* in the following sections) with the help of interrogative sentences, even though, as we will be pointing out later, these *wh-words* occur in other types of sentences as well.

Manipuri Grammar

Uses of *kəni* 'who'

- (20) *kəni-ne layrik-si tombo-də pi*
 who-Nom book-this Tomba-Loc give-NFu
 'Who gave this book to Tomba?'

- (21) *məhak-ne layrik-si kəni-də pi*
 he-Nom book-this who-Loc give-NFu
 'Whom did he give this book?'

- (22) *məhak-ne kəni-bu phu-y*
 he-Nom who-Acc beat-NFu
 'Whom did he beat?'

- (23) *məhak-ne kəni-gi səngom yon-bi*
 he-Nom who-Gen milk sell-Ben
 'Whose milk did he sell?'

- (24) *məhak-ne kəni-gə layrik pa-y*
 he-Nom who-Conj book read-NFu
 'With whom did he read the book?'

(II) Uses of *kəri* 'what'

- (25) *məhak kəri u-y*
 he what see-NFu
 'What did he see?'

- (26) *məhak kəri-ne thəng hāg-dok-i*
 he what-Nom door open-out-NFu
 'What did he open the door with?'

- (27) *məhak kəri-bu ca-goni*
 he what-Acc eat-Fu
 'What will he eat?'

- (28) *məhak kəri-də phəm-mi*
 he what-Loc sit-NFu
 'What did he sit on?'

- (29) *kəri-gi məkhəm-no*
 what-Conj lid-Q
 'Of what (object) is this lid?'

- (30) *nən kəri-gə ca-gc*
 you what-Ass eat-Des
 'With what do you eat?'

The genitive form of *kəri* 'what' has the meaning 'why' in addition to the expected meaning 'of what' as can be seen in the following sentence:

- (30) məhak bəjar-de kəri-gi cət-lı
 he market-Loc what-Gen go-NFu
 'Why did he go to the market?'

The word *kəri* can also be used for denoting lack of knowledge regarding abstract entities including actions or events. Examples:

- (31) məhak kəri təw-wi
 he what do-NFu
 'What did he do?'
- (32) kəri thok-ı
 what happen-NFu
 'What happened?'

(ii) The word *kəram* of the second group of wh-words given above requires either the infinitive marker *bə* or the adverbial marker *nə* to occur after it; that is, the morph *lən* occurring in it shows verbal characteristics.

The infinitive form *kərambə* can occur either as a noun or as a nominal modifier. In the former case, it can occupy human as well as non-human positions, but it differs from the two wh-words described in the previous subsection in specifying a choice out of a definite set. Examples:

- (33a) nəraŋ kəna lak-əm-mi
 yesterday who come-Compl-NFu
 'Who had come yesterday?'
- (33b) nəraŋ kərem-bə lak-əm-mi
 yesterday which-Inf come-Compl-NFu
 'Which one (of those) had come yesterday?'
- (34a) nəŋ kəri-bu ca-gəni
 you what-Acc eat-Fu
 'What will you eat?'
- (34b) nəŋ kərem-bə-bu ca-gəni
 you which-Inf-Acc eat-Fu
 'Which one will you eat?'

In the modifier position also, it can occur with both animate as well as inanimate nouns; in these usages also, it provides the meaning of choice out of a specific set. Examples:

- (35) məhak-nə kərem-bə layrik pı
 he-Noun which-Inf book give NFu
 'Which book did he give?'
- (36) kərembə ərŋaŋ lak-ı
 which boy come-NFu
 'Which boy came?'

Manipuri Grammar

The meaning in the following usage is clearly related to the preceding one:

- (37) *tomba korem-be mi-no*
 Tomba which-Inf man-Q
 'What type of man is Tomba?'

The following sentences exemplify the use of the adverbial form

- (38) *mehak-ne cin-du korem-ne ka-y*
 he-Nom hill-that which-Adv climb-NFu
 'How did he climb that hill?'
- (39) *oy korem-ne hay-goni*
 I which-Adv speak-Fu
 'How shall I speak?'

(iii) The word *keday* of the third group also has the meaning 'which' but it differs from the word of the previous set in showing nominal characteristics. It can directly take the various case markers, and further it does not appear to occur as a nominal modifier. Examples:

- (40) *naŋ keday-ne pam-mi*
 you which-Nom want-NFu
 'Which one do you want?'
- (41) *mehak-ki yum keday-de ley*
 he-Gen house which-Loc exist-NFu
 'Where is his house?'
- (42) *mehak keday-de-gi lak-i*
 he which-Loc-Gen come-NFu
 'Where did he come from?'

It can occur with *uwn* 'roughly' as in the following sentence:

- (43) *keday-way-gi mi-no*
 which-roughly-Gen man-Q
 'Of what place (roughly) is this man?'
- (44) *mehak-ki yum kedayway-de ley*
 he-Gen house which-Loc exist-NFu
 'Where is his house? (What is his address)?'

(iv) The *wh*-word of the fourth group appears to occur only in a locational sense; it is apparently associated with actions or events, as it involves the meaning of directionality. Examples:

- (45) *mehak kedom-do cat-li*
 he-Gen house-Gen go-NFu
 'Where did he go?'

- (46) *məhak kedom-de-gi lak-i*
 he which-Loc-Gen come-NFu
 'Where (from which direction) did he come from?'

(vi) The wh-words of the fifth group are made up of the morph *dəw* attached to the wh-element *kə*; this morph is related to the verb *təw* 'do' as is evidenced by the fact that the use of these wh-words generally implies an underlying action or event. It may be followed by (a) the infinitive suffix *bə* for providing the meaning 'why' or the meaning 'for doing what' and (b) the root *gəy* for denoting time. Examples:

- (47) *məhak kədew-bə lak-i*
 he why-Inf come-NFu
 'Why (for doing what) did he come?'
- (48) *məhak kədew-gəy layrik pi*
 he which-time book give-NFu
 'When (on which day) did he give the book?'

The morph *way* also occurs in the two demonstrative pronouns given earlier, namely *əw-way-də* 'here' and *əd-way-də* 'there'.

The word *kədew-bə* 'why', 'what for' differs from *kəri-gi* 'why' described earlier in that the use of the former implies less respect than that of the latter; the former also implies suspicion on the part of the speaker that the reported event might not have taken place. Further, the latter implies an object (as it contains the word *kəri* 'what') whereas the former implies an event.

The morph *dəw* may also be preceded by *kən* rather than *kə* in order to give the meaning 'how'; it occurs with the adverbial suffix. Example:

- (49) *məhak kəndəw-nə khəŋ-gi*
 he how-Adv know-NFu
 'How does he know?'

(vi) Wh-words of the last group are made up of (a) the morph *ya* attached to *kə* for denoting lack of knowledge about number and (b) the morph *yam* attached to the same for denoting lack of knowledge about quantity (mass). The latter can be related to the verb *yam* 'be much'; the former, on the other hand, may occur with the adverb *yammə* 'many, much' to provide both these meanings.

Examples:

- (50) *mi kə-ya pam-mi*
 man how-many want-NFu
 'How many persons do (you) want?'
- (51) *nəŋ cak kə-yam pam-mi*
 you rice how-much want-NFu
 'How much rice did you want?'
- (52) *məhak-nə kə-ya yam-nə pi*
 he-Nom how-many much-Adv give-NFu
 'How much/many did he give?'

The word *ləyn* can occur with some of the state verbs in order to denote lack of knowledge about the degree of occurrence of the relevant characteristic. Example:

- (53) *yum edü kəya caw-wi*
house that how big-NFu
'How big is that house?'

It can also modify these verbs used in an adverbial form. Example:

- (54) *məhak-nə kəya thu-nə lak-e*
he-Nom how fast-Adv come-Perf
'How fast has he come?'

Another interesting use of this word is with the verb *sü* 'be the number' in order to indicate one's lack of knowledge regarding "the position in a series" of the given object. Examples:

- (55) *məhak-nə kəya-sü-bə klas-tə təm-mi*
he-Nom which-number-Inf class-Loc study-NFu
'In which class (standard) does he study?'
- (56) *tombə kəya-sü-bə əgəy-nə*
Tombə which-number-Inf child-Q
'Which number of child is Tombə?'

5.4.2 Indefinite pronouns

In addition to their use in interrogative sentences, exemplified in the previous section, *wh*-words are also used in what are traditionally called "indefinite" pronouns.

These are not really indefinite in the sense in which noun phrases like *a boy* of English are indefinite; they are used by a speaker in order to indicate his own lack of knowledge regarding a particular referent, just as *wh*-words in interrogative sentences are used in order to denote a speaker's own lack of knowledge (so that he can obtain that knowledge from his addressee -- see Bhat 1989).

Indefinite noun phrases, on the other hand, are used by a speaker in order to indicate a 'new' referent, i.e. one which is not identifiable for the addressee; the speaker himself would not generally have any lack of knowledge in this latter case. Manipuri does not have any specific device for denoting this type of indefiniteness except that the numeral *əne* 'one' may be used for that purpose in some contexts, and the demonstrative particles *du* 'remote' and *si* 'proximate' may be used to denote definiteness. Examples:

- (57a) *məhak-kj məca əne ləy*
he-Gen son one is
'He has a son'
- (57b) *əja-gi məca-du siŋgi*
teacher-Gen son-that clever
'The teacher's son is clever'

In spite of this terminological problem, we propose to use the traditional term "indefinite pronoun" for denoting these structures, as this term is well-established in the literature in that particular (former) meaning.

There are actually four different types of structures in Manipuri that can be regarded as "indefinite pronouns": all these structures are formed by using *wh*-words. The language uses these structures in order to express meaning distinctions like referential versus non-referential referents, restricted versus non-restricted referents, and selected versus non-selected referents. The meaning which all of them share is the notion of speaker non-identifiability; this notion is used for different purposes in these different indefinite pronouns as we will be pointing out below.

The four main types of indefinite pronouns that occur in Manipuri are derived by adding to the *wh*-word

- (i) the interrogative particle *no*,
- (ii) the additive particle *su* 'also',
- (iii) the numeral *əne* 'one' along with the particle *te* 'only', and
- (iv) the infinitive form of the verb *gum* 'similar'.

Examples:

- (58) keythel-de kena-ne cat-li
market-Loc who-Nom go-NFu
'Who went to the market?'
- (58a) keythel-de kena-no cat-li
market-Loc who-Q go-NFu
'Someone went to the market'
- (58b) keythel-de kena-su cat-te
market-Loc who-also go-Neg
'Nobody went to the market'
- (58c) thehak edu kena-me-te təw-d-ri
work that who-one-only do-Neg-NFu
'Nobody (not even one) did that work'
- (58d) kena-gum-bə lak-kəni
who-similar-Inf come-Fu
'Someone will come'

(i) Referential indefinite pronouns

Manipuri derives referential indefinite pronouns, i.e. pronouns that do have referents which, however, are non-identifiable for the speaker, by attaching the question particle *no* to *wh*-words. Because of their referentiality, one can use these indefinite pronouns in both future as well as non-future indicative sentences as shown below:

- (59) məhak-ne kərəm-bə-no əmə u-y
he-Nom which-Inf-Q one see-NFu
'He saw something'

- (60) tomb-de kona-no ome-no lastrik pi
Tomba-Loc who-Q one-Nom book give-NFu
'Somebody gave a book to Tomba'

- (61) kona-no lak-e
who-Q come-Perf
'Somebody has come'

In addition to indicative sentences, these referential indefinite pronouns can occur in interrogative and negative sentences as well. Examples:

- (62) hesi kona-no ome lak-p-ra
today who-Q one come-Inf-Q
'Did somebody come today?'
- (63) hesi kona-no ome lak-t-re
today who-Q one come-Neg-Perf
'Somebody has not come today'

This pronoun is generally followed by the numeral *ome* 'one' in these usages (apparently to emphasize its referentiality) but locational pronouns like *kadomdo* 'where to', *kadomdagi* 'where from' and *kahaydo* 'where' generally occur without a following *ome* 'one'. Examples:

- (64) mehak keday-de-no cot-koni
he which-Loc-Q go-Fu
'He will go somewhere'
- (65) mehak kadom-de-gi-no lak-i
he which-Loc-Gen-Q come-NFu
'He came from somewhere'

The numeral *ome* 'one' can be replaced by other numerals when a specific number other than 'one' is to be denoted. Example:

- (66) kona-no (mi) ehum lak-kem-mi
who-Q (man) three come-Compl-NFu
'Some three (unknown) persons had come'

One can also use these referential indefinite pronouns in imperative and concessive sentences in order to allow the addressee (or someone else) to make the relevant choice of the referent, but in such a usage the pronoun is generally followed by the infinitive (adjectival) form of the verb *pam* 'want'. Example:

- (67) keri-no apam-be low
what-Q want-Inf take-Imp
'Take whatever you want'

They can also be used in this sense (with the infinitive form of *pam* 'want') in future indicative sentences. Examples

- (68) *kerem-be-no apam-be pi-geni*
 which-Inf-Q want-Inf give-Fu
 'I will give you whatever you want'
- (69) *kəna-no cət-pe pam-be tha-geni*
 who-Q go-Inf want-Inf send-Fu
 '(I) will send whoever wants to go'

The occurrence of the verb *pam* 'want' apparently has the effect of neutralizing the referentiality of these referential indefinite pronouns in these usages.

One interesting constraint in the formation of these referential indefinite pronouns is that adverbial wh-words ending in the adverbial suffix *na* (like *korəmma* 'how' and *lowu samma* 'how much') do not appear to form the basis of these constructions. That is, the particle *no* can be attached only to 'nominal' wh-words. This constraint may be due to the fact that the adverbials cannot have a 'referential' usage. We may note, in this connection, that the interrogative particle *no* also shows a similar constraint, it occurs only after nominal predicates (see 14.2.3.i).

(ii) Non-referential indefinite pronouns

Indefinite pronouns derived by adding the particle *su* 'also' to wh words are non-referential in their meaning. They contrast very clearly with referential pronouns described in the previous section on this point, as can be seen in the following pair of sentences:

- (70a) *ŋəsi kəna-su lak-te*
 today who-also come-Neg
 'Nobody came today'
- (70b) *ŋəsi kəna-no (əmə-nə) lak-te*
 today who-Q (one-Nom) come-Neg
 'Somebody didn't come today'

Notice that (70a) refers to the absence of everyone (non-referential) whereas (70b) refers to the absence of a particular (unidentified) person. Similar distinction occurs in the following pairs of sentences as well:

- (71a) *məhak kəday-de-su cət-te*
 he where-Loc-also go-Neg
 'He did not go anywhere'
- (71b) *məhak kəday-de-no cət-te*
 he where-Loc-Q go-Neg
 'He did not go somewhere'
- (72a) *ey kəri-su purək-te*
 I what-also bring-Neg
 'I did not bring anything'
- (72b) *ey kəri-no əmə-tə purək-te*
 I what-Q one-Emph bring-Neg
 'I did not bring something'

In view of the non-referentiality of these indefinite pronouns, one cannot use them in non-future indicative sentences. Examples:

(73a) mehak-na kedem-do-no cat-li
he-Nom where-Loc-Q go-NFu
'He went somewhere'

(73b) *mehak-na kedem-do-su cat-li
he-Nom where-Loc-also go-NFu
'*He went anywhere'

They cannot also be used in sentential questions unless they have a negative verb as in the following.

(74a) nen kon-su hay-nig-d-ro
you what-also say-wish-Neg-Q
'Don't you want to say anything?'

(74b) *nen kon-su hay-nig-ro
you what-also say-wish-Q
'*Do you wish to say anything?'

(75) oy-gi kon-su loy-t-ro
I-Gen what-also exist-Neg-Q
'Don't I have anything?'

(III) Non-referential countable indefinite pronouns

Indefinite pronouns derived by adding the numeral *one* 'one' along with the particle *to* 'only' to wh-words are also non-relational and non-restrictive; they differ from non-referential pronouns described in the previous section by the fact that the numeral *one* 'one' occurring in them adds the meaning of 'countability' to them. because of this property, wh-words like *kenig* 'why' and *kedavde* 'where' cannot occur in this structure

The difference between these two types of non-referential indefinite pronouns can be exemplified with the help of the following pairs of sentences:

(76a) kena-su lak-te
who-also come-Neg
'Nobody came'

(76b) kena-me-to lak-te
who-one-only come-Neg
'Not even one (person) came'

(77a) mehak kon-su ca-de
he what-also eat-Neg
'He did not eat anything'

- (77h) mehak keri ɔmə-tə ca-de
 he what one-Emph eat-Neg
 'He did not eat even a single thing'

(iv) Non-referential restrictive indefinite pronouns

The fourth type of indefinite pronouns mentioned above, which are derived by attaching the infinitive form of the verb *gum* 'similar' to wh-words, are also non-referential; they differ from the previous two types of indefinite pronouns by the fact that they have a restrictive connotation. Examples:

- (78a) keri-gum-bə khəə phəŋ-geŋi
 what-similar-Inf some obtain-Fu
 'Something will be obtained'
- (78b) sel keyam-gum-bə cəŋ-geŋi
 money how-much-similar-Inf require-Fu
 'I will require some amount of money'

Non-referential restrictive indefinite pronouns can also occur in conditional clauses in which other non-referential pronouns cannot. Examples:

- (79a) kena-gum-bə lak-ə-bə-di hay-rek-u
 who-similar-Inf come-Perf-Inf-Cond tell-Dei3-Imp
 'If somebody comes, come and tell (me)'
- (79h) *kəri-su lak-ə-bə-di hay-rek-c
 who-also come-Perf-Inf-Cond tell-Dei3-Perf

We can make these forms non-restrictive by attaching the particle *su* 'also' or *tə* 'only' (along with *əmə* 'one') to them. Examples:

- (80) keri-gum-bə əmə-də-su hap-pe ya-y
 what-similar-Inf one-Loc-also put-Inf possible-NFu
 'I may put it in anyone'
- (81) kena-gum-bə əmə-tə u-rəm-de
 who-similar-Inf one-only see-Compl-Neg
 'He didn't see anyone'

They can also be changed into referential ones by using the numeral *əmə* 'one' with them; these expanded forms, being referential, can occur in non-future indicative sentences just like the referential indefinite pronouns described earlier. Examples.

- (82) keri-gum-bə əmə ta-re
 what-similar-Inf one fall-Perf
 'Something has fallen'
- (83) kena-gum-bə əmə lak-kəri
 who-similar-Inf one come-Fu
 'Someone will come'

Numerals

3.1 Cardinal numerals

Manipuri has the following simple roots for denoting numerals

e-me	'one'	to-ra	'ten'
e-ni	'two'	kun	'twenty'
e-hum	'three'	ca-ma	'(one) hundred'
me-ri	'four'	li-sig	'thousand'
me-ŋa	'five'		
to-ruk	'six'		
to-ret	'seven'		

Other numerals are denoted by complex constructions as described below; even the above ones occur with certain prefixes when used by themselves; the numerals from one to three take the prefix *e*; four and five take the prefix *me*; six, seven and ten take the prefix *to*; hundred takes *ma* 'one' as a suffix (in the case of 'one hundred'), and thousand takes the plural suffix *sig*; only the numeral twenty occurs by itself; when used in certain combinations, however, some of these can occur without the prefix as can be seen in the following forms:

ni-ni	'second'	hum-ni	'third'
-------	----------	--------	---------

Additional numerals in Manipuri are denoted by combining these together or by using other morphs with them. The following is a list of simple constructions of this nature:

ni-pan	'eight'	ma-pan	'nine'
ni-phu	'forty'	kun-thra	'thirty'
hum-phu	'sixty'	hum-dra	'seventy'
me-phu	'eighty'	mawdra	'ninety'
yan-khev	'fifty'		

The numerals *ni-pan* 'eight' and *ma-pan* 'nine' involve compound constructions with the former containing the morph *ni* 'two' and the latter the morph *ma* 'one' (an alternant of *mə*); numerals above twenty also involve compound constructions: the numeral for thirty is *kun-thra* which is a reduced form of *kun + tara* 'twenty + ten'. The numerals *ni-phu* 'forty', *hum-phu* 'sixty' and *me-phu* 'eighty' contain the morph *phu* 'twenty' which occurs only in these compound forms but not by itself for denoting 'twenty'. This morph gets attached to *ni* 'two', *hum* 'three' and *me* 'four' respectively in these numerals.

The numerals *hum-dra* 'seventy' and *maw-dra* 'ninety' are similar to *kun-thra* 'thirty' given above in that they appear to involve the combinations *hum-phu + tara* 'sixty + ten' and *me-phu + tara* 'eighty + ten' respectively; *yan-khev* 'fifty', however, is different: it appears to involve an alternant of the morph *khev* 'half' as one of its constituent elements.

For denoting other numerals, Manipuri makes use of two contrasting devices; in the case of numerals ending in one, two and three (such as 11, 12, 13; 21, 22, 23; 31, 32, 33; etc.) those denoting tens are followed by the words *ma-thov*, *ni-thov* and *hum-thov* respectively; these latter words involve the numbers 'one', 'two' and 'three' followed by the morph *thov* 'excess'. Examples:

tera-ma-thoy	'eleven'
tera-ni-thoy	'twelve'
tera-hum-doy	'thirteen'
kun-thra-ma-thoy	'thirty-one'
kun-thra-ni-thoy	'thirty-two'
kun-thra-hum-doy	'thirty-three'

In the case of numerals ending in other numbers (4 to 9), on the other hand, tens are merely followed by the relevant number names. Examples:

tera-meri	'fourteen'
tera-mega	'fifteen'
tera-terct	'seventeen'
kun-thra-teruk	'thirty-six'
kun-thra-nipan	'thirty-eight'
kun-thra-mapen	'thirty-nine'

The former device of using numbers one to three with the morph *thoy* 'excess' being attached to them, occurs only in the case of numerals upto ninety-three; those above hundred, such as 'one hundred', 'two hundred' and 'three hundred', are formed by adding the morphs *ma*, *ni* and *hum* respectively to the root *ca* or *ce* as follows.

ca-me	'one hundred'
ce-ni	'two hundred'
ce-hum	'three hundred'

The following form illustrates the derivation of a more complex numeral:

lisij əmə ce-hum məwdra hum-doy
thousand one hundred-three ninety three-plus
'one thousand three hundred ninety three'

For denoting fractions, the morph *khay* 'half' and *sug* 'quarter' are used; however, the form *məkhay* denotes half of a rupee only, whereas the form *məsug* denotes quarter of a thing only; for denoting half of a thing, the word *təŋ-khay* is in use, and for denoting a quarter of a rupee, *siki* is in use; the latter, however, is rarely used because of the introduction of decimal system for coins.

5.5.2 All these cardinal numerals can be used either as modifiers of nouns or as nouns by themselves. In the latter case, there would be an unspecified noun that they modify. The numerals always follow their head noun and hence case suffixes that belong to the whole noun phrase follow these numerals. Examples:

- (84) cəy əmə isij-də tawwi
 stick one water-Loc float
 'A stick floats on water'
- (85) əy puŋ əhum-də təhək loy-re
 I hour three-Loc work finish-Perf
 'I finished work at three o'clock'

4-Nom boy two-Acc food gave
 'I gave food to two boys'

The following sentences exemplify the use of numerals without a specified head noun

6y oni-gi menon pi-ge
 I two-Gen price give-Des
 'I wish to give the price of two (of them)'

mahak-ne ohum-mak-pu yolli
 he-Nom three-all-Acc sold
 'He sold all three'

Multiplicatives are formed from these numerals by attaching the suffix *lek* to them; in the case of the numeral *one* 'one', however, multiplicative has an irregular form, namely *amuk* 'once'. Examples

mahak-ne ey-bu amuk ken-bi-re
 he-Nom I-Acc once save-Ben-Perf
 'He has saved me once'

mahak sen mari-rak pi
 he money four-times give-NFu
 'He gave money four times'

67) ey-ne keythen-de tora-rak cotli
 I-Nom market-Loc ten-times went
 'I went to the market ten times'

§5.4 Distributives are formed in Manipuri through the process of reduplication, as shown below

68) onan-sin-de komla oni-ni piyu
 boy-Pl-Loc orange two-two give
 'Give the oranges two each to the boys'

69) oni-ni-to oy-ne cotlu
 two-two-Emph be-Adv go
 'Go two by two!'

§5.5 The notion of approximation is expressed by attaching the suffix *lawn* or *amuk* to the numeral; other related suffixes are *mak* 'all' and *khak* or *dog* 'only'. Examples

70) mi torn-rom cotkhi
 person ten-about went
 'About ten persons left'

71) ey-ne lavrik tora-mak loy-re
 I-Nom book ten-all purchase-Perf
 'I have purchased all the ten books'

- (96) *ey-ne layrik tɔra-khɛk pammɪ*
 I-Nom book ten-only want
 'I want only ten books'

5.5.6 Ordinal numerals

The notion of ordinals is expressed in Manipuri with the help of a state verb, namely *su* 'be the number' used in its relativized form, with the locative suffix attached to it. Examples

- (97) *məhak ma-gɪ klas-tɔ mənə su bə-de lay*
 he he-Gen class-Loc five-number-Inf-Loc be
 'He is the fifth in his class'
- (98) *mathən-gɪ cəhi-də məhak əni-su-bə de lak-pə yay*
 next-Gen year-Loc he two-number-Inf-Loc come-Inf may
 'He may be the second next year'

The numeral takes the suffix *m* in order to denote an ordinal in connection with days. Example

- (99) *ni-ni-su-bə numit-tə əy həl-lək-i*
 two-Ord-number-Inf day-Loc I return-Dei3-NFu
 'I returned on the second day'

5.5.7 There are actually several other state verbs that indicate number-related notions like the following

<i>nay</i>	'only'	<i>khən</i>	'be separated'
<i>han</i>	'first'	<i>lon-nə</i>	'one after another'
<i>thəŋ</i>	'next'	<i>hən</i>	'more'
<i>kon</i>	'last'	<i>wat</i>	'less'
<i>hən</i>	'repeat'		

Examples.

- (100) *tombə-gə cawhə-gə yəm əni-nə khəlli*
 Tomba-Conj Chaoba-Conj house one-Nom separated
 'Tomba and Chaoba are separated by a house'
- (101) *məhak-nə nɔsi bəjar-də mən-rək həlli*
 he-Nom today market-Loc four-time repeated
 'He repeatedly (went) to the market four times today'

5.6 Kinship terms

Kinship terms, being basically relational in their connotation, are obligatorily preceded by personal prefixes *i*, *nə* and *mə* depending upon whether they express relations with first, second or third person referents respectively. Examples:

- (102) *layrik əsi i-mə-nə pi-re*
 book this I-mother-Nom give-Perf
 'This book has been given by my mother'

Manipuri Grammar

(103) mehak-ne ne-ma-bu korigi kow-de
he-Nom you-mother-Acc why invite-Neg
'Why did he not invite your mother?'

(104) oy-ne me-ma-do paw cekkhi
I-Nom he-mother-Loc message sent
'I sent a message through his mother'

We may group Manipuri kinship terms into two distinct categories depending upon whether they show a distinction in the ego's gender. The following terms are common to both male as well as female egos. All of them obligatorily take one of the personal prefixes mentioned above.

Terms common to male and female egos

pa	'father'	ce	'elder sister'
ma	'mother'	ca	'offspring'
pu	'grandfather'	su	'grandchild'
bok	'grandmother'	maw	'daughter-in-law'
pen	'father's elder brother'	ku	'father-in-law'
ton	'father's younger brother'	nem	'mother-in-law'
mabok	'mother's elder sister'	ne	'father's sister'
ndomca	'mother's younger sister'	gay	'in-law'

The term *bok* 'grandmother' has an extended form, *abok*, which does not take personal prefixes; this is also true of *maw* 'mother's brother' (apparently an Indo-Aryan borrowing).

The following terms show a distinction between male and female egos:

Kin	Male ego	Female ego
spouse	tu	wa
younger sister	cen	naw (nupi)
younger sister-in-law	naw	con
elder brother	yamba	bun
younger brother	naw	pwa
elder brother-in-law	bay	tay
son-in-law	mak	ya
younger brother-in-law	sen	naw (nupa)

All these kinship terms are obligatorily preceded by one of the three prefixes mentioned above. Examples:

(105) oy-gi i-ku yam-ne ohel oy-re
I-Gen I-father-in-law very-Adv old be-Perf
'My father-in-law has become very old'

(106) mehak-ki me-bun delli cekkhi
he-Gen he-elder-brother Delhi went
'Her elder brother went to Delhi'

- (107) mehak-ki mə-yambe əsida ley
 he-Gen he-elder-brother here live
 'His elder brother lives here'

In addition to these kinship terms, Manipuri also allows the above-mentioned personal prefixes to be used with certain monosyllabic nominal roots. In the case of some of these, such as the following, the use of one of these prefixes is obligatory

(i) *Non-kinship terms that occur with an obligatory possessive prefix*

wa	'opinion'	thaw	'duty'
lep	'height'	lin	'power'
lam	'sake'		
pam	'female's father's house'		

Example.

- (108) əy-nə mə-wa ta-niŋ-de
 I-Nom he-opinion hear-wish-Neg
 'I do not wish to hear his opinion'

Some allow the prefixes to be used optionally with them; i.e., the bases may be used by themselves as well. The following belong to this group:

(ii) *Non-kinship terms that occur with an optional possessive prefix*

nat	'culture'	məŋ	'dream'
paw	'news'	miŋ	'name'
pot	'thing'	phaw	'paddy'
kəy	'granary'	ləw	'paddy field'
lik	'necklace'	phək	'mat'
phi	'cloth'	yum	'house'
khun	'village'	sən	'cow'

This is also true of body parts, such as the following, which may optionally take personal prefixes mentioned above.

may	'face'	ya	'tooth'
cin	'mouth'	un	'skin'
tu	'hair'	kok	'head'
khəŋ	'leg'	mit	'eye'
khut	'hand'	puk	'belly'

Examples:

- (109) əy-gi (i)-miŋ tombə kəwwi
 I-Gen (i)-name Tomba called
 'I am called by the name Tomba'

- (110) nəŋ-gi (nə)-kok cawwi
 you-Gen (you)-head big
 'Your head is big'

6.7 Location and time markers

6.7.1 Location markers

Distinctions in the location of an object (or in the direction of an object's movement towards a location) can be specified in Manipuri by placing certain location markers in front of the locative suffix. Some of these location markers occur as suffixes between a noun and the locative suffix, but all of them can occur as separate words with the prefix *mə* attached to them in order to modify a noun. They can also occur as heads of noun phrases and hence, like numerals, we may regard them as forming a subgroup of nominal bases.

We have recorded the following location markers of this nature:

- | | | | | |
|-----|---------------|---------------|----------------|------------------|
| (a) | <i>mə-nun</i> | 'in' | <i>mə-thək</i> | 'on, above' |
| | <i>mə-kha</i> | 'below' | <i>mə-yay</i> | 'in the middle' |
| | <i>mə-va</i> | 'near by' | <i>mə-rak</i> | 'between, among' |
| | <i>ka-gup</i> | 'both sides' | <i>mə-lay</i> | 'by the side' |
| (b) | <i>mə-pan</i> | 'outside' | <i>mə-thəŋ</i> | 'next to' |
| | <i>mə-maŋ</i> | 'in front' | <i>mə-tuŋ</i> | 'behind' |
| | <i>oy</i> | 'to the left' | <i>yet</i> | 'to the right' |

Manipuri uses noun phrases with the locative suffix *de* as the unmarked form for denoting various types of locations (see 6.6.2); the markers mentioned above are used with this locative suffix only when the exact nature of the location is to be specified. The following pairs of sentences exemplify this option of specifying or not specifying the nature of a given location:

- (111a) *məhak kəvthel-de cətlɪ*
he market-Loc went
'He went to the market'
- (111b) *məhak kəvthel məva-de cətlɪ*
he market near-Loc went
'He went near the market'
- (112a) *məhak-nə thəŋ-de kummi*
he-Nom bridge-Loc descended
'He descended the bridge'
- (112b) *məhak-nə thəŋ məkha-de kummi*
he-Nom bridge below-Loc descended
'He descended below the bridge'

Notice, however, that in the case of several verbs, the unmarked form denotes the location that is most commonly associated with the event or state concerned; the use of the various location markers in such sentences indicates other, less common, locations. Examples

- (113a) *məhak cɪn-de ləy*
he hill-Loc live
'He lives (on) the hill'

- (113b) məhak ciŋ mɔya-də ley
he hill near-Loc live
'He lives near the hill'
- (113c) məhak ciŋ məthək-tə ley
he hill on-Loc live
'He lives on the hill'
- (113d) məhak ciŋ mənuŋ-də ley
he hill inside-Loc live-NFu
'He lives inside the hill'
- (113e) məhak ciŋ məkha-də ley
he hill below-Loc live-NFu
'He lives below the hill'
- (113f) məhak ciŋ məyay-də ley
he hill middle-Loc live-NFu
'He lives in the middle of the hill'
- (113g) məhak ciŋ mərək-tə ley
he hill between-Loc live-NFu
'He lives between hills'

Locative markers of the first group can also be used as suffixes, in which case, they would not be accompanied by the prefix *mə*. Examples:

- (114) məhak ciŋ-ya-də lep-pi
he hill-near-Loc stand-NFu
'He stood near the hill'
- (115) məhak u-rək-tə totli
he tree-among-Loc hid
'He hid among the trees'

Location markers of group (b) given above occur with the noun in the genitive; that is, they are more noun-like than those of the first group. Examples

- (116) məhak ɔy-gi məthən-də lep-pi
he I-Gen next-Loc stand-NFu
'He stood next to me'
- (117) məhak tomba-gi ɔy-də phəm-mi
he Tomba-Gen left-Loc sit-NFu
'He sat to the left of Tomba'

5.7.2 In addition to these location markers, which we have regarded as basically nominal bases, Manipuri uses certain verbal bases (in their infinitive form) for specifying additional distinctions of location. Some of them indicate the locations by themselves, whereas some require the locative suffix to be attached to them for this purpose. The following are of this nature:

phaw ^{ho}	'upto	hup ^{no}	'together'
lonne ^{bo}	'one after another'	thugn ^{no}	'all around'

Examples

- (118) makhoy lox-na hel to hup-no ni
they all-Adv emph together-Inf Cop
'All of them are together'
- (119) av ne benk phaw-ba catli
I-Nom bank upto-Inf went
'I went upto the bank'
- (120) lastryk-sing edu lonna-bo ya-de
book-Pl that one-after-other-Inf like-Neg
'I do not like those books to be one after the other'

Unlike the location markers described earlier, however, these bases primarily occur as verbs proper, with the various verbal affixed attached to them, or as adverbials with the adverbial suffix *no* attached to them. Some of the bases show meaning distinctions when used in these different constructions. For example, the infinitive *phaw-bo* means 'upto' whereas the adverbial *phaw-no* means 'through'. *phaw-bo* also has the meaning 'even'; *loy* as a verb has the meaning 'wander' but *skoybo* means 'all around'.

- (121a) mahak tombo-gi yim phawbo lak-i
he Tomba-Gen house upto come-NFu
'He came upto Tomba's house'
- (121b) lembi asi cing phawno cot-li
road this hill through go-NFu
'This road goes through the hill'
- (121c) lembi asi cing phawwi
road this hill through
'This road (passes) through the hill'

It may be noted here that Manipuri also has a set of spatial suffixes for denoting spatial and deictic distinctions. These suffixes are attached to verbs. We have described in detail the nature of these suffixes in the eighth chapter.

5.2.4 Time markers

The temporal location (or duration) of an event or state is indicated in Manipuri either by tense and aspect suffixes that are attached to verbs (see chapter 11), or by adverbial modifiers which precede the verb (see 11.4). In addition to these, there are certain nominal bases which occur either alone or with the locative base marker *do* in order to indicate temporal locations or durations.

- (i) First of all, there is the root *gay* 'time' which occurs with the locative suffix *do* and forms the basis of several constructions of two different types: (a) It may occur after the durative forms of verbs in order

to indicate the co-occurrence of two different events, and (b) it may occur after the non-future negative forms of verbs in order to indicate the succession of two different events. Examples:

- (122a) *məhak-ne cithi i-ri-ŋəy-de əy-ne laynk pay*
 he-Nom letter write-Dur-time-Loc I-Nom book read
 'I read a book while he was writing a letter'
- (122b) *məhak-ne cithi i-d-ri-ŋəy-de əy-ne lavrik pay*
 he-Nom letter write-Neg-NFu-time-Loc I-Nom book read
 'I read a book before he wrote a letter (literally when he didn't write a letter)'
- (123a) *məhak-ne cak ca-ri-ŋəy-de bəs cət-kh-re*
 he-Nom food eat-Dur-time-Loc bus go-Dei4-Perf
 'While he ate food the bus went away'
- (123b) *məhak-ne cak ca-d-ri-ŋəy-de bəs cət-kh-re*
 he-Nom food eat-Neg-NFu-time-Loc bus go-Dei4-Perf
 'The bus went away before he ate food'

(ii) The root *ŋəv* 'time' also occurs in certain other temporal words like *cip-ŋəv* 'at that time', *əliu-ŋəv* 'long ago' and *mənan-ŋəv* 'long ago' (*mənan* 'in front'), but these words can occur without the locative suffix being attached to them. Examples:

- (124) *ədu-ŋəv niphəw pal-li-ŋəy-de-di nunnay-rəm-mi*
 that-time king rule-Dur-time-Loc-Emph happy-Compl-NFu
 'Long ago, when the king was ruling, (people) were happy'

(iii) There are a few other words like the following which show a prefix which is apparently related to the root *ŋəv* 'time'; these and also a few additional ones given below can occur by themselves as temporal markers in a sentence:

- | | | |
|-----|---------------|------------------------|
| (a) | <i>ŋəsi</i> | 'today' |
| | <i>ŋorəŋ</i> | 'yesterday' |
| | <i>ŋəsəy</i> | 'a little while ago' |
| | <i>ŋəhak</i> | 'for some time' |
| (b) | <i>hayəŋ</i> | 'tomorrow' |
| | <i>əyuk</i> | 'in the morning' |
| | <i>həŋcit</i> | 'day-after-tomorrow' |
| | <i>məsem</i> | 'fourth day (future)' |
| | <i>məwəw</i> | 'fifth day (future)' |
| | <i>nəhan</i> | 'day-before-yesterday' |

Examples:

- (125) *ŋəhak ləy-rə-gə lak-u*
 some time stay-Perf-Conj come-Imp
 'Come after staying (there) for some time'
- (126) *məhak əyuk lak-i*
 he morning come-NFu
 'He came in the morning'

(14) There are two other roots, namely *tuŋ* 'after' and *theŋ* 'next' which occur with the locative suffix *-de* with the prefix *mə* when used alone); these can be attached to nouns or infinitive forms of verbs.

Examples

(127) *məhak puŋ məri-gi mətuŋ-de lak-i*
he hour four-Gen after-Loc come-NFu
'He came after four hours'

(128) *məhak ey-gi mətheŋ-de lak-i*
he I-Gen next-Loc come-NFu
'He came next to me'

(v) The following are some of the common nouns which denote divisions of time in this language:

<i>nəŋ</i>	'day'	<i>puŋ</i>	'hour'
<i>cəyol</i>	'week'	<i>tha</i>	'month'
<i>kum</i>	'year'		

(vi) The language also makes use of several complex constructions, all ending in the locative suffix, for denoting different types of temporal locations, such as the following:

<i>khu-dek-to</i>	'immediately'
<i>kay-theŋ-de</i>	'at last' (<i>kay</i> 'break', <i>mətheŋ</i> 'next')
<i>həw-jik-to</i>	'just now' (<i>həw</i> 'elapse')
<i>hən-dek-to</i>	'recently'
<i>kon-theŋ-de</i>	'afterwards' (<i>kon</i> 'last', <i>mətheŋ</i> 'next')

(vii) In addition to these nominal bases, Manipuri also makes use of certain verbs either in their finite verbal form or in their adverbial form (i.e. with the suffix *nə* attached to them), in order to denote temporal locations (see 7.2). Three of these form the basis of infinitives that function as temporal nominals:

<i>phawbə</i>	'until'
<i>mətem cuppe</i>	'always' (<i>mətem</i> 'time', <i>cup</i> 'complete')
<i>nungsambə</i>	'for a long time' (<i>sam</i> 'long')

(129a) *nəŋ lak-i-ri phawbə ey gay-ge*
you come-Neg-NFu upto I wait-Des
'I will wait until you come'

(129b) *məhak lak-pə phaw-bə ŋay-kh-o*
he come-Inf until-Inf wait-Prog-Pers
'Please wait until he comes'

(130) *mə-ma-nə mətem-cuppe mə-ca-siŋ-gi khelli*
he-mother-Nom always he-child-Pl-Gen think
'Mother always thinks of her children'

(viii) There are also certain particles like *sə* 'immediately' and *hek* 'at once' which denote temporal locations. Examples.

- (131) *məhak ləphoy sət ca-y*
 he banana immediately eat-NFu
 'He ate the banana immediately'
- (132) *məhak ləphoy hek ca-y*
 he banana immediately eat-NFu
 'He ate the banana immediately' (i.e. without taking permission)

5.8 Nominal inflection

5.8.1 Nominal bases can occur with case suffixes in order to denote the various ways in which their referents are related with the verb. There are three main case suffixes in Manipuri, namely (i) nominative *na*, used for denoting actor, causer, instrument and cause, (ii) accusative *bu*, used for denoting patient (especially animate patient), and (iii) locative *do* used for denoting location. There are two additional suffixes, namely (iv) genitive *gi* and (v) conjunctive *gə*, which have extended uses as case markers. We would be describing in detail the various uses and connotations of these suffixes in the next chapter.

5.8.2 Common nouns and kinship terms can optionally take the suffix *sig* in order to denote plural number. Plurality can, however, be denoted by numerals or even left unspecified.

Examples

- (132a) *yum-sig-du yol-li*
 house-Pl-that sell-Dur
 'Those houses are being sold'
- (132b) *yum təa-du yol-li*
 house ten-that sell-Dur
 'Those ten houses are being sold'
- (133a) *əy-na trək-tə layrik hap-kət-li*
 I-Nom truck-Loc book put-up-NFu
 'I put the book(s) in the truck'
- (133b) *əy-na trək-tə layrik-sig hap-kət-li*
 I-Nom truck-Loc book-Pl put-up-NFu
 'I put the books in the truck'
- (134) *sanneroy-sig yam-nə laŋgi*
 player-Pl very-Adv noisy
 'The players are very noisy'

Plurality can also be indicated by the suffix *khoy* in the case of kinship terms and also personal names and words referring to humans like *ibema* 'lady' and *ibugo* 'gentleman', if the terms are being used in the presence of their referents. In other contexts, the suffix *sig* is used.

Examples

- (135a) *ibema-khoy leŋ-gək-e*
 lady-Pl(present) arrive-Dei3-Perf
 'Ladies have arrived' (said in their presence)

- (135a) *ibem-a-sin len-nok-e*
 lady-Pl arrive-Pl3-Perf
 'Ladies have arrived' (said in their absence)

5.8.3 Nouninal bases can also occur with suffixes like *mok* 'emphatic', *muk* 'about', and *de* or *deg* 'emphatic'. *mit* has the meaning 'all' when used after plural nouns or numerals. Examples

- (136a) *enan-sin-du-mok-ne cak cay*
 child-Pl-that-all-Nom food ate
 'All the children ate food'
- (136b) *mehak-mok-ne komla edu cay*
 he-Emph-Nom orange that ate
 'He himself ate that orange'
- (136c) *mehak-ne komla edu-mok cay*
 he-Nom orange that-Emph ate
 'He ate that very orange'
- (137a) *nej heyen-muk laku*
 you tomorrow-about come
 'Come about tomorrow' (i.e. tomorrow or some following day)
- (137b) *hupa kun-muk purek-u* *ṣṣṣṣṣṣ*
 rupee twenty-about bring-imp
 'Bring about twenty rupees'

5.8.4 Noun phrases can also be followed by certain particles like *su* 'also', *te* 'only', *ti* 'emphatic' and *ka* 'probable', these follow case suffixes. Examples:

- (138a) *laxnik edu-su purek-u*
 book that-also bring-imp
 'Bring that book also'
- (138b) *mehak u-kha-de-su phemmi*
 he tree-below-Loc-also sat
 'He sat below the tree also'
- (139c) *mehak-ne ey-bu-de uy*
 he-Nom I-Acc-only saw
 'He saw only me'
- (139b) *mehak-ne tebel mekha-de-de phemmi*
 he-Nom table below-Loc-only sat
 'He sat only below the table'
- (140) *mehak-ne ey-bu-di uy*
 he-Nom I-Acc-only (Emph) saw
 'He saw me only (emphatic)'

- (141) mehak heyen-ke lak-pe yay
he tomorrow-probable come-Inf may
'He may probably come tomorrow'

Chapter 6

USE OF CASE SUFFIXES

6.1 Introduction

6.1.1 Manipuri makes use of the following five case suffixes for relating with the verb the various noun phrases that occur in a sentence:

(i)	nominative	<i>na</i>
(ii)	accusative	<i>bu</i>
(iii)	locative	<i>do</i>
(iv)	genitive	<i>gi</i>
(v)	conjunctive	<i>go</i>

We can regard the first three of these suffixes as case suffixes proper, i.e. as having the marking of case relations as their primary function. The remaining two are rather different in that they carry out this function only as part of their extended use. The genitive *gi* is primarily a marker of possession; its main use is for relating a noun phrase with another noun phrase; the conjunctive *go*, on the other hand, is primarily used for joining together two different noun phrases. The former gets extended to denote the beneficiary, whereas the latter gets extended to denote the associate:

6.1.2 We have used familiar terms like nominative, accusative, locative and genitive for naming these case suffixes but it must be noted here that the system of case-marking that they represent in Manipuri is rather different: There are several important points on which this system differs from the ones that we generally encounter in familiar languages. First, the system makes a sharp and clear-cut distinction between semantic and pragmatic relations and because of this, there is no need to postulate an intermediary set of grammatical relations like subject and direct object for describing the use of case suffixes in this language (see Rhat 1991). The case suffixes can be correlated directly with semantic relations, they have the denotation of those relations as their primary function.

Pragmatic relations, on the other hand, are denoted primarily by the relative order of arguments occurring in a sentence. There are certain redundant aspects of the use of case suffixes that are also used by the language for denoting pragmatic relations. However, the denotation of these relations is kept distinct from that of semantic relations.

Second, the notions which underlie the use of case suffixes in this language are rather different: instead of the traditional concepts like transitivity and agency, we find notions like controller of actions and processes, affected and non-affected individuals, animacy of individuals, and location of entities, movements or transactions as forming the basis of the use of these case suffixes

Third the use of case suffixes is not controlled merely by the case relations that they are to denote, but in addition to this, it is also constrained by the need to differentiate between two or more arguments that

occur simultaneously in different types of sentences. When there is no possibility of any ambiguity or confusion arising out of the non-use of a case suffix in a given context, the language allows that suffix to be left unspecified. This option of specifying or not specifying a case suffix is one of the redundant aspects of case-marking that the language is able to utilize for denoting pragmatic notions like specific or exclusive reference.

Fourth, the type of case relations that the suffixes represent in this language, and the types of 'extensions' that they allow are markedly different from the ones occurring in familiar languages. For example, the nominative suffix *no* indicates not only the actor of actions and the causer of causations, but in addition to this, it also denotes natural forces which can be viewed as controlling certain processes, instruments which can be viewed as co-controllers and other related case relations like means, material and medium, which come under the general term 'instrument'.

The accusative suffix *bu* is used mainly for denoting an affected animate being. Affected inanimate beings are generally left unmarked for case, but in special contexts of emphasis, they too can be marked by the accusative suffix. Themes of state and process verbs, however, are left unmarked for case, even when they denote animate or human beings.

In view of these marked differences in the use of the nominative and accusative suffixes, one might be justified in coining new terms like controller of actions (and causations) for *no* and affected beings for *bu*, but this would have the effect of masking the fact that *no* and *bu* are prototypically nominative and accusative suffixes.

There is also the possibility of analysing the suffix *no* as constituting two different homophonous case suffixes, namely nominative and instrumental. This has been the analysis proposed by all the previous grammars of this language. However, there are certain difficulties in maintaining such a division as we point out below (6.4.3). Further, the two usages are clearly related and form a continuum and hence it would be preferable to regard it as a single suffix with a wide range of usages.

This is also true of the locative suffix which covers a vast area, including the dative (experiencer and goal), ablative (source), and the locative (of different types) of familiar languages. One might be tempted to divide this suffix also into two or more homophonous suffixes, but as in the above case of the nominative, this would fail to bring out the unity of the suffix, which we feel is an important aspect of the language.

6.1.3 As mentioned earlier, the three case suffixes proper, namely the nominative, accusative and locative, have a wide range of usages in Manipuri. It is possible, however, to find a single unifying notion which covers all the various uses of any of these individual suffixes.

For example, the various uses of the nominative suffix, such as the denotation of the actor of action sentences and the causer of causative sentences, share the common notion of denoting the controller of the relevant event; natural forces occurring with processes and also causes occurring with different states, processes and actions also share this particular notion. Instruments of different types, on the other hand, do not control the events or processes by themselves, but they can be seen as having a close tie with the controllers of actions or processes. That is, they can be viewed as co-controllers of these events.

6.1.4 The use of the remaining two primary suffixes, namely accusative and locative, can be seen as jointly being in contrast with this nominative suffix; they denote referents that have no control over the actions or events that affect the individual or object concerned. The accusative has the general sense of denoting a referent that is being *affected* by the action of some other person in some way or the other, whereas the

bu has the general sense of denoting a referent that functions as the *location* of such an effect, or of an object or characteristic

This primary difference between the accusative and the locative is reflected in the fact that the use of the former is generally restricted to actions and processes, whereas that of the latter is extended to states as well. However, one can use the locative suffix in most of the contexts in which the accusative can be used (in order to emphasize the "locational" meaning involved), but there are some contexts, such as for example, that of an object which is being wholly affected by an event in which the locative does not alternate with the accusative.

4.1.5 Another important difference between the accusative suffix and the locative suffix is that the use of the former is mostly restricted to animate referents whereas that of the latter has no such restriction. One can use the accusative *bu* with inanimate patients only in certain special contexts that involve emphasis. In other contexts inanimate patients are left unmarked for case. This difference apparently results from the third point mentioned above, namely that the use of case suffixes is constrained by the need to differentiate between arguments. An inanimate argument would not generally be taken as the controller of an event, it can only be the affected entity; hence it need not be specified as the affected entity.

Notice that the distinction between the concept of beneficiary (of transaction verbs) and experiencer on the one hand, and that of location (goal or source) on the other, is primarily based upon the concept of animacy in that the former is mostly restricted to animate referents. Further, when an animate referent is used as a location, it would not generally be perceived or viewed as being animate, it would be viewed as a 'body' rather than as a 'being'; since this animacy distinction is expressed in the verb itself (transaction and experiencer verbs versus location and motion verbs), there is no need as such to express this animacy distinction in the case markers. Manipuri case-marking apparently reflects this irrelevance in that it uses the same suffix (locative) in both these contexts.

4.1.6 We propose to describe, in the present chapter, the use of case suffixes in Manipuri on the basis of three distinct classes of verbal bases, namely states, processes and actions, and also two additional classes, formed by adding the causative and benefactive suffixes to them. The type of valency distinctions that these different groups of verbs allow in Manipuri will be described in detail in later chapters (see chapters 9 and 10). In the present chapter, only the use of individual case markers and the meaning distinctions that go associated with them will be described in detail.

6.2 Morphophonemic changes

There are only two types of morphophonemic changes which affect case forms, namely

(i) **devoicing of the initial stops of the suffixes *bu*, *de*, *gi* and *gə* when they are preceded by voiceless consonants (that is, *p*, *t*, *k* or *s*) and**

(ii) **use of extended forms before the locative *de* in the case of three pronouns, namely *ev* 'I', *neg* 'you' and *ma* 'he'. Examples:**

(i) Devotion:

məhək	'he'	accusative form:	məhəkpu
bac	'bus'	locative form:	bəstə
ləmpək	'ground'	genitive form:	ləmpəkki
lən	'hand'	conjunct form:	khutkə

(ii) *Extended forms**Pronouns*

ay	'I
naŋ	'you
ma	'he'

Locative forms

əŋənda
naŋənda
maŋənda

6.3 Distribution

Case marks are added to noun phrases as a whole rather than to nouns as such. This is evidenced by the fact that modifiers which follow a noun always precede case suffixes

The head noun of a Manipuri noun phrase can be preceded by relative clauses and possessive nouns (i.e. nouns ending in the genitive *gi*). In such cases, the case suffixes are attached to the head noun. However, other modifiers such as truncated relative clauses, quantifiers (including numerals), plural marker, and demonstrative particles or pronouns follow the head noun in a noun phrase. Case suffixes follow these modifiers. Examples

- (1) əŋaŋ əpikpə-də pi-yu
child small-Loc give-Imp
'Give it to the small child'
- (2) əŋaŋ əsiŋbə əhaybə-gi layrik yaw-h-rə?
child wise skilful-Gen book have-Inf-Q
'Do you have a book for a wise and skilful child?'
- (3) əŋaŋ məŋa-də pi-yu
child five-Loc give-Imp
'Give (it) to the five children'
- (4) əŋaŋn əraŋbə-siŋ-bu cəy-bi-geŋu
child noisy-Pl-Acc scold-Ben-Proh
'Don't scold the noisy children'
- (5) əy-nə tebol-du-də cəphu khilli
I-Nom table-that-Loc pot placed
'I placed the pot on that table'
- (6) phi əmubə əsi-nə kup-sil-lu
cloth black this-Nom cover-in-Imp
'Cover it with this black cloth'

There is a small class of particles consisting of *su* 'also', *də* 'only', *di* 'emphatic' *ne* 'such as', which follow case suffixes in a noun phrase. Of these, the particle *də* 'only' can precede or follow the case suffixes, whereas the remaining three can only follow them. Examples:

- (7) əy-nə mɪ khəre-bu-su uy
I-Nom man some-Acc-also saw
'I saw some persons also (in that place)'

ey-ne cawba-gi-de layrik ley
I-Nom Chaoba-Gen-only book bought
'I bought only Chaoba's books'

- (d) ey-ne cawba-de-gi layrik ley
I-Nom Chaoba-only-Gen book bought
'I bought books for chaoba only'
(e) I bought only Chaoba's books'

ey-ne upu-du-de-di pammi
I-Nom box-that-Loc-Emph like
'I like (to put it) in that particular box'

isin edu cephu esi-de-ne edu-de-ne happu
water that pot this-Loc-like that-Loc-like put
'Put that water in this pot, that pot, etc.'

In the case of conjoint noun phrases, there is an option in the use of case suffixes in that they may occur after each noun phrase, or only after the last noun phrase. Examples.

- (11a) tombe-ne eybu-go mabu-go kawwi
Tomba-Nom I-Conj he-Acc-Conj called
'Tomba called me and him'

- (11b) tombe-ne ey-go ma-go-bu kawwi
Tomba-Nom I-Conj he-Conj-Acc called
'Tomba called me and him'

- (12a) tombe-ne eyyon-de-go manon-de-go layrik pi
Tomba-Nom I-Loc-Conj he-Loc-Conj book gave
'Tomba gave the book to me and him'

- (12b) tombe-ne ey-go ma-go-de layrik pi
Tomba-Nom I-Conj he-Conj-Loc book gave
'Tomba gave the book to me and him'

Notice that the conjoint suffix *go* is used for conjoining noun phrases in the above sentences; it occurs after each of the conjoined noun phrases. The fact that the case suffix precedes the conjoint suffix when it occurs after both the constituents of the conjoined noun phrase, whereas it follows the conjoint suffix when it occurs only after the second noun phrase appears to indicate that the conjoint noun phrase functions as two different noun phrases in the former case and as a single noun phrase in the latter case.

6.4 Use of the nominative suffix *ne*

The suffix *ne* has two main usages, namely (i) for denoting the controller of an action, process or causation, and (ii) for denoting the instrument, cause, or means of an action or process. In contexts in which its use is not obligatory, the suffix also has the extended pragmatic function, namely that of denoting contrastive reference or comparative meaning (see 6.10.1).

Traditional grammars describe the suffix *ne* as constituting two distinct but homophonous suffixes, namely (i) the nominative *ne* (for denoting actors and causers) and (ii) the instrumental *ne* (for denoting instruments, materials and means) (Its use for denoting the pragmatic meaning mentioned above is generally overlooked in these grammars.) However, as we will be pointing out later on in this section, there are certain difficulties in establishing a non-arbitrary division between two such distinct case suffixes.

6.4.1 Denoting the controller of actions and causations

In the case of action verbs, the suffix *ne* has the primary function of denoting the controller of actions, namely the actor, whereas in the case of causation verbs, it has the function of denoting the causer. Examples

(a) denoting the actor of action verbs

- (13) mahak-ne phurit tuy
he-Nom shirt stitched
'He stitched a shirt'
- (14) tombe-ne eyjon-de layrik pi
Tomba-Nom I-Loc book gave
'Tomba gave me a book'
- (15) ey-ne tabel semmi
I-Nom table mended
'I mended the table'

(b) denoting the causer of causative verbs

- (16) tombe-ne eyjon de sejik phal-helli
Tomba-Nom I-Loc grass cut-caused
'Tomba made me cut the grass'
- (17) ey-ne majon-de saw-helli
I-Nom he-I-Loc angry-caused
'I made him angry'
- (18) mahak-ne ey-bu ca thok-helli
he-Nom I-Acc tea drink-caused
'He made me drink tea'

Notice that the distinction between transitive and intransitive verbs is not relevant here. **Actors** of all action verbs take the suffix *ne*. Examples:

- (19) egaj-ne keppe
child-Nom cried
'The child cried'
- (20) ey-ne bajar-de colli
I-Nom market-Loc went
'I went to the market'

Notice further that there are certain verbs in this language that can be used ambiguously for denoting a process or an action (involuntary or voluntary event). In the case of such verbs, the use of *no* helps in disambiguating a given sentence as shown below:

(21a) ay loymay-de olli
I floor-Loc rolled
'I rolled on the floor (due to external reasons)'

(21b) ay-no loymay-de olli
I-Nom floor-Loc rolled
'I (volitionally) rolled on the floor'

(22a) ay tebel-de theggi
I table-Loc touched
'I touched the table (involuntarily)'

(22b) ay-no tebel-de theggi
I-Nom table-Loc touched
'I touched the table (volitionally)'

4.4.2 Denoting Instrument, material, medium and means

The second major use of the nominative suffix *no* is for denoting the instrument, material, medium or means; this usage occurs not only in sentences that contain an action (or causation) verb, but also in sentences that contain a state or process verb. Examples:

(i) Denoting an Instrument

(23) mehak-no thag-no u koki
he-Nom knife-Nom tree cut
'He cut the tree with a knife'

(24) can-ne ma-bu meci-ne way
cow-Nom he-Acc horn-nom gored
'The cow gored him with (its) horn'

(ii) Denoting material

(25) mehak-no cini opangbe-no kek say
he-Nom sugar red-Nom cake made
'He made a cake with brown sugar'

(26) ay-ne wa-ne sembel thippi
I-Nom bamboo-Nom fence stopped
'I constructed fence with bamboo'

(27) powder asi mehhol meri-ne tilli
powder this item four-Nom made (up of)
'This powder is made up of four items'

(iii) Denoting medium

- (28) mehak-ne me-sa-de thaw-ne ley
 he-Nom his-body-Loc oil-Nom smeared
 'He smeared his body with oil'
- (29) mehak-ne olu menin-ne thongri
 he-Nom potato steam-Nom cooked
 'He cooked the potato with steam'
- (30) phi asi muk-ne cuy
 cloth this ink-Nom stained
 'This cloth is stained with ink'

(iv) Denoting means

- (31) oy-ne bejar-de-gi has-ne laki
 I-Nom market-Loc-Gen bus-Nom came
 'I came from the marker by bus'
- (32) mehak-ne lawsin-ne sen talli
 he-Nom intelligence-Nom money earned
 'He earned money by intelligence'
- (33) len nurga-ne tummi
 hailstone sunlight-Nom melted
 'The hailstone melted by the sun'

It is interesting to note, in this connection, that the above-mentioned use of the suffix *ne* is closely related to the use of the adverbial suffix *na*, as can be seen from the following pair of sentences:

- (34a) mehak-ne hey-be-ne thebok edu tawwi
 he-Nom skill-Inf-Nom work that did
 'He did that work by his skill'
- (34b) mehak-ne hey-ne thebok edu tawwi
 he-Nom skill-Adv work that did
 'He did that work skillfully'

In (34a) the suffix *ne* occurs after the infinitive form of the verb *hey* 'be skillful' for denoting the *means* of doing that work, whereas in (34b) it occurs directly after the verb in order to indicate the *manner* of doing that work. Whether these two occurrences of the suffix *ne* can be regarded as involving a single suffix in the language is a mute point, but the connection between the two is very evident.

6.4.3 Postulating two distinct cases

As we have mentioned earlier, the above two major uses of the suffix *ne* (described in 6.4.1 and 6.4.2) have been traditionally regarded as involving two different case suffixes, namely *nominative* and *instrumental*. There is some basis for making such a distinction (in addition to the fact that the two 'translate' as distinct cases)

First, these two uses can co-occur in the same sentence as shown in several of the sentences given above (see 27-26, 28-29, 31-32).

Second, the latter usage occurs in sentences that contain an action verb as well as the ones that contain a process or state verb, whereas the former is restricted to action (or causation) verbs only.

Third, the suffix *no* alternates with the locative suffix *do* in this latter usage in some of the instances (i.e. instances in which the argument can be viewed as a location rather than an instrument, material or medium). No such alternative usage is shown by the actors and causers of action and causation verbs. Examples

- (35a) *ev-no khut-no layrik puy*
I-Nom hand-Nom book carried
'I carried the book by hand'
- (35b) *ev-no khut-to layrik puy*
I-Nom hand-Loc book carried
'I carried the book in (my) hand'
- (36a) *ev-no thaw-no yensang gowwi*
I-Nom oil-Nom curry fried
'I fried the curry with oil'
- (36b) *ev-no thaw-do yensang gowwi*
I-Nom oil-Loc curry fried
'I fried the curry in oil'
- (37b) *len nungsa-do tummi*
hailstone sunlight-Loc melted
'The hailstone melted in the sun'
- (30b) *phi asi muk-to cuy*
cloth this ink-Loc stained
'This cloth is stained in ink'
- (31b) *ev-no bejar-do-gi bes-to laki*
I-Nom market-Loc-Gen bus-Loc came
'I came from the market on the bus'

As against these points which support the traditional analysis of the suffix *no* as constituting two different suffixes, namely nominative and instrumental, there are others which appear to indicate that we only have a single suffix here with two distinct but interconnected sets of usages.

The main point which supports this claim is that the two usages form a continuum; postulating two different suffixes would make it rather difficult to decide, in some of these cases, whether we are dealing with the nominative suffix *no* or the instrumental suffix *no*. For example, in the case of process sentences, the suffix *no* is used for denoting natural forces that are viewed as 'controlling' the relevant processes. Examples

- (37) *nugsit-ne u-du tui*
wind-Nom tree-that fell
'That tree fell due to the wind'
- (38) *mehak non-ne colli*
he rain-Nom wet (became)
'He became wet due to rain'
- (39) *mehak-pu bidhi-ne tammi*
he-Acc fate-Nom ordained
'The fate ordained him'

We might regard this interesting use of the suffix *ne* as of the nominative rather than the instrumental, even though familiar languages would generally treat the theme rather than the natural force in these sentences as the nominative argument. However, there are sentences like the following, denoting states and processes, in which the suffix *ne* is used for denoting a cause:

- (40) *mehak kensor-ne si*
he cancer-Nom died
'He died of cancer'
- (41) *mehak kensor-ne nay*
he cancer-Nom ill
'He is sick of cancer' (He suffers from cancer)

The use of the suffix *ne* for denoting the cause is rather wide-spread in this language; the suffix can occur with nominalized clauses for denoting the causes of any given action or process, as can be seen in the following sentences:

- (42) *mehak saw-be-ne wa nggji* ?
he anger-Inf-Nom word spoke
'He spoke with anger'
- (43) *mehak lephoy asi cabo-ne nay*
he banana this eat-Inf-Nom ill (became)
'He became ill due to the eating of this banana'
- (44) *mehak-ne non tabe-ne bejar-de cat te*
he-Nom rain fall-Inf-Nom market-Loc go-Neg
'He did not go to the market due to the falling of rain'
- (45) *suti oy-be-ne mehak-ne eygon-de tombe-bu kew-helli*
holiday he-Inf-Nom he-Nom I-Loc call-caused
'He made me call Tomba because it was a holiday'

This latter use of the suffix *ne* is clearly connected with its use as the instrumental case suffix for denoting notions like means and medium, whereas the former use is connected with its use for denoting natural forces. It is difficult to decide whether both these usages (for denoting the cause) are to be regarded as involving the instrumental case, or whether the former use is to be regarded as that of the nominative.

Even in the case of natural forces, there are problems in regarding the suffix *no* as nominative.

Consider, for example, the following set of sentences:

- (46a) *ma-no u-du tu-hol-lom-mi*
 he-Nom tree-that fall-Cs-Compl-NFu
 'He had felled that tree'
- (46b) *nunxit-no u-du tu-hol-lom-mi*
 wind-Nom tree-that fall-Cs-Compl-NFu
 (i) 'The wind had felled that tree'
 (ii) 'That tree had fallen due to the wind'
- (46c) *lay-no nupsit-no u-du tu-hol-lom-mi*
 god-Nom wind-Nom tree-that fall-Cs-Compl-NFu
 'The god had felled that tree with the wind'
- (46d) *sinjøn-no u-du tu-hol-lom-mi*
 ax-Nom tree-that fall-Cs-Compl-NFu
 '(He) had felled that tree with an ax'

There is apparently no difficulty in regarding the suffix *no* occurring in (46a) as nominative, and the one occurring in (46b) as instrumental (for the analyst who postulates two such distinct case suffixes). Further, the occurrence of *lay* 'god' with the nominative suffix *no* might be used, in the case of (46c), for claiming that the suffix *no* occurring after the word *nupsit* 'wind' in that sentence is instrumental.

However, (46b) is clearly problematic. When compared with (46a), the suffix *no* occurring in it appears to be nominative, whereas when compared with (46d), it appears to be instrumental. We have provided two distinct glosses for this sentence in order to bring out this conflict in the analysis. The sentence is not unambiguous; the problem lies only in the translation.

The difficulty here is caused mainly by the fact that the verb does not show any agreement with any of its arguments, and further, any of the arguments can be left unspecified without affecting the meaning of the sentence. There is therefore no way of differentiating between the actor (or causer), natural force and instrument, except when two of them co-occur in the same sentence. Our claim is that this state of affairs reflects the unitary nature of the suffix *no*. We have therefore opted to describe the suffix *no* as representing a single case suffix in all these different usages.

6.4.4 Restrictions on co-occurrence

As we had seen earlier, the suffix *no* denotes the actor in the case of action sentences and causer in the case of causative sentences. Since the actor loses its control over the action in the latter case, it also fails to retain the suffix *no*; instead, the argument takes the accusative *bu* or the locative *do*. Examples:

- oi-no cowkri omø say*
 I-Nom chair one made
 'I made a chair'

- (47b) mehak-ne əy-bu cəwkri əmə sa-həlli
he-Nom I-Acc chair one make-caused
'He caused me to make a chair'
- (47c) mehak-ne əygon-də cəwkri əmə sa-həlli
he-Nom I-Loc chair one make-caused
'He caused me to make a chair'
- (48a) əy-ne kep-pi
I-Nom cried
'I cried'
- (48b) mehak-ne əy-bu kəp-həlli
he-Nom I-Acc cry-caused
'He made me cry'
- (48c) mehak-ne əygon-də kəp-həlli
he-Nom I-Loc cry-caused
'He made me cry'

However, the instrument occurring in an action sentence continues to retain the suffix *ne* in causative sentence also, in spite of the fact that the user of the instrument would be the actor (causee) who has lost his 'control' over the action, and not the causer. This interesting fact may perhaps be used as an additional basis for the traditional claim that nominative and instrumental are distinct case suffixes. Examples:

- (49a) tombe-ne thaŋgon-ne səjik phalli
Tomba-Nom sickle-Nom grass cut
'Tomba cut the grass with a sickle'
- (49b) cawbe-ne tombe-bu thaŋgon-ne səjik phal-həlli
Choaba-Nom Tomba-Acc sickle-Nom grass cut
'Choaba made Tomba cut the grass with a sickle'

Other related meanings such as cause, means, material, etc. also appear to retain the case marker *ne* when the sentences are causativized. Examples:

- (50a) ayne isiŋ-ne ləybək thitli
I-Nom water-Nom mud mixed
'I mixed mud with water'
- (50b) tombe-ne əygon-də isiŋ-ne ləybək thit-həlli
Tomba-Nom I-Loc water-Nom mud mix-caused
'Tomba made me mix mud with water'

Even the natural force (with the suffix *ne*) can co-occur with the causer as seen in the following sentence-

- (51a) mehak noŋ-ne cotli
he rain-Nom wet (became)
'He became wet due to rain'

170

- (51b) *lay-ne mahak-pu non-ne cot-helli*
 god-Nom he-Acc rain-Nom wet-caused
 'The god made him wet by rain'

However, action verbs generally take only one of the following set of arguments that contain the suffix *bu*: (i) instrument, (ii) material, (iii) medium, and (iv) means. It is possible, in fact, to divide action verbs into distinct sub-classes depending upon which of these arguments can occur with them. There are a few, however, which can take two or more of these, but even in such cases, only one of them is found to occur in a given sentence. Examples:

- (52a) *ay-ne isig-ne elu phulli*
 I-Nom water-Nom potato boiled
 'I boiled the potato with water'
- (52b) *ay-ne gyas-ne elu phulli*
 I-Nom gas-Nom potato boiled
 'I boiled the potato with gas (on a gas stove)'

Further, when two of these arguments are used simultaneously in a sentence, one of them occurs with the locative rather than the nominative as seen in the following sentences:

- (53) *ay-ne gyas-ne isig-de elu phulli*
 I-Nom gas-Nom water-Loc potato boiled
 'I boiled the potato in water by gas'
- (54) *ay-ne isig-de khut-ne haway campi*
 I-Nom water-Loc hand-Nom beans washed
 'I washed the potato in water by hand'

We might perhaps conclude that Manipuri does not have any restriction as such against the use of the same case suffix with two or more arguments in a sentence so long as the case relations that the suffix in its different uses indicates are not exactly identical. Multiple usages of this type occur in the case of the locative suffix as well, as we will be pointing out in a following section (6.6.5).

6.5 Use of the accusative suffix *bu*

6.5.1 The accusative suffix has a wide range of usages in Manipuri: it translates, in familiar languages, as the affected object or individual, recipient or experiencer (goal), source, location, and even the causee (of causative verbs); the crucial meanings that appear to underlie its usage are (i) that the concerned object or individual has been affected in some way or the other by a process or action that has been carried out by some other person, or has been caused by a natural force or some other cause, (ii) that the affected individual did not have any control over the process or action, and (iii) that there was an underlying process or action which affected the object. Examples:

- (55) *ay-ne ma-bu phuy*
 I-Nom he-Acc beat
 'I beat him'

- (56) *əy ma-bu calli*
 I he-Acc like
 'I like him'
- (57) *əy-ne ma-bu sen thəŋgi*
 I-Nom he-Acc money sent
 'I sent him (some) money'
- (58) *əy-ne ma-bu yum səŋ-həlli*
 I-Nom he-Acc house watch-caused
 'I made him watch the house'

Notice that the use of the accusative suffix is constrained by the need to have an underlying action or process that affects the referent: it does not therefore normally occur with the arguments of state verbs (see, however, below 6.5.7).

6.5.2 Among the arguments that take the accusative suffix, the language makes a distinction between animate (especially human) and inanimate arguments; in the latter case, the suffix is generally left unspecified. This is apparently because inanimate arguments generally function as affected objects rather than as affecting or controlling arguments and hence they do not have to be specified as affected. However, such arguments do take the suffix *bu* in contexts in which they are being emphasized. Examples:

- (59a) *məhak-ne huy-bu kawwi*
 he-Nom dog-Acc kicked
 'He kicked the dog'
- (59b) *məhak-ne tebəl kawwi*
 he-Nom table kicked
 'He kicked the table'
- (59c) *məhak-ne tebəl-du-bu kawwi*
 he-Nom table-that-Acc kicked
 'He kicked that (particular) table'
- (60a) *tebəl pu-y*
 table carry-Imp
 'Carry the table!'
- (60b) *tebəl-du-bu pu-y*
 table-that-Acc carry-Imp
 'Carry that (particular) table!'

The suffix may be left unspecified in the case of animate arguments in contexts in which the meaning is evident from the context; this is true of other case suffixes as well, as we will be pointing out in a later section (see 6.9.3) Examples:

- (61a) *əy-ne ma-bu kəwwi*
 I-Nom he-Acc called
 'I called him'

- (63) ey-ne ma kawwi
I-Nom he called
'I called him'

The suffix is most frequently used in transitive sentences since it is in such sentences that one generally finds an affected participant. However, the use of this suffix is not conditioned by the notion of passivity. It can occur in intransitive sentences as well, as for example when the participant concerned is being affected by an external force or cause. Examples:

- (64) nupsit-ne ma-bu celli
wind-Nom he-Acc carried
'He was carried away by the wind'

The suffix can also be used with the actor of negated action sentences in order to emphasize the fact that the individual concerned had failed to carry out the expected activity due to reasons that were not under his control. Examples.

- (65) layrik-si ey-ne pa-d-ri
book-this I-Nom read-Neg-NFu
'I did not read this book'
- (66) layrik-si eyb-u pa-d-ri
book-this I-Acc read-Neg-NFu
'I did not (have not been able to) read this book'
- (67) ey-ne mehak-pu u-d-ri
I-Nom he-Acc see-neg-NFu
'I did not see him'
- (68) ey-bu mehak u-d-ri
I Acc he see-Neg-NFu
'I myself did not see him'

Notice that the patient is shifted to the position of the theme (and is left unmarked for case) in the case of negated sentences in which the actor is shifted to the position of the patient.

Such a use of the accusative suffix *bu* with the actor of negative sentences is more common in sentences in which the negative verb is emphasized through the use of the particle *ne* as can be seen in the following examples:

- (69) mehak-pu i ruja-d-ri-ne
he-Acc bathe-Neg-NFu-Emp
'He himself has not taken bath'
- (70) ma-bu ca-khi-de-ne
he-Acc eat-Deid-Neg-Emp
'He himself had not eaten'

6.5.4 In the case of some of the action sentences that contain an actor, patient and location, Manipuri allows the location (which may be a recipient, experiencer, goal or source) to be viewed as the patient (i.e. as the affected participant), in which case the original patient would be shifted to the position of theme; in such a usage, the former occurs with the accusative suffix and the latter is left unmarked for case. This usage is especially seen in the case of verbs which have an inanimate patient. Examples:

- (67a) *ey-ne mañon-de sən-du-bu pi*
 I-Nom he-Loc cow-that-Acc gave
 'I gave that cow to him'
- (67b) *ey-ne ma-bu sel pi*
 I-Nom he-Acc money gave
 'I gave him (some) money'
- (68) *tombe-ne mi-du-bu para taki*
 Tomba-Nom man-that-Acc lesson taught
 'Tomba taught (a) lesson to that man'

6.5.5 In the case of causative sentences also, it is possible to view the causee as the patient (affected person) and use the accusative suffix with that argument; the original patient would then be shifted to the position of location. Alternatively, the causee may be viewed as the location (goal) of causation and the original patient may be left unaltered. Examples:

- (69a) *ey-ne ma-bu sel pi*
 I-Nom he-Acc money gave
 'I gave him money'
- (69b) *tombe-ne ey-bu mañon-de sel pi-helli*
 Tomba-Nom I-Acc he-Loc money give-caused
 'Tomba made me give money to him'
- (69c) *tombe-ne eyñon-de ma-bu sel pi-helli*
 Tomba-Nom I-Loc he-Acc money give-caused
 'Tomba made me give him money'
- (70a) *ey-ne ma-bu kawwi*
 I-Nom he-Acc kicked
 'I kicked him'
- (70b) *tombe-ne ey-bu mañon-de kaw-helli*
 Tomba-Nom I-Acc he-Loc kick-caused
 'Tomba made me kick him'
- (70c) *tombe-ne eyñon-de ma-bu kaw-helli*
 Tomba-Nom I-Acc kick-caused
 'Tomba made me kick him'

The two sentences (69c) and (70c) can also ambiguously mean that the argument in the accusative is the person who gave money or the person who kicked respectively.

6.5.6 In the case of actions and processes that affect a body part, Manipuri allows either the body part or the individual who possesses that body part to be used with the suffix *bu* (i.e. to be regarded as the patient). In the latter case, the body part would be shifted to the position of the theme and left unmarked for case. Examples

(71a) *tombe-ne ma-gi mekok thugay-re*
Tomba-Nom he-Gen head break-Perf
'Tomba has broken his head'

(71b) *tombe ne ma-bu mekok thugay-re*
Tomba-Nom he-Gen head break-Perf
'Tomba has broken him (on his) head'

(72a) *ma-gi mekhut kona-ne thudek-po-ge*
he-Gen hand who-Nom break-Inf-Q
'Who broke his hand?'

(72b) *ma-bu mekhut kona-ne thudek-po-ge*
he-Acc hand who-Nom break-Inf-Q
'Who broke him (by his) hand?'

6.5.7 As we had mentioned earlier, the semantic relation that the suffix *bu* denotes is basically one of an event (action or process); we do not generally find the arguments of state verbs to be occurring with this suffix. However, in the case of some verbs like *ki* 'be afraid', *saw* 'be angry' and *khen* 'know', the suffix does occur, but in such a usage the verb has a processual meaning. Examples

(73a) *mohak oyon-de sawwi*
he I-Loc angry
'He is angry with me'

(73b) *mahak ex-bu sawwi*
he I-Acc angry
'He is angry with me (is showing anger)'

(74a) *oy magon-de ki*
I he-Loc fear
'I am afraid of him'

(74b) *oy ma-bu ki*
I he-Acc fear
'I fear him'

The accusative suffix also has certain extended pragmatic usages as we will be pointing out in a later section (see 6.10.3.111).

6.6 Use of the locative suffix *də*

6.6.1 Introduction

The crucial meaning which underlies the use of the suffix *də* is that the object concerned forms some kind of location for the state or event that the verb denotes. It may be the source or goal of a motion, the location of the effect of an action or process, or the location of a characteristic or experience. We may describe these different facets of location as involving

- (i) a location proper,
- (ii) an affected object that is being viewed as the location of the effect, and
- (iii) an instrument, means or cause that is being viewed as the location of the performed action or process.

The justification for this three-fold classification of the various uses of the locative suffix is that the second type of location mentioned above can alternate with a patient (i.e. it can show an alternation between *də* and *bu*), whereas the third type of location can alternate with an instrument (i.e. an alternation between *də* and *na*). However, a few location verbs of the first type also allow their locations to be viewed as patients, as we will be pointing out below.

6.6.2 Denoting the location proper

In this usage, the locative suffix *də* functions as the 'unmarked' form: it occurs in different types of contexts in which the location that is being expressed is translatable as 'from' (source), 'to' (goal), 'in', 'on', 'over', 'at', 'by', etc.; in all these contexts the locational distinctions are derivable either from the meaning of the verb or of the arguments occurring with it.

In the case of ambiguity, however, the suffix can be accompanied by other markers which disambiguate the sentences by specifying the intended type of location as shown below:

(i) The various locational distinctions like 'in', 'on', 'over', 'at', 'by', etc. can either be left unspecified or specified with the help of additional markers like *məhək* 'on', *mənug* 'in', *əloybə* 'around', etc. which precede the suffix *də*. Details regarding the use of these spatial markers have been given in the previous chapter (see 5.7) Examples:

(75a) *layrik adu təhəl-də ley*
book that table-Loc is
'That book is (on) the table'

(75b) *layrik ədu təbəl məhək-lə ley*
book that table on-Loc is
'The book is on the table'

(76a) *nəŋ-gi səl upu-də ley*
you-Gen money box-Loc is
'Your money is (in) the box'

(76b) *nəŋ-gi səl upu mənug-də ley*
you-Gen money box in-Loc is
'Your money is in the box'

(ii) These markers are also used for specifying the various directional distinctions which can also be left unspecified if they are derivable from the context. Examples:

(77a) əv-ne pambi-de isig khiki
I-Nom plant over-Loc water sprinkled
'I sprinkled water (over) the plant'

(77b) əv-ne pambi methək-te isig khiki
I-Nom plant over-Loc water sprinkled
'I sprinkled water over the plant'

(78a) mahak isig-de tay
he water-Loc fell
'He fell (into) the water'

(78b) mahak isig menun-de tay
he water in-Loc fell
'He fell into the water'

(79a) mahak leymay-de tuy
he floor-Loc fell
'He fell (on to) the floor'

(79b) mahak leymay rom-de tuy
he floor on-Loc fell
'He fell on to the floor'

(80a) lin-ne u-de yetli
snake-Nom tree-Loc coiled
'The snake coiled (around) the tree'

(80b) lin-ne u-gi əkyəb-de yetli
snake-Nom tree-Gen around-Loc coiled
'The snake coiled around the tree'

(iii) Source ('from') and goal ('to') can also be denoted by this unmarked suffix *de*, but when these two need to be differentiated, the genitive suffix *gi* is attached to the locative suffix. Examples:

(81a) əy-ne maɣon-de wari tembi
I-Nom he-Loc story taught
'I taught him a story'

(81b) əy-ne maɣon-de wari temmi
I-Nom he-Loc story learnt
'I learnt a story (from) him'

(81c) əy-ne maɣon-de-gi wari temmi
I-Nom he-Loc-Gen story learnt
'I learnt a story from him'

- (82a) məhak-nə ləymay-də laynk ləŋŋi
he-Nom floor-Loc book threw
'He threw the book to the floor'
- (82b) məhak-nə ləymay-də layrik khulli
he-Nom floor-Loc book picked
'He picked the book (from) the floor'
- (82c) məhak-nə ləymay-də-gi layrik khulli
he-Nom floor-Loc-Gen book picked
'He picked up the book from the floor'

Traditionally, *dəgi*, occurring in sentences like (81c) and (82c), is considered to be a distinct ablative suffix and is contrasted with the locative *də*; this, we believe, is unnecessary because the 'source' of an object can easily be perceived as the 'possessor' or 'possessing location' of that object, and it is apparently this possibility which has given rise to the use of the combination of locative and genitive suffixes for specifying this meaning.

Further, the fact that the suffixes *də* and *dəgi* alternate in several contexts as shown above, with the former functioning as the unmarked representation, makes it necessary to view *dəgi* as a combination of two different suffixes of which *də* is to be identified with the locative suffix.

There are, however, some contexts in which the suffix *dəgi* cannot be replaced by *də* for denoting the source. This is true of verbs like *lak* 'come', *cə* 'go' and *tha* 'send' which can occur with both a source as well as a goal; in such contexts, *dəgi* denotes the source and *də* the goal. Examples:

- (83a) əy-nə bazar-də cəlli
I-Nom market-Loc went
'I went to the market'
- (83b) əy-nə bazar-də-gi cəlli
I-Nom market-Loc-Gen went
'I went (home) from the market'
- (84a) məhak-nə imphal-də həlli
he-Nom Imphal-Loc returned
'He returned to Imphal'
- (84b) məhak-nə imphal-də-gi həlli
he-Nom Imphal-Loc-Gen returned
'he returned from Imphal'

In the case of a few other verbs like *sə* 'pull out', *cig* 'pull', *thək* 'break off (branch)' *ɬay* 'drive away', *lok* 'pick out', *mən* 'snatch', and *phək* 'pull out' also, the source is denoted by the suffixes *də-gi* in spite of the fact that the verbs are inherently marked for source. Examples:

- (85) əy-nə mə-bu məkha-də-gi ciggi
I-Nom he-Acc below-Loc-Gen pulled
'I pulled him from below'

- (86) *ey-ne khut-to-gi tingkhəṅ sətli*
 I-Nom hand-Loc-Gen thorn pulled
 'I pulled out the thorn from the hand'

(iv) In addition to the location of objects, the suffix *də* can also be used for denoting the location of properties as seen in the following examples. The use of such sentences, however, is not very common.

- (87) *manən-də esawhə yamna ley*
 he-Loc anger much is
 'There is much anger in him'
- (88) *manən-də ətənbe ley*
 he-Loc laziness is
 'There is laziness in him'

(v) There are a few location verbs like *cə* 'go', *kə* 'climb', *kan* 'step over', *cəp* 'enter', and *cəṅ* 'jump' which allow location arguments to be viewed as patients and therefore allow the locative suffix *də* to be replaced by the accusative suffix *bu* (see 9.4.3). Examples:

- (89a) *ey-ne bejaṛ-də cətli*
 I-Nom market-Loc went
 'I went to the market'
- (89b) *ey-ne bejaṛ cətli*
 I-Nom market went
 'I went (to) the market'
- (90a) *ey-ne toṃh-də kalli*
 I-Nom Tomba-Loc stepped
 'I stepped over Tomba'
- (90b) *ey-ne toṃbo-bu kalli*
 I-Nom Tomba-Acc stepped
 'I stepped (over) Tomba'

(vi) The locative suffix can also be used for denoting temporal locations of various types; however, unlike their above-mentioned use for denoting spatial locations (see i-iii above), the suffix *də* does not function as an unmarked form in this particular use. Instead, the suffix has a specific function, namely that of denoting, unambiguously, the *point of time* of an event (translatable as 'at'); in order to indicate other types of temporal locations, one has to obligatorily use other markers like *məuṅ* 'after', *məmaṅ* 'before', *məə* 'between' and *mənuṅ* 'in' before the locative *də*, with the numeral that indicates the relevant point of time occurring in the genitive.

It is apparently the fact that these temporal distinctions are not derivable either from the meaning of the verb or of the arguments occurring with it that has made it obligatory to use these distinct markers.

- Examples:
 (91a) *məhak-ne puṅ eṃum-də lak-keni*
 he-Nom hour three-Loc come-Fu
 'He will come at three o'clock'

- (91h) mehak-ne pug ehum-gi mēman-de lak-kēni
 he-Nom hour three-Gen front-Loc come-Fu
 'He will come before 3 o'clock'
- (91c) mehak-ne pug ehum-gi meṭuṅ-de lak-kēni
 he-Nom hour three-Gen behind-Loc come-Fu
 'He will come after 3 o'clock'
- (91d) mehak-ne pug ehum meri-gi mērek-te lak-kēni
 he-Nom hour three four-Gen between-Loc come-Fu
 'He will come in between three and four o'clock'
- (91e) mehak-ne pug ehum-gi meṇuṅ-de lak-kēni
 he-Nom hour three-Gen in-Loc come-Fu
 'He will come in three hours'

The suffixes *de* and *gi* together can be used in these phrases in order to denote the temporal 'source' (i.e. the starting point) of the events concerned. Examples:

- (92) mehak-ne pug ehum-de-gi pa-rēm-mi
 he-Nom hour three-Loc-Gen read-Compl-NFu
 'He had been reading since three o'clock'

When used after the infinitive forms of verbs also, the suffix *de* can denote the point of time. Examples:

- (93) ma-ne illek-pa-de ey ley may-de ol-li
 he-Nom push-Inf-Loc I floor-Loc fall-NFu
 'When he pushed, I fell on the floor'
- (94) ma-ne lak-pa-de ey cēt-kēni
 he come-Inf-Loc I go-Fu
 'I will go when he comes'

Similarly, the combination of suffixes *de* and *gi* used after such infinitive forms, can provide the meaning 'since'. Examples:

- (95) mehak lak-pa-de-gi ey layrik pa-d-ri
 he come-Inf-Loc-Gen I book read-Neg-NFu
 'I have not read the book since he came'
- (96) mēsi-de lak-pa-de-gi mehak na-ri
 this-Loc come-Inf-Loc-Gen he ill-Dur
 'He has been ill since coming to this place'

6.6.3 Denoting an affected object.

The second major use of the suffix *de* in Manipuri is for denoting persons or objects that have been affected by a process or action. This use is facilitated by the fact that such persons or objects can be perceived as 'locations' for the effects of the actions or processes rather than as objects that have been affected by them. That is, the suffix provides an alternative way of viewing the participants. Examples:

120
(97)

tombo-ne cawba-de phu-y
Tomba-Nom Chaoba-Loc beat-NFu
'Tomba beat Chaoba'

(98)

oy-ne thobi-de kok-i
I-Nom cucumber-Loc out-NFu
'I cut the cucumber'

(a) However, the use of the suffix *de* after the patients of such 'affecting' verbs is somewhat constrained as compared to the use of the accusative *bi*. It can occur after the patients of verbs like *cik* 'bite', *cup* 'suck', *khaw* 'scrape', *sok* 'touch' and *cap* 'pinch' which affect the patients only partially, but not after the patients of verbs like *ca* 'eat', *thak* 'drink', *kok* 'shave', *hai* 'kill', *pha* 'arrest' and *yok* 'rear up' which affect them wholly.

It also does not occur after patients of events or actions that produce (or 'effect') those patients. For example, the patients of verbs like *kham* 'build', *tu* 'stitch (a shirt)' and *can* 'kindle (fire)' do not take this locative suffix.

(b) Secondly, the person affected can be the beneficiary or the experiencer of the concerned event. We can regard the person as being the location of the concerned object (or characteristic) physically in the former case and mentally in the latter case. Examples:

(i) Beneficiary

(99) oy-ne imgon-de layrik omo pi
I-Nom he-Loc book one gave
'I gave him a book'

(100) tombo-ne oymon-de cithi i
Tomba-Nom I-Loc letter wrote
'Tomba wrote me a letter'

(ii) Experiencer

(101) phurit oti cawba-de cil-li
shirt this Chaoba-Loc tight-NFu
'This shirt is tight for Chaoba'

(102) oy-ne manon-de layrik ut-li
I-Nom he-Loc book show-NFu
'I showed him the book'

The sense of location is more pronounced in the case of beneficiary than in that of patient or experiencer. This is evidenced by the fact that the beneficiary can give rise to the sense of goal as well as source, and further in the case of the source meaning, one can optionally use the genitive suffix *gi* after the locative *de* in order to emphasize the source meaning. Examples:

(103) oy-ne manon-de sel khay
I-Nom he-Loc money collected
'I collected money from (at) him'

(103b) *ey-ne maŋon-de-gi sel khay*
 I-Nom he-Loc-Gen money collected
 'I collected money from him'

(104a) *tombe-ne eyŋon-de layrik lay*
 Tomba-Nom I-Loc book bought
 'Tomba bought a book from (at) me'

(104b) *tombe-ne eyŋon-de-gi layrik lay*
 Tomba-Nom I-Loc-Gen book bought
 'Tomba bought a book from me'

(c) Thirdly, the person concerned can also be the causee of causative sentences. Examples

(105a) *ey-ne kep-pi*
 I-Nom cry-NFu
 'I cried'

(105b) *tombe-ne eyŋon-de kep-hel-li*
 Tomba-Nom I-Loc cry-Cs-NFu
 'Tomba made me cry'

(106a) *ey-ne ma-bu cey*
 I-Nom he-Acc abused
 'I abused him'

(106b) *tombe-ne eyŋon-de ma-bu cey-helli*
 Tomba-Nom I-Loc he-Acc abuse-caused
 'Tomba made me abuse him'

(d) In the case of perceptual verbs like *ta* 'hear' *u* 'see', *nan* 'smell', *phaw* 'feel' and *haw* 'taste', the experiencing argument can occur with the locative suffix if the concerned event does not involve a volitional activity. Examples:

(107) *eyŋon-de isay emə tay*
 I-Loc song one heard
 'I heard a song'

(108) *eyŋon-de lay monəm nem-mi*
 I-Loc flower smell-NFu
 'I got the smell of the flower'

(e) In the case of stative verbs also, the locative suffix can be used for denoting the experiencer of the concerned state or characteristic. Examples:

(109) *məsi eyŋon-de sa-y*
 this I-Loc hot-NFu
 'This one is hot for me'

- (10) *caykel esi oymon-de wam-ŋi*
cycle this I-Loc high-NFu
'This cycle is (too) high for me'

The following usage of the locative suffix for denoting the opinion of the speaker is clearly an extension of the above-mentioned use for denoting the experience of a state.

- (11) *mehak oymon-de-di paŋ-ŋi*
he I-Loc-Emph foolish-NFu
'He is foolish in my opinion'
- (12) *oymon-de layrik esi phat-te*
I-Loc book this good-Neg
'This book is not good in my opinion'

4.4.4 Denoting an instrument or cause

The third major use of the suffix *de* is for denoting (i) the instrument or means and (ii) the cause or purpose. It alternates with the nominative *no* in both these types of usages.

(i) Denoting an instrument

The use for denoting an instrument (or means) apparently derives from the fact that instruments or means can also be viewed as locations of the relevant actions or processes. Examples:

- (113a) *mehak-no khut-ŋe heway cammi*
he-Nom hand-Loc beans washed
'He washed the beans by hand'
- (113b) *mehak-no khut-to heway cammi*
he-Nom hand-Loc beans washed
'He washed the beans (in the) hand'
- (114a) *mehak-no bes-no lak-i*
he-Nom bus-Nom come-NFu
'He came by bus'
- (114b) *mehak-no bes-to lak-i*
he-Nom bus-Loc come-NFu
'He came in the bus'

In contexts in which the instrument cannot be viewed as the location of the action concerned, Manipuri does not allow the nominative *no* to be replaced by the locative *de*. This interesting constraint can be illustrated with the help of the following sets of sentences:

- (115a) *mehak-no khut-no tehel illi*
he-Nom hand-Nom table pushed
'He pushed the table by hand'

- (115b) *mehak-ne khut-te tebel illi
he-Nom hand-Loc table pushed
'*He pushed the table in the hand'
- (115c) mehak-ne khut-te komla khoki
he-Nom hand-Loc orange peeled
'He peeled the orange in the hand'
- (116a) mehak-ne thaŋ-ne usa thay
he-Nom knife-Nom branch cut
'He cut the branch by knife'
- (116b) *mehak-ne thaŋ-de usa thay
he-Nom knife-Loc branch cut
'*He cut the branch on the knife'
- (117a) mehak-ne ya-ne ɲa say
he-Nom tooth-Nom fish chewed
'He chewed fish by his teeth'
- (117b) mehak-ne ya-de ɲa say
he-Nom tooth-Loc fish chewed
'?He chewed fish in his teeth'

(ii) Denoting cause or purpose

As we have pointed out in a previous section (see 6.4.3), cause or purpose can be denoted in Manipuri either by the nominative suffix *ne* or by the locative suffix *de*. We may regard the latter usage as providing a 'locational' view of the cause or purpose. Examples:

- (118a) mehak lak-pe-ne tombe-ne sawwi
he come-Inf-Nom Tomba-Nom angry
'Tomba was angry because he came'
- (118b) mehak lak-pe-de tombe-ne sawwi
he come-Inf-Loc Tomba-Nom angry
'Tomba was angry because he came'
- (119a) mesi-de lak-pe-ne tombe-ne nay
this-Loc come-Inf-Nom Tomba-Nom ill
'Tomba has been ill because he came here'
- (119b) mesi-de lak-pe-de tombe-ne nay
this-Loc come-Inf-Loc Tomba-Nom ill
'Tomba has been ill because he came here'

Sentences in which the nominalized clause occurs with the locative suffix *de* (like 118b and 119b) are actually ambiguous between the meaning of a cause (as shown above) or the meaning of time (as shown in the previous section (see 6.6.3.vi). For example, (118b) can also mean, ambiguously, that 'Tomba was angry when he came' and (119b) can also mean, ambiguously, that 'Tomba has been ill since he came

However, sentences in which the nominalized clause occurs with the nominative suffix *ne* can only have the former (cause) meaning. The temporal meaning can also be further specified by using the word 'time' before the locative suffix. Example.

- (118c) mehak lak-pe kan-de tomba-ne sawwi
he come-Inf time-Loc Tomba-Nom angry
'Tomba was angry when he came'

Nominalized clauses occurring with the suffix *de* can also (ambiguously) denote the purpose of the relevant event, provided that the sentence is interpreted as a habitual or generic one. Examples:

- (120) una asi ca-ho-de hawwi
leaf this eat-Inf-Loc tasty
(i) 'This leaf was found to be tasty when eaten'
(ii) 'This leaf is tasty for eating'
- (121) mepham edu ka-bo-de gammi
place that climb-Inf-Loc steep
(i) 'When climbed, that place was found to be steep'
(ii) 'That place is steep for climbing'

6.6.5 Restrictions on co-occurrence

As in the case of the nominative suffix described earlier (6.4.4), there appears to be no restriction as such against the use of the locative suffix with two or more arguments in a sentence so long as the case relations that the suffix, in its different uses, indicates are not exactly identical. The following combinations of arguments exemplify this point:

- (122a) mehak-ne ka-de khut-to haway cammi
he-Nom room-Loc hand-Loc beans washed
'He washed beans in (his) hand in his room'
- (122b) tomba-ne cawba-de ka-de phuy
Tomba-Nom Chaoba-Loc room-Loc beat
'Tomba beat Chaoba in the room'
- (122c) ey-ne manon-de ka-de layrik pi
I-Nom he-Loc room-Loc book gave
'I gave him a book in the room'
- (122d) mehak-ne ka-de lak-pe-de tomba-ne sawwi
he-Nom room-Loc come-Inf-Loc Tomba-Nom angry
'Tomba was angry because he came into the room'

6.7 Use of the genitive suffix *gi*

6.7.1 Use for relating two arguments

The genitive suffix is used in Manipuri for relating two different arguments with one another; it is attached to only one of the two arguments, with the argument containing this suffix functioning as the 'modifier' of the other argument. The relationship that it indicates can be any of several different relationships that can be thought of as occurring between two different arguments. Examples:

- (123) *av-ne tomha-gi gari ley*
I-Nom Tomba-Gen car purchased
'I purchased Tomba's car'
- (124) *tomha-ne ma-gi mamit pho-helli*
Tomba-Nom he-Gen eye good-caused
'Tomba cured his eye'
- (125) *ay-ne tomha-gi sejik ley*
I-Nom Tomba-Gen grasss purchased
'I purchased Tomba's grass' (grass cut by him)
- (126) *tomha-gi thangol yamne thewwi*
Tomba-Gen sickle much sharp
'Tomba's sickle is very sharp' (i.e. the sickle that he used for cutting the grass)

Notice that the relationship is one of alienable possession in (123), inalienable possession (body-part) in (124), result of one's work in (125) and instrument of one's work in (126).

(i) In order to describe the constraints which affect the use of this suffix, it would be convenient to consider the two arguments that it relates as arguments of an underlying sentence. In (125) and (126), for example, the related arguments can be assumed to be actor-patient and actor-instrument respectively of the verb *phan* 'cut (grass)' as in the following sentence.

- (126a) *tomha-ne thangol-ne sejik phalli*
Tomba-Non sickle-Nom grass cut
'Tomba cut the grass with a sickle'

In the case of actor-patient (inanimate) and actor-instrument sets, the actor occurs in the genitive and functions as the modifier of the patient or instrument. An actor can be related with inanimate patients in this fashion in the case of any of the action verbs, but it can be related with animate patients only in the case of a small set of verbs such as *yok* 'rear up', *lar* 'worship', *har* 'kill' and *pha* 'arrest'. Examples:

- (127a) *mehak-ne murti latli*
he-Nom idol worshipped
'He worships an idol'
- (127b) *mehak-ki murti ciq-du-de ley*
he-Gen idol hill-that-Loc is
'His idol is on that hill'

One can also relate the material that has been used in an action with the object that has been produced in such a situation, either the material or the object can occur with the genitive suffix. Examples

(128a) ov na wa-ne semhel khay
I Nom bamboo-Nom fence constructed
'I constructed a fence with bamboo'

(128b) wa gi semhel ken-de
bamboo-Gen fence hard-Neg
'The bamboo fence is not strong'

(128c) semhel-si-gi wa pha-tte
fence-this-Gen bamboo good-Neg
'The bamboo of this fence is not good'

An actor can be related with location through the genitive suffix only when there is some amount of permanence in the relationship that occurs between the two. Examples:

(129a) mehak yum esi-de ley
he house this-Loc lives
'He lives in this house'

(129b) mehak-ki yum piki
he-Gen house small
'His house is small'

One can also relate a location with an individual or object that is located in it by the genitive suffix. Examples:

(130a) ov na upu esi-de laynk themm
I Nom box this-Loc book put
'I put the books in this box'

(130b) laynk-ki upu-si ey-gi manup-ne pi
book-Gen box-this I-Gen friend-Nom gave
'My friend gave this box of books (to me)'

In the case of sentences containing an actor, patient and location, one can relate not only the actor, but also the location (beneficiary or the experiencer) with the inanimate patient. Examples:

(131a) ey-na tombo-de ciithi omo i
I-Nom Tomba-Loc letter one wrote
'I wrote a letter to Tomba'

(131b) ey-gi ciithi manon-de theg-na yawwi
I-Gen letter he-Loc late-Adv reached
'My letter reached him late'

- (131c) *tombe-gi cithi mañon-da then-ne yawwı*
 Tomba-Gen letter he-Loc late-Adv reached
 'Tomba's letter reached him late'

(ii) It is also possible to relate more than two arguments occurring in a sentence through the genitive suffix as seen in the following instances.

- (132a) *tombe drama-de mena phongı*
 Tomba drama-Loc prize got
 'Tomba got a prize in the drama'
- (132b) *tombe-gi drama-gi mena*
 Tomba-Gen drama-Gen prize
 'Tomba's drama's prize'
- (133a) *tombe-ne laykhom-ne layphadibi say*
 Tomba-Nom mud-Nom doll made
 'Tomba made a doll with mud'
- (133b) *tombe-gi levkhom-gi layphadibi*
 Tomba-Gen mud-Gen doll
 'Tomba's mud's doll'

Sentences of this type, containing two or more arguments in the genitive, allow two different types of interpretations; the argument in the genitive that occurs closest to the head (i.e. the one without the genitive) may form a construction with that head, and that construction may function as a head for the next argument in the genitive (and so on); alternatively, each of the two or more arguments in the genitive may directly modify the head. In the examples given above, we have this latter interpretation, but the following instances exemplify the former possibility:

- (134a) *mehak-ki layrik-ki mamen lupa maña nı*
 he-Gen book-Gen price rupee five Cop
 'The price of his book is five rupees'
- (134b) *tombe-gi layrik-ki mekhum-gi mecu muy*
 Tomba-Gen book-Gen cover-Gen color black
 'The colour of Tomba's book's cover is black'

(iii) As we have described in detail in the thirteenth chapter, one of the devices used in Manipuri for nominalizing a clause is to attach the prefix *khui* or *mo* to the verb; all the arguments occurring in such nominalized clauses take the genitive suffix (in place of any other case suffix that they may possess in the original clause). That is, the arguments occurring in such clauses are viewed as directly related to the prefixed nominal.

Examples

- (135a) *mehak-ne cak cay*
 he-Nom rice ate
 'He ate rice'

- (130) *mohak-ki cak-ki khui-ca phaje-de*
 he-Gen rice-Gen Com-eat nice-Neg
 'His way of eating rice is not nice'
- (131) *ev-ne lavnk pay*
 I Nom book read
 'I read the book.'
- (132) *ev-gi lavnk-ki khui-pa cummi*
 I-Gen book-Gen Com-read correct
 'My way of reading the book is correct'

Notice that these constructions involve the second type of interpretation mentioned above.

(iv) As we have pointed out in the fifth chapter (5.6) there is a small class of nouns including (a) certain kinship terms, (b) body-part terms, and (c) closely associated possessions, which take a personal prefix for denoting the individuals with whom the kins are related or the individuals who possess the body-parts or objects are related. The prefix is *i* for first person, *na* for second person and *me* for third person. In the case of kinship terms like the following, the use of this personal prefix is obligatory:

Kinship terms	I person	II person	III person
ma 'mother'	ima	nama	mema
pa 'father'	ipa	nepa	mepa
ne 'aunt'	ine	nene	mene
pon 'father's elder brother'	ipon	napon	mepon
ton 'father's younger brother'	iton	naton	meton
vambo 'male's elder brother'	iyambo	neyambo	meyambo
bun 'female's elder brother'	ibun	nebun	mebun

These prefixes are retained even when the kinship terms are modified by a noun in the genitive. Examples:

- (133) *ev-gi i-ma-ne evgen-de cak illi*
 I Gen my-mother-Nom I-Loc food fed
 'My mother fed food to me'
- (134) *neŋ-gi na-ma-na bazar-de cōtkhi*
 you-Gen his-mother-Nom market-Loc went
 'Your mother has gone to the market'
- (135) *ma-gi me-ma-ma paw hay-ru*
 he-Gen his-mother-Loc news say-imp
 'Give this message to his mother'

In the case of body part terms and terms denoting certain possessions, like the ones given below, the use of these prefixes is optional:

<i>Body-parts</i>		<i>I person</i>	<i>II person</i>	<i>III person</i>
kok	'head'	ikok	nekok	mekok
khut	'hand'	ikhut	nekhut	mekhut
mit	'eye'	imī	nemit	memit
mav	'face'	imay	nemay	memay
khon	'leg'	ikhon	nekhon	mekhon

<i>Possessions</i>				
yum	'house'	iyum	noyum	meyum
sən	'cattle'	isen	nosən	mesən
law	'paddy field'	ilaw	nelaw	məlaw
khun	'village'	ikhun	nekhun	mekhun
laybak	'country'	ireybak	noeybak	meoybak
wa	'opinion'	iwa	nəwa	məwa

Examples:

- (140a) ay-gi i-mit-tə uphun canne
I-Gen my-eye-Loc dust entered
'Dust has entered into my eye'
- (140b) ay-gi mit-tə uphun canne
I-Gen eye-Loc dust entered
'Dust has entered my eye'
- (141a) neŋ-gi nə-yum-də cət-si
you-Gen your-house-Loc go-Con
'Let's go to your house'
- (141b) neŋ-gi yum-də cət-si
you-Gen house-Loc go-Con
'Let's go to your house'
- (142a) əykhoy ma-gi mə-wa law-də
we he-Gen his-opinion take-Neg
'We do not take his opinion'
- (142b) əykhoy ma-gi wa law-də
we he-Gen opinion take-Neg
'We do not take his opinion'

(v) Manipuri allows genitive noun phrases to be used by themselves, i.e. without any noun following them, in contexts in which the identity of the possessed entity can be established on the basis of contextual factors. Examples:

- (143) kəna-gi-nə phay?
who-Gen-Nom good
'Whose (hook) is better?'
- (144) ma-gi kəday-də ləy?

he-Gen where-Loc is
Where is his (book)?

- (145) mehak tomba-gi-do laki
he Tomba-Gen-Loc came
'He came to Tomba's (place)'

6.7.2 Use as a case marker

The genitive suffix has clearly the function of relating two different arguments (participants) with one another in the instances that we have described so far; however, there are certain other instances of its use in which the suffix appears to function as a case marker, i.e. as a suffix that relates an argument with the verb, even though it continues to imply, rather indirectly, a relationship with one of the remaining arguments of the sentence.

For example, an argument in the nominative, denoting the actor of a sentence, can be replaced by an argument in the genitive, especially when the verb occurs in its present perfect form. Examples:

- (146) oja-gi cak ca-re
teacher-Gen food eat-Perf
'The teacher has eaten food'
- (147) tomba-gi kopli thak-e
Tomba-Gen coffee drink-Perf
'Tomba has drunk coffee'
- (148) oja-gi layrik tomba-do pi-re
teacher-Gen book Tomba-Loc give-Perf
'The teacher has given the book to Tomba'

Notice that the arguments in the genitive, namely *oja-gi* 'teacher's' in (146) and (148) and *tomba-gi* 'Tomba's' in (147), are directly related with the verb, but they continue to show some kind of relationship (like that of possession) with one of the remaining arguments of the sentence. It is quite possible to regard these as involving genitive constructions of the type mentioned earlier (as for example, by translating (146) as 'The teacher's food has been eaten') but the native speaker's intuition is against it. Further, sentences like (148) can ambiguously mean 'Someone has given teacher's book to Tomba' in which case we have a proper genitive construction contrasting with the above-mentioned usage.

6.7.3 Denoting beneficiary

Arguments occurring with the genitive suffix have another interesting usage in which the suffix functions as a case marker even more clearly than in the previous usage. In this usage, the arguments denote the beneficiaries of states, actions or processes. Examples:

- (149) nehak-ki teligram ome lak-i
you-Gen teligram one come-NFu
'A telegram arrived for you'

- (150) ey-ne mesi cawba-gi lay-rəm-mi
I-Nom this Chaoba-Gen buy-CompI-NFu
'I had bought this for Chaoba'
- (151) ma-ne tombe-gi parti ɔme tawwi
he-Nom Tomba-Gen party one did
'He gave a party to Tomba'
- (152) cak esi ey-gi-di ok-i
rice this I-Gen-emph sufficient-NFu
'This rice is sufficient for me'

When this beneficiary noun phrase is followed by another noun phrase, there is a possibility of confusion arising between the meaning of beneficiary and that of the possessor. In order to remove this possible confusion from such contexts, one may add *de-mək* 'Loc-only' to this suffix, and thereby specify that the meaning involved is that of the beneficiary and not of the possessor. Examples:

- (153a) ma-ne ey-gi layrik pay
he-Nom I-Gen book read
'He read my book'
- (153b) ma-ne ey-gi-de-mək layrik pay
he-Nom I-Gen-Loc-only book read
'He read the book for my own sake'
- (154a) ey-ne tombe-gi yum lay
I-Nom Tomba-Gen house bought
'I bought Tomba's house'
- (154b) ey-ne tombe-gi-de-mək yum lay
I-Nom Tomba-Gen-Loc-only house bought
'I bought a house for the sake of Tomba'

The use of the suffix *gi* for denoting the beneficiary rather than the possessor is more frequent in the case of sentences in which the verb occurs with the benefactive suffix *bi*. Examples:

- (155) ma-ne ey-gi layrik pa-bi
he-Nom I-Gen book read-Ben
'He read the book for me'
- (156) ma-ne ey-gi səngom yon-bi
he-Nom I-Gen milk sell-Ben
'He sells milk for me (on my behalf)'

6.7.4 Use with an infinitive

Nominalized clauses ending in the infinitive suffix *ba* can take the genitive suffix *gi* in order to indicate the purpose or reason for the occurrence of an action or event. Examples:

- (157) ey-ne ma-ne phəm-be-gi cəy

1-Nom he-Nom sit-Inf-Gen abused
 'I abused him for sitting'

- (155) *naη modu-do lak-po-gi kanno-d-re*
 you that-Loc come-Inf-Gen use-Neg-Perf
 'There is no use of your coming there'

Nominal arguments can also denote a cause (rather than the beneficiary) when occurring with the genitive suffix (followed by *do-mək* 'Loc-only'), provided that the main verb occurs in the perfect form. Examples

- (159) *ey-ne naη-gi-do-mək na-bi-re*
 1-Nom you-Gen-Loc-only pain-Ben-Perf
 'I have suffered because of you' (mother telling her son who has been punished)
- (160) *eykhey-ne naη-gi-do-mək ikay-bi-re*
 we-Nom you-Gen-Loc-only shame-Ben-Perf
 'We are ashamed because of you'

6.7.5 Denoting source

Genitive suffix has another interesting usage in which it follows the locative suffix. It has the function of specifying the source (as against the goal) in this usage. As we have pointed out in the previous section (see 6.6.2.iii), this use of the genitive suffix derives from the fact that a source can be thought of as the possessor or 'possessing location' of the object concerned.

The combination of the suffixes *do* and *gi* can denote 'sources' of different types such as those of space, time, experiencer and beneficiary. In most of these instances the suffix *do* can function as the unmarked form: it is followed by *gi* in order to specify that the concerned argument is a source. Examples:

(i) Spatial source

- (161) *məhak-ne bəjar-do-gi laki*
 he-Nom market-Loc-Gen came
 'He came from the market'
- (162) *bənk esi-do-gi nəki*
 bank this-Loc-Gen near
 'The bank is near from this place'

(ii) Temporal source

- (163) *pung əhum-do-gi məhak layrik pa-rəm-mi*
 hour three-Loc-Gen he book read-Compl-NFu
 'He had been reading the book since 3 o'clock'
- (164) *kəphi thək-po-do-gi əy hidək cə-d-ri*
 coffee drink-Inf-Loc-Gen I medicine eat-Neg-NI
 'I did not take medicine since drinking coffee'

(iii) *Experiential source*

- (165) *oy-ne magon-de-gi karate temmi*
 I-Nom he-Loc-Gen karate learnt
 'I learnt karate from him'
- (166) *oy-ne magon-de-gi layrik ni*
 I-Nom he-Loc-Gen book requested
 'I requested a book from him'

(iv) *Benefactive source*

- (167) *oy-ne magon-de-gi layrik way*
 I-Nom he-Loc-Gen book borrowed
 'I borrowed a book from him'
- (168) *oy-ne magon-de-gi lupa mega lawwi*
 I-Nom he-Loc-Gen rupee five took
 'I took five rupees from him'

The language also allows these two suffixes to be used together in order to denote the cause of events or actions. Examples:

- (169) *thewsadebe-de-gi layrik maggi*
 carelessness-Loc-Gen book lost
 'The book was lost due to carelessness'
- (170) *tombe-ne il-lek-pe-de-gi oy cawhe-de theggi*
 Tomba-Nom push-Dei3-Inf-Loc-Gen I Chaoba-Loc dashed
 'I dashed against Chaoba due to Tomba's pushing me'

They can also be used jointly for denoting the standard of comparison. Examples.

- (171) *mesi-ne edu-de-gi yammi*
 this-Nom that-Loc-Gen much
 'This is more than that'
- (172) *mesi edu-de-gi helhi*
 this that-Loc-Gen excess
 'This is more than that'

Notice that the nominative *ne* has the function of providing the comparative sense in these stative sentences (see 4.4.1.6).

6.8 Use of the conjunctive suffix *ge*

6.8.1 The conjunctive suffix is used in Manipuri primarily for conjoining two different arguments that occur in one and the same case role. There are two interesting ways in which this conjoining of two different arguments can be done in Manipuri:

First, the two arguments can be viewed as forming a single argument, in which case the conjunctive suffix is attached individually to both the arguments, and the relevant case marker is attached to the second one. the case marker follows the conjunctive suffix of the second noun.

Examples:

- (175a) mehak-ne keythel-go iskul-go-de cat-koni
 he-Nom market-Conj school-Conj-Loc go-Fu
 'He will go to the market and to the school'
- (175a) mehak-ne neŋ-go ey-go-bu phuy
 he-Nom you-Conj I-Conj-Acc beat
 'He beat you and me'
- (175a) ey-go neŋ-go-ne pun-ne cat-koni
 I-Conj you-Conj-Nom together-Adv go-Fu
 'I and you will go together'

Second, the two arguments can be viewed as representing two different participants which are individually related to the verb. In such a usage, the case marker precedes the conjunctive suffix, and further, the case marker is attached individually to both the conjoined arguments.

Examples:

- (173b) mehak-ne keythel-de-go iskul-de-go cat-koni
 he-Nom market-Loc-Conj school-Loc-Conj go-Fu
 'He will go to the market and to the school'
- (174b) mehak-ne neŋ-bu-go ey-bu-go phuy
 he-Nom you-Acc-Conj I-Acc-Conj beat
 'He beat you and me'

It may be noted here that the nominative suffix cannot be used in this second type of construction.

More frequently, however, this distinction between two different types of conjoining is missing, as the two conjoined arguments occur without any other case markers; that is, their case role would be regarded as derivable from the context. Examples:

- (175) satre-go oja-go hon-de pulli
 student-Conj teacher-Conj hall-Loc assembled
 'Students and teachers assembled in the hall'
- (176) mehak-ne ey-go ma-go sel pi
 he-Nom I-Conj he-Conj money gave
 'He gave money to me and him'

As we will be pointing out in detail in a later chapter (see 10.5), the two reciprocating arguments of reciprocal verbs are also expressed as conjoined arguments in Manipuri. These occur either with the conjunctive suffix or in their plural form, and their respective case markers are expressed, if necessary, separately with the help of the reduplicated form of *one* 'one' as in the following sentences:

- (177a) *tombe-ge cawbe-ge (eme-ne-me-de) phu-ne-y*
 Tomba-Conj Chaoba-Conj (one-Nom-one-Loc) beat-Rec-NFu
 'Tomba and Chaoba beat one another'
- (178) *məkhoy (eme-ne-me-de-gi) sel law-ne-y*
 they (one-Nom-one-Loc-Gen) money take-Rec-NFu
 'They took money from one another'

This reduplicated *eme* 'one' can also occur with the conjunctive suffix as in the following example:

- (177h) *tombe-ge cawbe-ge (eme-ge-me-ge) phu-ne-y*
 Tomba-Conj Chaoba-Conj (one-Conj-one-Conj) beat-rec-NFu
 'Tomba and Chaoba beat one another'
- (179) *tombe-ge cawbe-ge ey-ge (eme-ge-me-ge) phu-ne-y*
 Tomba-Conj Chaoba-Conj I-Conj (one-Conj-one-Conj) beat-Rec-NFu
 Tomba, Chaoba and I beat one another'

6.8.2 The difference between the two contrasting uses of the conjunctive suffix described above is worth noting. In the former case, the suffix clearly relates two different noun phrases and establishes a single participant out of them, but in the latter case the two participants are kept distinct; we may perhaps claim that in this latter case it is more like a case suffix, as it indicates the joint participation of the two in the event concerned. This is also true of its use in reciprocal sentences.

The conjunctive suffix has certain additional uses in which its relation with the verb is even more direct. For example, in all situations of the above-mentioned type, the conjunctive suffix can be attached to one of the two arguments with the remaining argument occurring with the relevant case suffix. We may probably consider these sentences as containing an associate as a non-core argument. The following pairs of sentences exemplify the optionality of this non-core argument:

- (180a) *ey-ne layrik pay*
 I-Nom book read
 'I read a book'
- (180b) *ey-ne ma-ge layrik pay*
 I-Nom he-Conj book read
 'I read the book with him'
- (181a) *ey tombe-bu uy*
 I Tomba-Acc saw
 'I saw Tomba'
- (181b) *ey tombe-bu ma-ge uy*
 I Tomba-Acc he-Conj saw
 'I saw Tomba with him'
- (182a) *tombe-ne eygon-de sel pi*
 Tomba-Nom I-Loc money gave
 'Tomba gave me some money'

- (182^a) tombe-ne aynn-de ma-go loynone cel pi
 Tomba-Nom I-Loc he-Conj together money gave
 'Tomba gave some money to me together with him'

In the case of some of the reciprocal sentences also, one of the reciprocating arguments can be denoted as an associate (see 10.5.1). Examples:

- (183) mehak ey-go cu-ne-y
 he I-Conj agreeable-Rec-NFu
 'He is agreeable with me'
- (184) av-ne ma-go cithi i-ne-y
 I Nom he-Conj letter write-Rec-NFu
 'I exchanged letters with him'
- (185) av-ne ma-go phu-ne-y
 I Nom he-Conj beat-Rec-NFu
 'I fought with him'
- (186) av-ne ma-go saw-ne-y
 I-Nom he-Conj angry-Rec-NFu
 'I and he are angry with one another'

6.8.3 Another interesting use of the conjunctive suffix concerns the representation of the medium (for cooking) and material (for preparing things). These may be related to the verb either with the nominative suffix (i.e. as the instrument) or with the conjunctive suffix (i.e. as the associate). Examples:

(i) medium

- (187a) av-ne na thaw-ne gowwi
 I-Nom fish oil-Nom fried
 'I fried fish by oil'
- (187b) ey-ne na thaw-ga gowwi
 I-Nom fish oil-Conj fried
 'I fried fish with oil'

(ii) material

- (188a) ey-ne can-ne kek say
 I-Nom sugar-Nom cake made
 'I made the cake by sugar'
- (188b) ey-ne can-go kek say
 I-Nom sugar-Conj cake made
 'I made the cake with sugar'
- (189a) av-ne leykhom-ne phoklag semmi
 I Nom mud-Nom wall repaired
 'I repaired the wall by mud'

- (189b) *ov-ne loykhom-go phoklan semmi*
 I-Nom mud-Conj wall repaired
 'I repaired the wall with mud'

6.8.4 The conjunctive suffix can be used after a nominalized clause in order to indicate that the event denoted by the main verb occurs immediately after the one denoted by the nominalized clause. Examples:

- (190) *mehak-ne ceŋ purek-pe-go ey-ne thoŋŋi*
 he-Nom rice bring-Inf-Conj I-Nom cooked
 'As soon as he brought rice, I cooked'
- (191) *mehak-ne lak-pe-go ey catli*
 he-Nom come-Inf-Conj I went
 'I went as soon as he came'

It is also possible to use the suffix *go* after the present perfect form of a verb in order to indicate that the event denoted by the main verb occurred after the event that the suffixed verb denotes. This use of *go* differs from the former use in that the two events may not occur immediately one after the other in this case. Examples:

- (190a) *mehak-ne ceŋ purek-e-go ey-ne thoŋŋi*
 he-Nom rice bring-Perf-Conj I-Nom cooked
 'After he brought rice, I cooked'
- (191a) *mehak-ne lak-e-go ey catli*
 he-Nom come-Perf-Conj I went
 'I went after he came'

Notice, further, that in this latter usage the suffix *go* does not function as a case marker, even though it does relate an entity (an event) with the main event.

6.9 Use of unmarked arguments

6.9.1 Use for denoting a theme

There are several types of contexts in which Manipuri allows an argument to be used in a sentence without attaching any case markers to it. The most prominent among them is the use of an argument as the theme of a sentence. These are always unmarked for case.

Themes occur primarily in the argument structure of state and process verbs. Examples.

- (192) *inkhol-de haway hawwi*
 garden-Loc beans grew
 'The beans grew in the garden'
- (193) *mephem esi nilli*
 place this noisy
 'This place is noisy'

Manipuri Grammar

maḥak nənṅi
he poor
'He is poor'

pū eṣi marak-ne cepṅi
cloth this breadth-Nom narrow
'This cloth is narrow in breadth'

məḥal əy-bu siṅṅi
he I-Acc grudge
'He grudges me'

of the state and process verbs obligatorily take a theme in this fashion; the theme may be accompanied by other arguments like location, patient, instrument and associate in some of these cases. There are a few verbs like *man* 'similar' which take two different themes. Example:

ma əy mālṅi
he I similar
'He resembles me'

can also occur in the argument structure of a few action verbs; for example, some of the actions which take an actor, patient and location allow the location (beneficiary or experiencer) to be viewed as a patient, in which case the original patient gets shifted to the position of a theme (see 9.4.4). Examples

moma-ne əṅaṅ-de cak illi
mother-Nom child-Loc food fed
'The mother fed food to the child'

moma-ne əṅaṅ-bu cak illi
mother-Nom child-Acc food fed
'The mother fed the child food'

viewed the argument *cak* 'food' as the patient in (198a), but as the theme in (198b).

can also occur in causative sentences in which the patient is inanimate; in such sentences, it is possible to view the causee as a patient and the original patient as a theme. Examples:

ma-ne əyṅon-de layrik pa-helli
he-Nom I-Loc book read-caused
'He made (to) me read a book'

moma əy-bu layrik pa-helli
he-Nom I-Acc book read-caused
'He made me read a book'

Noun-incorporation

will be describing in detail in the next chapter. Manipuri makes use of the process of 'noun incorporation' for disambiguating some of the homophonous verbs. The process, however, is only

syntactic and not morphological. It involves the obligatory use of certain classifier nouns, instruments or body parts for making the meaning of the verb more specific. The point to be noted here is that the nouns which occur incorporated with the verb in this fashion are unmarked for case. Examples:

- (200) pot esi mewon ummi
thing this shape conical
'This object is conical (in shape)
- (201) yensan esi thum yak-i
curry this salt salty-NFu
'This curry is salty (by salt)
- (202) layrik esi memel hoggi
book this price cheap
'This book is cheap (in price)'

6.9.3 Use in redundant contexts

Manipuri allows any of the case suffixes that denote core arguments to be left unspecified provided that the case relation that it indicates can be derived from the speech context or from the meaning of the argument (or of other accompanying arguments) or by the meaning of the verb itself. As we will be pointing out in the next section (see 6.10), the contrast between specification and non-specification of case suffixes in these contexts is made use of by Manipuri for denoting certain pragmatic meanings; these meanings, however, are not indicated in the glosses given below.

The most prominent among the case suffixes that remain unspecified in this fashion is the accusative *bu*; in the case of inanimate arguments it is generally left unspecified, except in contexts in which the argument is under emphasis (see 6.5.2). Examples:

- (203) ey-ne thon haggi
I-Nom door opened
'I opened the door'
- (204) ey-ne cig-de-gi nun laggi
I-Nom hill-Loc-Gen stone threw
'I threw a stone from the hill'
- (205) ey tebel theggi
I table touched
'I touched (unintentionally) the table'
- (206a) ey-ne magon-de layrik pi-geni
I-Nom he-Loc book give-Fu
'I will give a book to him'
- (206b) ey-ne magon-de layrik-tu-bu pi-geni
I-Nom he-Loc book-that-Acc give-Fu
'I will give that book to him'

As we have pointed out earlier (6.5.2), the reason for this general non-specification of the accusative suffix in the case of inanimate patients, is apparently that they can only be patients and not actors and hence their case role is predictable from the meaning of the verb in these sentences

The accusative suffix can also be left unspecified in the case of animate patients in contexts in which the speaker feels that the case role is predictable. Examples

(205) av-ne ma-bu phuy
I-Nom he-Acc beat
'I beat him'

(206) av-ne ma phuy
I-Nom he beat
'I beat him'

(207) av-ne ma-bu yay
I-Nom he-Acc agreed
'I agreed with him'

(208) av-ne ma yay
I-Nom he agreed
'I agreed with him'

It appears, however, that some verbs that take a nominalized complement like *həŋ* 'ask', *thiŋ* 'stop', *thəp* 'appoint' and *ram* 'report', and some which take a locative (experiencer) instead of a patient like *khot* 'scratch', *noy* 'press', *toy* 'smear' and *cik* 'bite' do not generally allow the accusative suffix to be left unspecified. Examples:

(209) av-ne ma-bu həŋgi
I-Nom he-Acc asked
'I asked him' (or 'I asked about him')

(210) av-ne ma-bu noy
I-Nom he-Acc pressed
'I pressed him (his body)'

The nominative suffix *na*, denoting the actor of action sentences, can also be left unspecified provided that this non-specification does not lead to ambiguity. For example, action sentences with a single argument can only have an actor as their core argument and hence this actor may or may not be specified by the nominative suffix. Examples:

(211) mahak-na celli
he-Nom ran
'He ran'

(212) mahak celli
he ran

In the case of action verbs which can ambiguously denote a process, however, specification of the nominative suffix for denoting the actor is obligatory. Examples:

- (212a) əy-nə ləymay-də olli
 I-Nom floor-Loc rolled
 'I rolled (intentionally) on the floor'
- (212b) əy ləymay-də olli
 I floor-Loc rolled
 'I rolled (unintentionally) on the floor'

In the case of sentences with two or more arguments also, nominative suffix can be left unspecified if the meaning of the actor is derivable from context. Examples:

- (213a) huy-nə ma-bu ciki
 dog-Nom he-Acc bit
 'The dog bit him'
- (213b) huy-du ma-bu ciki
 dog-that he-Acc bit
 'That dog bit him'

Locative suffix can also be left unspecified in this fashion in contexts in which the case relation that it denotes is derivable from other sources. Examples:

- (214a) əy-nə bəjar-də cətli
 I-Nom market-Loc went
 'I went to the market'
- (214b) əy-nə bəjar cətli
 I-Nom market went
 'I went (to) the market'
- (215a) məsi əyən-də say
 this I-Loc hot
 'This is hot for me'
- (215b) məsi əy say
 this I hot
 'This is hot (for) me'

6.10 Use of case suffixes for denoting pragmatic relations

Manipuri makes use of some of the redundant aspects of the use of case suffixes for denoting pragmatic relations. There are two main types of contexts in which the use of case suffixes is redundant as far as semantic relations are concerned:

- (i) Contexts in which semantic relations are predictable, and
- (ii) Contexts in which case suffixes are not used for denoting semantic relations.

Manipuri makes use of both these types of contexts for expressing pragmatic relations as shown below

9.4.1 Predictable contexts

As mentioned in the previous section (6.9), Manipuri allows any of its case suffixes that denote core arguments to be left unspecified in contexts in which the case relation that it denotes is predictable either from the meaning of the verb or of the arguments. In the case of such contexts, the contrast between the specification and non-specification of case suffixes is used by this language for denoting pragmatic meanings.

As we have seen in the previous section, the distinction between the actor and the theme is generally expressed in Manipuri by marking the former with the nominative suffix and by leaving the latter unmarked for case. This distinction is clearly visible in the case of verbs that can ambiguously denote either an action or a process (or a state). Examples (see 9.4.1):

(16a) *av-nə mañon-da thengi*
I-Nom he-Loc touched
'I touched him (intentionally)'

(16b) *av mañon-da thengi*
I-he-Loc touched
'I touched him (unintentionally)'

(17a) *av-nə coih*
I-Nom went
'I went (somewhere)'

(17b) *sen esj colli*
money this goes
'This money (coin) is in currency'

In the case of most of the single-argument verbs, however, the distinction between actor and theme is expressible from the sub-categorizational property of the verbs themselves and hence the use of the nominative suffix is redundant. Manipuri makes use of this redundancy for denoting the pragmatic meaning of contrastive reference. Examples:

(18a) *mehak koppi*
he wept
'He wept'

(18b) *mehak-ne koppi*
he-Nom wept
'He wept (but others did not)'

(19a) *av na cəy loñbo-da una kelli*
I Nom stick throw-Loc leaf fell
'When I threw the stick, leaves fell down'

(19b) *av-nə cəy loñbo-da una-ne kelli*
I Nom stick throw-Loc leaf-Nom fell
'When I threw the stick, leaves fell (but fruits didn't)'

In the case of sentences that contain two or more arguments, we can regard the case marking of one of the arguments to be predictable because the valency structure of the verb would indicate the exact set of case roles that need to be specified in such sentences. This predictability has the effect of making the case suffix of one of the arguments of such sentences to be redundant. Manipuri makes use of this redundancy for denoting contrastive reference as can be seen in the following pairs of sentences. Examples:

- (220a) *əy ma-bu yənŋi*
I he-Acc looked
'I looked at him'
- (220b) *əy-ne ma-bu yənŋi*
I-Nom he-Acc looked
'I looked at him (but others didn't)'
- (221a) *əy-ne ma layrik pu-helli*
I-Nom he book carry-caused
'I made him carry the book'
- (221b) *əy-ne ma-bu layrik pu-helli*
I-Nom he-Acc book carry-caused
'I made him (but not others) carry the book'
- (222a) *məma-ne məca cak pijəy*
mother-Nom child food fed
'The mother fed food to the child'
- (222b) *məma-ne məca-de cak pijəy*
mother-Nom child-Loc food fed
'The mother fed food to the child (but not to others)'

Notice that the predictability of nominative, accusative and locative suffixes has made it possible to have these suffixes unspecified in (220a), (221a), and (222a) respectively, whereas their specification in the corresponding (b) sentences has made it possible to convey the pragmatic meaning of contrastive reference.

We had mentioned earlier (6.6.2 iii) that the use of genitive suffix after the locative for denoting the source (as against the goal) of motion or orientation verbs is non-obligatory in some cases; when the meaning is derivable from context, it can be left unspecified. This redundancy of the genitive suffix is also used by Manipuri for denoting pragmatic connotations as can be seen in the following pairs of sentences.

- (223a) *əy-ne maŋon-de isəy təm̃mi*
I-Nom he-Loc song learn
'I learn songs from him'
- (223b) *əy-ne maŋon-de-ŋi isəy təm̃mi*
I-Nom he-Loc-Gen song learn
'I learnt a song from him'
- (224a) *məhak-ne pūna-de risorc təw̃wi*
he-Nom Pune-Loc research does
'He does research in Pune'

- (224a) mahak-ne puna-de-gi risarc tawwi
 he-Nom Pune-Loc-Gen research does
 'He did research in Pune'

The use of the locative suffix alone indicates the location for an on-going activity, whereas that of the locative suffix along with the genitive one denotes the location of a completed action

6.10.2 Generic and habitual meanings

The distinction between specification and non-specification of case suffixes in the case of predictable contexts is also used in Manipuri for denoting the distinction between specific and generic (or habitual) meanings. Consider, for example, the following pairs of sentences:

- (225a) ma-ne huy-bu kawwi
 he-Nom dog-Acc kicked
 'He kicked the dog'
- (225b) ma-ne huy kawwi
 he-Nom dog kicked
 'He kicks dogs'
- (226a) ma-ne ciq-de kay
 he-Nom hill-Loc climbed
 'He climbed the hill'
- (226b) ma-ne ciq kay
 he-Nom hill climbed
 'He climbs hills'
- (227a) ma-ne nungda-de layrik pay
 he-Nom night-Loc book read
 'He read the book on a particular night'
- (227b) ma-ne nungda layrik pay
 he-Nom night book read
 'He reads the book at night'

Notice that the non-specification of the accusative (225b, 226b) and locative (227b) suffixes has made it possible to regard the (b) sentences given above as habitual sentences. We may regard the specific meaning (of (a) sentences) as relatable to the meaning 'contrastive reference' mentioned earlier and the habitual or generic meaning as relatable to the 'non-contrastive reference'.

6.10.3 Unused contexts

An argument occurring in a sentence is generally related to the verb through one particular case role (semantic relation); this case role would be specified by the case suffix that gets attached to the argument. There is therefore a need to attach only a single case suffix to an argument for denoting case roles.

Manipuri allows its case suffixes to *follow* other case suffixes, but since these are not needed for denoting semantic relations, the language is able to make use of them for denoting certain pragmatic connotations.

(i) Pragmatic use of the nominative

Nominative suffix can occur in this fashion after the accusative, locative and also the genitive and conjunctive suffixes for denoting contrastive reference.

Examples:

- (228a) *cawbɛ-bu khway-nɛ pammi*
 Chaoba-Acc all-Nom like
 'Everyone likes Chaoba'
- (228b) *cawbɛ-bu-nɛ khway-nɛ pammi*
 Chaoba-Acc-Nom all-Nom like
 'Everyone likes only Chaoba'
- (229a) *ma-nɛ tombɛ-dɛ sɛl pi*
 he-Nom Tomba-Loc money gave
 'He gave money to Tomba'
- (229b) *ma-nɛ tombɛ-dɛ-nɛ sɛl pi*
 he-Nom Tomba-Loc-Nom money gave
 'He gave money to Tomba only'
- (230a) *ma-gi lupa mɛɽa lem̐mi*
 he-Gen rupee five saved
 'His five rupees were saved'
- (230b) *ma-gi-nɛ lupa mɛɽa lem̐mi*
 he-Gen-Nom rupee five saved
 'Only his five rupees (but not of others) were saved'

In the case of the locative argument, the suffix *nɛ* can occur in this contrastive sense even when the former is followed by the genitive *gɔ* in the meaning 'from'

Examples:

- (231a) *ɛy-nɛ layrik-tu tombɛ-dɛ-gi lɔw-gɛni*
 I-Nom book-that Tomba-Loc-Gen take-Fu
 'I will take that book from Tomba'
- (231b) *ɛy-nɛ layrik-tu tombɛ-dɛ-gi-nɛ lɔw-gɛni*
 I-Nom book-that Tomba-Loc-Gen-Nom take-Fu
 'I will take that book only from Tomba'
- (232a) *ɛy ma-gɔ ya-re*
 I he-Conj agree-Perf
 'I agree with him'

222b)

oy-ma-go-no-va-re
1he-Conj-Nom agree-Perf
'I agree with him only'

As we had mentioned earlier, the use of case suffixes is not obligatory in all contexts in Manipuri; one can leave unspecified any of the case suffixes provided that the semantic relation that it has to denote is deducible from the context itself.

This non-obligatoriness of case marking combined with the above-mentioned use of a case suffix *after* another case suffix for denoting pragmatic connotations like contrastive reference leads to an interesting ambiguity in some contexts. Consider, for example, the following sentence:

- (233) huranthu-no phare, mihatpo-no pha-d-re
thief-Nom catch-Perf killer-Nom catch-Neg-Perf
(i) 'The thief has caught (something), but the killer hasn't'
(ii) '(They) have caught the thief, but not the killer'

Notice that the sentence (233) is ambiguous between (i) an interpretation in which the nominative suffix is taken as occurring directly after the two arguments (*thief* and *killer*) and therefore denoting the actor, and (ii) an interpretation in which it is taken as occurring after an unspecified accusative and therefore denoting contrastive reference: the latter is the more acceptable interpretation of (233) in view of the fact that the continuing of two clauses has made this contrastive meaning more salient.

Notice further that this ambiguity results from the fact that Manipuri allows any of the arguments of a sentence to be left unspecified.

As we have seen earlier, the nominative suffix does not occur with the single argument of state verbs. We have regarded these arguments as themes. These arguments are always unmarked for case. However, it is possible to use the nominative suffix after these themes in order to denote the meaning of comparison. We can regard this use of the nominative suffix for denoting a pragmatic meaning as involving another context. Examples:

- (24a) mehak sawwi
he angry
'He is angry'
(24b) mehak-no sawwi
he-Nom angry
'He is angrier (than others)'

ii) Pragmatic use of the accusative

The accusative suffix can occur after the nominative or the locative in order to indicate the speaker's doubt about the involvement of the concerned referent in the action or process under consideration. That is, it conveys a meaning which appears to be opposite to that of the nominative mentioned earlier. Examples:

- (25a) anan-ne kon khen-goni?
child-Nom what know-Fu
'What will the child know?'

- (235b) enaŋ-ne-bu keri khon-geŋi?
child-Nom-Acc what know-Fu
'What will the child know?' (implies that it will know nothing)
- (236a) maŋon-de kena-ne meɗu hay-geŋi?
he-Loc who-Nom that say-Fu
'Who will say that to him?'
- (236b) maŋon-de-bu kena-ne meɗu hay-geŋi?
he-Loc-Acc who-Nom that say-Fu
'Who will say that to him?' (implies that no one will say that to him)
- (237a) mehak-ne layrik pirahe-di ey lew-ge
he-Nom book give-Cond I take-wish
'If he gives the book, I wish to take it'
- (237b) mehak-ne-bu layrik pirahe-di ey lew-ge
he-Nom-Acc book gives-Cond I take-wish
'If he gives the book (which is doubtful) I wish to take it'

When used with the first person pronoun, the accusative suffix denotes a denial. Examples:

- (238a) eygon-de mehak-ne meɗu hayb-re?
I-Loc he-Nom that say-Q
'Did he tell me that?'
- (238b) eygon-de-bu mehak-ne meɗu hayb-re?
I-Loc-Acc he-Nom that say-Q
'Did he tell me that?' (implies denial)

It may also be used to indicate one's opinion, implying that this opinion may or may not be true; it may also denote the futility of an action. Examples.

- (239a) ma-gi-ne phey
he-Gen-Nom good
'His is better'
- (239b) ma-gi-ne-bu phey
he-Gen-Nom-Acc good
'His is better in my opinion' (but it may not actually be so)
- (240a) tombe-de keri hay-ri-b-re
Tomba-Loc what tell-Dur-Inf-Q
'What are you telling Tomba?'
- (240b) tombe-de-bu keri hay-ri-b-re
Tomba-Loc what tell-Dur-Inf-Q
'What are you telling Tomba?' (no use telling him anything)

The accusative suffix denotes doubt or negation (denial) when directly attached to nominalized clauses containing an infinitive. We may perhaps view these as involving the use of the accusative after an *accusative*. Examples:

221a) mahak sawwi haybe ɔwoy h-ra?
he angry that true-Q
'Is it true that he is angry?'

221b) mahak sawwi haybe-bu ɔwoybe?
he angry that-Acc true-Q
'Is it true that he is angry? (implies doubt)'

242a) mahak-ne cɛpɛ kona-na thin-geni?
he-Nom going who-Nom object-Fu
'Who will object to his going?'

242b) mahak-ne cɛpɛ-bu kona-na thin-geni?
he-Nom going-Acc who-Nom object-Fu
'Who will object to his going?' (implies that no one will object to it)

243 We have recorded the occurrence of the accusative suffix after the adverbial wh-word *kəramno* in this usage, the suffix indicates the speaker's unwillingness to perform an activity; that is, even though the sentence is a question, it functions as a statement. Example:

243a) ɔv kəramno hay-geni
I how speak-Fu
'How shall I speak?' (simple question)'

243b) ɔv kəramno-bu hay-geni
I how-Acc speak-Fu
'How shall I speak?' (indicates speaker's unwillingness to speak)

Another interesting use of the accusative suffix is next to the nominative, with the latter occurring in its contrastive sense; in this usage, the accusative fails to provide the sense of doubt; instead, it provides emphasis. Examples:

244a) ma-ga-ne pho-re
he-Conj-Nom good-Perf
'It is better to be with him'

244b) ma-ga-ne-bu pho-re
he-Conj-Nom-Acc good-Perf
'It is much better to be with him'

245a) edu-da-gi-ne nek-e
that-Loc-Gen-Nom near-Perf
'It is nearer from there'

- (245h) odu-de-gi-ne-bu nek-e
 that-Loc-Gen-Nom-Acc near-Perf
 'It is much nearer from there'

6.10.5 Pragmatic use of the conjunctive suffix

The conjunctive suffix can occur after other case suffixes in its conjunctive meaning as can be seen from the following pairs of sentences.

- (246a) tombe-gi yum-de cat-lu
 Tomba-Gen house-Loc go-imp
 'Go to Tomba's house'
- (246b) tombe-gi yum-de-gə cat-lu
 Tomba-Gen house-Loc-Conj go-imp
 'Go to Tomba's house also'
- (247a) ma-bu takpi-yu
 he-Acc inform-imp
 'Inform him'
- (247b) ma-bu-gə takpi-yu
 he-Acc-Conj inform-imp
 'Inform him also'

6.10.6 It is possible, perhaps, to regard some of the pragmatic uses of case suffixes mentioned above as representing distinct homophonous suffixes which contrast with the corresponding case suffixes proper, but such an analysis would fail to bring out the more important aspect of Manipuri case system, namely that the language uses the device for encoding both semantic as well as pragmatic relations, and further, that in the latter case, it makes use of some of the redundant or predictable aspects of the former use.

Chapter 7

VERBAL CATEGORY

7.1 Subgrouping of verbs

Verbal bases of Manipuri can be grouped primarily into three distinct classes depending upon whether they denote states, processes or actions. All the three can be transitive or intransitive, but this latter distinction does not appear to play any prominent role in this language (see 4.4). State verbs can be sub-divided into controllable and non-controllable states, with the former going with action verbs and the latter with process verbs: this controllable/non-controllable distinction has some relevance in the functioning of this language. Further, action verbs combine with process verbs to form a larger class of dynamic verbs which contrasts with state verbs (which are non-dynamic). This dynamic/non-dynamic distinction also has some relevance in the functioning of this language.

7.2 State verbs

The class of state verbs includes (i) a large number of monosyllabic roots (about 200 in our data) which translate as adjectives in familiar languages like English, and also (ii) roots which indicate states of affairs like 'know', (iii) roots which denote spatial and temporal locations, and (iv) roots which denote adverbial

Following Dixon (1982), we may subgroup the 'adjectival' state verbs of this language into seven different semantic groups as shown below:

Group I : Dimension verbs

There are twenty-seven verbal roots in our data that can be included in this group. These can be arranged into twelve different antonymous pairs (with three verbs having to share their antonyms with other verbs); one each of these antonymous pairs functions as the unmarked member in contrast to the other one which functions as the marked member.

The pairs can be further subdivided into measurable and non-measurable verbs depending upon the possibility of using a measurement phrase with them

Unmarked	Marked
<i>Measurable verbs</i>	
sap 'long'	sem 'brief'
...	ten 'short'
law 'wide (hole)'	kluu 'narrow'
pak 'wide'	-----
'ha 'thick (paper)'	pa 'thin (paper)'

con	'long (shirt)'	kow	'short (shirt)'
waj	'tall'	nem	'low'
lu	'deep'	then	'shallow'
toŋ	'raised'	kut	'low'

(ii) *Non-measurable verbs*

caw	'big'	pik	'small'
-----		ceŋ	'thin (in waist)'
noy	'fat'	keŋ	'thin'
kuŋ	'thick (cloth)'	len	'thin (cloth)'
neŋ	'thick (liquid)'	laŋ	'thin (liquid)'
pew	'big (grain)'	kup	'small (grain)'

In the case of measurable verbs, the unmarked ones can be used with a measurement phrase in order to indicate the measurement of an object; one can use such phrases with marked verbs as well, but in such a use, the phrase indicates the amount by which the object concerned is deficient. Examples:

- (1a) məsɪ phut məŋa saŋŋi
this foot five long
'This is five feet long'

- (1b) məsɪ phut məŋa tellɪ
this foot five short
'This is short by five feet'

In order to indicate the latter meaning in the case of unmarked verbs, one may use the nominative suffix *nə* (in its pragmatic function of denoting 'contrast') as in the following sentence:

- (1c) məsɪ phut məŋa-nə saŋŋi
this food five-Nom long
'This one longer (than necessary) by five feet'

In both these types of verbs, the unmarked member is used for denoting the relevant dimension in general. Example.

- (2) teɦel esi-gi esəŋ-bə phut məŋa ni
table this-Gen long-Inf food five Cop
'The length of this table is five feet'

Group II : Physical property verbs

There are more than one hundred verbal bases in the data which belong to this group. We may divide them into small subgroups such as taste, hearing, touch, outward shape and internal property. The following is a sample list of verbs which fall into these subgroups

(i) *Taste verbs*

kha	'bitter'	thum	'sweet'
sa	'hot'	sɪn	'sour'
keŋ	'gritty'	yak	'salty'
com	'insipid'	haw	'tasty'

Group VIII adds three more groups to this semantic grouping of adjectives, namely (viii) difficulty, (ix) qualification and (x) similarity. Manipuri has a few state verbs that can be grouped under these semantic types as well, as shown below:

Group VIII : Difficulty verbs

lu	'easy'	lu	'difficult'
----	--------	----	-------------

Group IX : Qualification verbs

cu	'correct'	lan	'incorrect'
pa	'suitable (dress)'	cu	'agreeable'
pa	'acceptable'	ca	'fit'

Group X : Similarity verbs

man	'similar'	ya	'matching'
man	'similar'		

In addition to these, there are several other state verbs that cannot be regarded as 'adjectival' in their application. We have recorded the following additional semantic types among them:

Group XI : Locational verbs

nek	'near'	lap	'far'
thap	'far (location)'	san	'far (throwing)'
thep	'located'	may	'lost'
pun	'together'	khon	'between'
lav	'stay, have'	thak	'available'
vetna	'entangled'	lonno	'one after the other'
nan	'resting on'	hup	'together (by accident)'

Group XII : Temporal verbs

nan	'early'	thep	'late'
nog	'in time'	thin	'delayed'
hin	'first'	kön	'last'
now	'recent'	kuy	'a long time later'
nay	'just (now)'	haw	'elapsed (time)'
han	'again'	sem	'brief (story)'
toy	'frequent'	lat	'infrequent'
van	'fast'	top	'slow'
thu	'quick'	mön	'unusually slow'
thek	'occur'	cup	'complete (time)'

Group XIII : Quantifying verbs

vam	'many'	wat	'less, deficient'
com	'full'	han	'vacant (post)'
ben	'excess'	can	'need'

lem	'left over'	su	'number'
ham	'hollow'	ɲay	'only'
ok	'sufficient'	nem	'proportional (salt)'

Group XIV : Modal and epistemic verbs

ya	'may'	man	'appear'
ta	'ought to'	da	'appear'
oy	'possible'	həy	'can (know how to)'
cɪŋnə	'doubtful'	kheŋ	'know'
ŋem	'possible'	thajə	'believe'

Several of the verbs given under these semantic types fall into antonymous pairs. We have tried to indicate these by placing them, wherever possible, in opposite columns (facing one another). One interesting aspect of this antonymy is that it conditions the use of directionality suffixes *khəw* 'up', *thə* 'down', *sin* 'in' and *thok* 'out' with these verbs. As we will be describing in detail later in the next chapter, several of these pairs of verbs are opposed by the occurrence of 'up' and 'out' suffixes versus 'down' and 'in' suffixes.

For example, the verb *caw* 'big' can occur only with the suffix *khəw* 'up' or *thok* 'out', whereas the antonymous verb *pik* 'small' can occur only with the suffix *thə* 'down' or *sin* 'in'. These directional suffixes generally have the inchoative function of changing state verbs into process verbs.

Examples

- (3a) məhək-kɪ mɔvə caw-wɪ
he-Gen body big-NFu
'His body is big'
- (3b) məhək-kɪ mɔvə caw-thok-ɪ
he-Gen body big-out-NFu
'His body has become big'
- (4a) ləmbɪ əsɪ pik-ɪ
road this small-NFu
'This road is small'
- (4b) ləmbɪ əsɪ pik-sɪ-lɪ
road this small-in-NFu
'This road has become small'

7.2.2 Division into controllable and non-controllable verbs

It is possible to classify state verbs into two major groups on the basis of the controllability of the events that give rise to the states concerned. There are certain morphosyntactic processes whose occurrence is conditioned by this controllable-non-controllable distinction. The distinction cuts across the dynamic/non-dynamic distinction in that action verbs are all controllable whereas process verbs are all non-controllable.

That is, the extension of the basic criteria which underlies the action-process distinction to state verbs has the effect of dividing them into these two major subgroups. The following is a sample list of state verbs which belong to these two contrasting groups:

Controllable state verbs

sin	'noisy'	lik	'stingy'
sin	'clever'	sej	'clean'
ki	'afraid'	na	'ill'
pen	'satisfied'	wa	'worry'
pha	'good'	pon	'stupid'
in	'slow'	yaj	'fast'

Non-controllable state verbs

pik	'small'	lu	'deep'
haw	'tasty'	sa	'hot'
man	'similar'	pak	'wide'
nov	'fat'	ten	'short'

The following are some of the characteristics which help us to differentiate between these two types of state verbs

(i) The concessive suffix *si* 'let us' and its negative form *kum-si* 'let us not' can occur only with controllable state verbs and not with non-controllable ones. Examples.

- (a) ey-khoy thebək esi khəə thu-si
I-PI work this little fast-Con
'Let us do this work a bit fast'
- (b) ey-khoy thebək esi təw-bə-də phing-gum-si
I-PI work this do-Inf-Loc rash-Neg-Con
'Let us not be rash in doing this work'

(ii) The desiderative suffix *ge* 'wish to' can also occur only with controllable state verbs and not with non-controllable ones. In the former case, it gives the meaning 'pretend to' when used with *sin-na* 'in Rec'. The meaning 'wish to (start)' can be obtained in the case of controllable state verbs by using this suffix along with the perfect suffix *le* which makes the underlying process more evident. Examples:

- (a) ma-ge unə-bə kəndə ey pəŋ-sin-nə
he-Gen meet-Inf time-Loc I foolish-in-Rec-Perf
'I will pretend to be foolish at the time of meeting him'
- (b) əv hoyeŋ-də-gi nəl-lo-ge
I tomorrow-Loc-Gen early-Perf-Des
'I wish to be early from tomorrow'

(iii) The meaning 'deliberately' is obtained in Manipuri by reduplicating a given verb and by attaching the desiderative suffix *ge* followed by *həna* 'that' to the first member of this reduplicated form; only controllable state verbs occur in this construction and not the non-controllable ones. Examples

- (7a) *məhək səw-ge həy-no səw-wi*
 he angry-Des say-Adv angry-NFu
 'He is being angry deliberately'
- (7b) *məhək laŋ-ge həy-no laŋ-ŋi*
 he noisy-Des say-Adv noisy-NFu
 'He is being noisy deliberately'

(iv) Controllable state verbs can take an optional beneficiary argument (with *də-mək* 'for the sake of' being attached to the genitive form of the noun) whereas the non-controllable ones cannot. Examples:

- (8a) *əy mɑ-ŋi-də-mək nə-y*
 I he-Gen-Loc-Emph ill-NFu
 I am (being) ill for his sake
- (8b) *məhək əy-ŋi-dəmək cilli*
 he I-Gen-Loc-only busy
 'He is being busy for my sake'

(v) When the benefactive suffix *bi* is attached to controllable state verbs, the meaning conveyed is that the relevant (underlying) action was performed for someone else's benefit; whereas, when it is attached to non-controllable state verbs, the meaning conveyed is that the underlying event occurred unexpectedly; in the case of a negative verb, the latter may also imply that the event 'luckily' did not take place. Examples:

- (9a) *məhək ɲən-bi*
 he early-Ben
 'He was early for someone else's sake'
- (9b) *yensaŋ əsi θum yak-pi-de*
 curry this salt salty-Ben-Neg
 'Luckily this curry is not salty'

(vi) There are two adverbials, namely *dum* 'without worry' and *di* 'without fail' which are added to the first member of a reduplicated verb, with the second member being used with the imperative suffix. Among state verbs, only the controllable ones can be used in this construction. Examples:

- (10a) *θu-dum θu-ro*
 fast-suffix fast-Pers
 'Be quick (without worry)!'
- (10b) *noŋ pʰə-di pʰə-w*
 you good-suffix good-Imp
 'Be good without fail!'

(vii) State verbs generally do not occur with arguments in the accusative (i.e. with patients) because the use of the accusative implies an underlying action or process; however, some of the controllable state verbs are allowed to occur with such an argument, with the verb implying a process. Examples:

(11) mehak av-hu saw-wi
he I-Acc angry-NFu
'He is angry with me' (shows anger)

(12) mehak av-hu pel-li
he I-Acc satisfied-NFu
'He is satisfied with me' (with what I have done)

2.2 Differentiating from dynamic verbs

The grouping of the above-mentioned verbs, which belong to several different semantic types, into a single class called 'state verbs' is supported not only by the fact that they denote a non-dynamic state of affairs, but also by the fact that they share several morphosyntactic characteristics which differentiate them from dynamic verbs (actions and processes) as shown below

(i) Use of tense suffixes

State verbs are similar to action and process verbs in taking tense suffixes but the non-future suffix generally has the present tense meaning when occurring after state verbs (see 11.2.2). Examples

(12a) mehak ne cel-li
he-Nom run-NFu
'He ran'

(12b) mehak saw-wi
he angry-NFu
'He is angry'

When used with adverbials which provide past tense connotation, however, the suffix can denote past meaning after state verbs as well. Example:

(12c) mehak neran saw-wi
he yesterday angry-NFu
'He was angry yesterday'

(ii) Use of aspect suffixes

Aspect suffixes generally have the effect of adding the inchoative meaning to state verbs. That is, the meanings of completion, progression, iteration, etc. that they provide are related to the *event* which leads to the relevant state in the case of these verbs. In the case of action and process verbs, on the other hand, the suffixes indicate the completion, continuation etc. of the events that the verbs themselves denote.

For example, the perfect suffix *le*, when used with state verbs, indicates that an unspecified event has taken place, and as a result, the relevant state is in existence. Example:

(13) ce est tha-re
paper this thick-Perf
'This paper has become thick (and is thick now)'

This is also true of the completive suffix *lan* as can be seen in the following sentences:

- (14) hey esi ~~thu-mem-mi~~
 fruit this sweet-Compl-NFu
 'This fruit had become sweet (when I tasted it)'
- (15) hey esi thum-mem-goni
 fruit this sweet-Compl-Fu
 'This fruit would have become sweet (if you had covered it)'

Aspectual verbs like *thu* 'quick', which can occur either as main verbs or as adverbials, also have a similar inchoative effect on state verbs, as can be seen from the following examples

- (16a) mehak-ne caw-be thu-y
 he-Nom big-Inf quick
 'He was quick in becoming big'
- (16b) mehak-ne thu-ne caw-wi
 he-Nom quick-Adv big-NFu
 'He became big quickly'
- (16c) mehak caw-wi
 he big-NFu
 'He is big'

A few aspect markers like the suffix *mem* 'excess' and the prefix *i* provide degree connotation in the case of state verbs, whereas in that of dynamic verbs they have the relevant aspectual (quantity) connotation. This also differentiates state verbs from dynamic verbs. Examples.

- (17a) enan-ne hey ca-mel-li
 boy-Nom fruit eat-excess-NFu
 'The boy ate a lot of fruits'
- (17b) imphal-de neran in-mel-li
 Imphal-Loc yesterday cold-excess-NFu
 'It was very cold in Imphal yesterday'

There are also several aspect markers which indicate a greater degree of occurrence, such as the suffix *thrik* (see 11.3.6), which are restricted in their use to state verbs. They do not generally occur with dynamic verbs.

This is also true of the various aspectual verbs which can be used as main verbs (with the relevant main verbs occurring in their infinitive form) or as adverbials with the suffix *ne* being attached to them. In both these usages, these verbs have the effect of changing state verbs into process verbs. Examples:

- (18a) mehak-ne caw-be thu-y
 he-Nom big-Inf quick-NFu
 'He was quick in becoming big'
- (18b) mehak-ne thu-ne caw-wi
 he-Nom quick-Adv big-NFu
 'He became big quickly'

mahak caw-wi
he big-NFu
'He is big'

Use of valency changing suffixes

Among the valency changing suffixes described in the tenth chapter, causative has the effect of adding the inchoative meaning to state verbs. That is, their causative forms indicate that an actor has carried out an action which resulted in the object attaining the relevant state. Examples:

mahak uy
he drowsy
'He is drowsy'

av-na mahak-pu uy-helli
1-Nom he-Acc drowsy-caused
'I made him (become) drowsy' (through some action)

The reflexive suffix *ja*, on the other hand, has the connotation, in the case of state verbs, that the state or characteristic occurs 'by nature' in the individual or object concerned, or that the individual is self-causing (i.e. without there being any external cause). Examples.

hav esi kol-li
fruit this hard-NFu
'This fruit is hard'

hav esi ken-je-y
fruit this hard-Ref-NFu
'This fruit is hard by nature'

enm esi laq-ni
child this noisy-NFu
'This child is noisy'

enm esi laq-je-y
child this noisy-Ref-NFu
'This child is being noisy by himself'

Use of spatial suffixes

Some of some of the spatial suffixes also provides a basis for regarding state verbs as forming a distinct class. Three of the directional suffixes, namely *sin* 'in', *thok* 'out' and *khat* 'up', when used with state verbs, provide inchoative meaning, whereas when used with dynamic verbs, they provide the relevant locational meaning. Examples:

mahak cin-do cat-khot-li
he hill-Loc go-up-NFu
'He went up the hill'

- (22b) mehak-kɪ mɛsə caw-khot-li
 he-Gen body big-up-NFu
 'His body became big'

In the case of deictic suffixes also, the suffix *ɹək* has the sense of 'doing something and coming' in the case of dynamic verbs, but in that of state verbs, it provides the sense of becoming something gradually. Examples

- (23a) mehak ləphɔy ca-rək-i
 He banana eat-Dei3-NFu
 'He ate the banana and came'
- (23b) isɪŋ-du sa-rək-i
 water-that hot-Dei3-NFu
 'The water became hot gradually'

(v) Use of the adverbial suffix *nə*

The adverbial suffix *nə* can be attached directly to a verbal base to form an adverb in the case of state verbs, but in that of dynamic verbs, such a construction is possible only in the reduplicated form (see 12.4.1) Examples:

- (24a) mehak-nə saw-nə cɛlli
 he-Nom angry-Adv went
 'He went angrily'
- (24b) mehak-nə layrik-tu pa-nə pa-nə cɛlli
 he-Nom book-this read-Adv read-Adv went
 'He went while reading the book'

(vi) Use of 'destructive' suffixes

There are three verbal suffixes denoting the general sense of destruction whose occurrence is restricted to dynamic verbs; they are *khay*, *thə* and *thek*; state verbs do not occur with any of these suffixes (see 7.6).

7.3 Process verbs

Process verbs are fewer in number as compared to state and action verbs. There are only about one hundred process verbs (monosyllabic roots) in our data, as compared to about three hundred action verbs and roughly the same number of state verbs.

7.3.1 Several of these process verbs show an alternation in their usage in that they can denote either a process or an action. We may subclassify these process verbs into different groups as shown below:

(i) Verbs occurring with a theme or an action

Verbal bases	Used as a process	Used as an action
lem	'be left over'	'leave over'
thin	'be pierced'	'pierce'
ləv	'turn'	'turn (tr)'

22
 23
 24
 25
 26
 27
 28
 29
 30
 31
 32
 33
 34
 35
 36
 37
 38
 39
 40
 41
 42
 43
 44
 45
 46
 47
 48
 49
 50
 51
 52
 53
 54
 55
 56
 57
 58
 59
 60
 61
 62
 63
 64
 65
 66
 67
 68
 69
 70
 71
 72
 73
 74
 75
 76
 77
 78
 79
 80
 81
 82
 83
 84
 85
 86
 87
 88
 89
 90
 91
 92
 93
 94
 95
 96
 97
 98
 99
 100
 101
 102
 103
 104
 105
 106
 107
 108
 109
 110
 111
 112
 113
 114
 115
 116
 117
 118
 119
 120
 121
 122
 123
 124
 125
 126
 127
 128
 129
 130
 131
 132
 133
 134
 135
 136
 137
 138
 139
 140
 141
 142
 143
 144
 145
 146
 147
 148
 149
 150
 151
 152
 153
 154
 155
 156
 157
 158
 159
 160
 161
 162
 163
 164
 165
 166
 167
 168
 169
 170
 171
 172
 173
 174
 175
 176
 177
 178
 179
 180
 181
 182
 183
 184
 185
 186
 187
 188
 189
 190
 191
 192
 193
 194
 195
 196
 197
 198
 199
 200
 201
 202
 203
 204
 205
 206
 207
 208
 209
 210
 211
 212
 213
 214
 215
 216
 217
 218
 219
 220
 221
 222
 223
 224
 225
 226
 227
 228
 229
 230
 231
 232
 233
 234
 235
 236
 237
 238
 239
 240
 241
 242
 243
 244
 245
 246
 247
 248
 249
 250
 251
 252
 253
 254
 255
 256
 257
 258
 259
 260
 261
 262
 263
 264
 265
 266
 267
 268
 269
 270
 271
 272
 273
 274
 275
 276
 277
 278
 279
 280
 281
 282
 283
 284
 285
 286
 287
 288
 289
 290
 291
 292
 293
 294
 295
 296
 297
 298
 299
 300
 301
 302
 303
 304
 305
 306
 307
 308
 309
 310
 311
 312
 313
 314
 315
 316
 317
 318
 319
 320
 321
 322
 323
 324
 325
 326
 327
 328
 329
 330
 331
 332
 333
 334
 335
 336
 337
 338
 339
 340
 341
 342
 343
 344
 345
 346
 347
 348
 349
 350
 351
 352
 353
 354
 355
 356
 357
 358
 359
 360
 361
 362
 363
 364
 365
 366
 367
 368
 369
 370
 371
 372
 373
 374
 375
 376
 377
 378
 379
 380
 381
 382
 383
 384
 385
 386
 387
 388
 389
 390
 391
 392
 393
 394
 395
 396
 397
 398
 399
 400
 401
 402
 403
 404
 405
 406
 407
 408
 409
 410
 411
 412
 413
 414
 415
 416
 417
 418
 419
 420
 421
 422
 423
 424
 425
 426
 427
 428
 429
 430
 431
 432
 433
 434
 435
 436
 437
 438
 439
 440
 441
 442
 443
 444
 445
 446
 447
 448
 449
 450
 451
 452
 453
 454
 455
 456
 457
 458
 459
 460
 461
 462
 463
 464
 465
 466
 467
 468
 469
 470
 471
 472
 473
 474
 475
 476
 477
 478
 479
 480
 481
 482
 483
 484
 485
 486
 487
 488
 489
 490
 491
 492
 493
 494
 495
 496
 497
 498
 499
 500
 501
 502
 503
 504
 505
 506
 507
 508
 509
 510
 511
 512
 513
 514
 515
 516
 517
 518
 519
 520
 521
 522
 523
 524
 525
 526
 527
 528
 529
 530
 531
 532
 533
 534
 535
 536
 537
 538
 539
 540
 541
 542
 543
 544
 545
 546
 547
 548
 549
 550
 551
 552
 553
 554
 555
 556
 557
 558
 559
 560
 561
 562
 563
 564
 565
 566
 567
 568
 569
 570
 571
 572
 573
 574
 575
 576
 577
 578
 579
 580
 581
 582
 583
 584
 585
 586
 587
 588
 589
 590
 591
 592
 593
 594
 595
 596
 597
 598
 599
 600
 601
 602
 603
 604
 605
 606
 607
 608
 609
 610
 611
 612
 613
 614
 615
 616
 617
 618
 619
 620
 621
 622
 623
 624
 625
 626
 627
 628
 629
 630
 631
 632
 633
 634
 635
 636
 637
 638
 639
 640
 641
 642
 643
 644
 645
 646
 647
 648
 649
 650
 651
 652
 653
 654
 655
 656
 657
 658
 659
 660
 661
 662
 663
 664
 665
 666
 667
 668
 669
 670
 671
 672
 673
 674
 675
 676
 677
 678
 679
 680
 681
 682
 683
 684
 685
 686
 687
 688
 689
 690
 691
 692
 693
 694
 695
 696
 697
 698
 699
 700
 701
 702
 703
 704
 705
 706
 707
 708
 709
 710
 711
 712
 713
 714
 715
 716
 717
 718
 719
 720
 721
 722
 723
 724
 725
 726
 727
 728
 729
 730
 731
 732
 733
 734
 735
 736
 737
 738
 739
 740
 741
 742
 743
 744
 745
 746
 747
 748
 749
 750
 751
 752
 753
 754
 755
 756
 757
 758
 759
 760
 761
 762
 763
 764
 765
 766
 767
 768
 769
 770
 771
 772
 773
 774
 775
 776
 777
 778
 779
 780
 781
 782
 783
 784
 785
 786
 787
 788
 789
 790
 791
 792
 793
 794
 795
 796
 797
 798
 799
 800
 801
 802
 803
 804
 805
 806
 807
 808
 809
 810
 811
 812
 813
 814
 815
 816
 817
 818
 819
 820
 821
 822
 823
 824
 825
 826
 827
 828
 829
 830
 831
 832
 833
 834
 835
 836
 837
 838
 839
 840
 841
 842
 843
 844
 845
 846
 847
 848
 849
 850
 851
 852
 853
 854
 855
 856
 857
 858
 859
 860
 861
 862
 863
 864
 865
 866
 867
 868
 869
 870
 871
 872
 873
 874
 875
 876
 877
 878
 879
 880
 881
 882
 883
 884
 885
 886
 887
 888
 889
 890
 891
 892
 893
 894
 895
 896
 897
 898
 899
 900
 901
 902
 903
 904
 905
 906
 907
 908
 909
 910
 911
 912
 913
 914
 915
 916
 917
 918
 919
 920
 921
 922
 923
 924
 925
 926
 927
 928
 929
 930
 931
 932
 933
 934
 935
 936
 937
 938
 939
 940
 941
 942
 943
 944
 945
 946
 947
 948
 949
 950
 951
 952
 953
 954
 955
 956
 957
 958
 959
 960
 961
 962
 963
 964
 965
 966
 967
 968
 969
 970
 971
 972
 973
 974
 975
 976
 977
 978
 979
 980
 981
 982
 983
 984
 985
 986
 987
 988
 989
 990
 991
 992
 993
 994
 995
 996
 997
 998
 999
 1000
 1001
 1002
 1003
 1004
 1005
 1006
 1007
 1008
 1009
 1010
 1011
 1012
 1013
 1014
 1015
 1016
 1017
 1018
 1019
 1020
 1021
 1022
 1023
 1024
 1025
 1026
 1027
 1028
 1029
 1030
 1031
 1032
 1033
 1034
 1035
 1036
 1037
 1038
 1039
 1040
 1041
 1042
 1043
 1044
 1045
 1046
 1047
 1048
 1049
 1050
 1051
 1052
 1053
 1054
 1055
 1056
 1057
 1058
 1059
 1060
 1061
 1062
 1063
 1064
 1065
 1066
 1067
 1068
 1069
 1070
 1071
 1072
 1073
 1074
 1075
 1076
 1077
 1078
 1079
 1080
 1081
 1082
 1083
 1084
 1085
 1086
 1087
 1088
 1089
 1090
 1091
 1092
 1093
 1094
 1095
 1096
 1097
 1098
 1099
 1100
 1101
 1102
 1103
 1104
 1105
 1106
 1107
 1108
 1109
 1110
 1111
 1112
 1113
 1114
 1115
 1116
 1117
 1118
 1119
 1120
 1121
 1122
 1123
 1124
 1125
 1126
 1127
 1128
 1129
 1130
 1131
 1132
 1133
 1134
 1135
 1136
 1137
 1138
 1139
 1140
 1141
 1142
 1143
 1144
 1145
 1146
 1147
 1148
 1149
 1150
 1151
 1152
 1153
 1154
 1155
 1156
 1157
 1158
 1159
 1160
 1161
 1162
 1163
 1164
 1165
 1166
 1167
 1168
 1169
 1170
 1171
 1172
 1173
 1174
 1175
 1176
 1177
 1178
 1179
 1180
 1181
 1182
 1183
 1184
 1185
 1186
 1187
 1188
 1189
 1190
 1191
 1192
 1193
 1194
 1195
 1196
 1197
 1198
 1199
 1200
 1201
 1202
 1203
 1204
 1205
 1206
 1207
 1208
 1209
 1210
 1211
 1212
 1213
 1214
 1215
 1216
 1217
 1218
 1219
 1220
 1221
 1222
 1223
 1224
 1225
 1226
 1227
 1228
 1229
 1230
 1231
 1232
 1233
 1234
 1235
 1236
 1237
 1238
 1239
 1240
 1241
 1242
 1243
 1244
 1245
 1246
 1247
 1248
 1249
 1250
 1251
 1252
 1253
 1254
 1255
 1256
 1257
 1258
 1259
 1260
 1261
 1262
 1263
 1264
 1265
 1266
 1267
 1268
 1269
 1270
 1271
 1272
 1273
 1274
 1275
 1276
 1277
 1278
 1279
 1280
 1281
 1282
 1283
 1284
 1285
 1286
 1287
 1288
 1289
 1290
 1291
 1292
 1293
 1294
 1295
 1296
 1297
 1298
 1299
 1300
 1301
 1302
 1303
 1304
 1305
 1306
 1307
 1308
 1309
 1310
 1311
 1312
 1313
 1314
 1315
 1316
 1317
 1318
 1319
 1320
 1321
 1322
 1323
 1324
 1325
 1326
 1327
 1328
 1329
 1330
 1331
 1332
 1333
 1334
 1335
 1336
 1337
 1338
 1339
 1340
 1341
 1342
 1343
 1344
 1345
 1346
 1347
 1348
 1349
 1350
 1351
 1352
 1353
 1354
 1355
 1356
 1357
 1358
 1359
 1360
 1361
 1362
 1363
 1364
 1365
 1366
 1367
 1368
 1369
 1370
 1371
 1372
 1373
 1374
 1375
 1376
 1377
 1378
 1379
 1380
 1381
 1382
 1383
 1384
 1385
 1386
 1387
 1388
 1389
 1390
 1391
 1392
 1393
 1394
 1395
 1396
 1397
 1398
 1399
 1400
 1401
 1402
 1403
 1404
 1405
 1406
 1407
 1408
 1409
 1410
 1411
 1412
 1413
 1414
 1415
 1416
 1417
 1418
 1419
 1420
 1421
 1422
 1423
 1424
 1425
 1426
 1427
 1428
 1429
 1430
 1431
 1432
 1433
 1434
 1435
 1436
 1437
 1438
 1439
 1440
 1441
 1442
 1443
 1444
 1445
 1446
 1447
 1448
 1449
 1450
 1451
 1452
 1453
 1454
 1455
 1456
 1457
 1458
 1459
 1460
 1461
 1462
 1463
 1464
 1465
 1466
 1467
 1468
 1469
 1470
 1471
 1472
 1473
 1474
 1475
 1476
 1477
 1478
 1479
 1480
 1481
 1482
 1483
 1484
 1485
 1486
 1487
 1488
 1489
 1490
 1491
 1492
 1493
 1494
 1495
 1496
 1497
 1498
 1499
 1500
 1501
 1502
 1503
 1504
 1505
 1506
 15

- (27c) *ey khun-dow-ne uŋ-gi*
I top-do-A/iv spin-NFu
'I spun like a top'
- (28a) *thəbək loy-re*
work finish-Perf
'The work has been finished'
- (28b) *ey-ne thəbək loy-re*
I-Nom work finish-Perf
'I have finished the work'
- (29a) *u-si caw-bə lep-pe*
tree-this big-Inf stop-Perf
'This tree has stopped growing'
- (29b) *ey-ne cət-pe lep-pe*
I-Nom walk-Inf stop-Perf
'I have stopped walking'

7.3.2 Semantically, process verbs can be classified into (i) bases which involve a human (or animate) theme and (ii) bases which involve other types of themes; the two contrast in the case of some notions like 'turn' with the root *pek* used in the former case and *ək* used in the latter case; but in some other cases, the same verb can be used with both human as well as non-human themes. Examples:

(i) Process verbs that can occur with human as well as non-human themes

<i>tu</i>	'fall'	<i>thu</i>	'be trapped'
<i>təw</i>	'float'	<i>on</i>	'roll'
<i>uŋ</i>	'spin'	<i>leŋ</i>	'move'

The majority of process verbs, however, are restricted to non-human (inanimate) themes. The following is a sample list of verbs of this nature.

(ii) Process verbs that can occur with non-human themes only

(a) Motion verbs

<i>ken</i>	'fall (fruit)'	<i>səw</i>	'come up'
<i>sit</i>	'blow (wind)'	<i>ləy</i>	'turn'
<i>cən</i>	'be carried away'	<i>hay</i>	'swing'
<i>həŋ</i>	'open'	<i>phək</i>	'open'
<i>nom</i>	'shake'		

(b) Change of state verbs

<i>cək</i>	'burn'	<i>on</i>	'change'
<i>phəm</i>	'curdle'	<i>təm</i>	'melt'
<i>həw</i>	'grow'	<i>səw</i>	'boil'
<i>sət</i>	'blossom'	<i>pəm</i>	'bud'
<i>thim</i>	'be pierced'	<i>tek</i>	'break'

1c. Joining verbs

pok	'stick'	khaŋ	'be grounded (boat)'
law	'get ensnared'	pan	'get entangled (fence)'
ihu	'get trapped (net)'	phuŋ	'fill (hole)'
thon	'fill (pot)'		

1d. Aspectual verbs

lha:k	'stop (bleeding)'	lep	'stop'
haw	'clapse'	pha	'complete'
loy	'finish'	let	'almost stop'

Process verbs with human (or animate) themes can be exemplified with the help of the following sets of verbal roots

1e. Process verbs that occur with human themes

u	'see'	məŋ	'dream'
po	'lose'	soy	'fail, en'
pok	'beget'	si	'die'
loy	'stay'	pok	'burn'

*1.3 Differentiating characteristics

(i) We may differentiate between process verbs and action verbs by the fact that the former represent non-volitional events; they take themes and not actors. Even animate beings can only function as themes as they would have no control over the processes concerned. Manipuri represents this characteristic of process verbs by not using the nominative *ne* with their arguments except for denoting contrastive occurrence as in the following sentences:

- (1) a: moha:k-ne u-y naŋ-ne u-de
The-Nom see-NFut you-Nom see-Neg
'I saw him but not you'

- (2) a: isin-de ce tawwi
water-Loc paper floated
'Paper floated on water'

- (2b) isin-de ce-ne tawwi
water-Loc paper-Nom floated
'The paper floated on water (but the pen did not)'

(iii) When the causative suffix *hən* is added to process verbs they change ambiguously to actions or causations; on the other hand, change only into causations. This is another interesting difference between process and action verbs in this language (see 10.2). Examples:

- (3a) av-ne isin sew-həlli
I Nom water boil-caused
'I boiled the water'

- (32b) *ey-ne tomha-bu isig saw-helli*
 I-Nom Tomha-Acc water boil-caused
 'I made Tomha boil the water'
- (33a) *ey-ne mahak-pu uy-helli*
 I-Nom he-Acc drowsy-caused
 'I made him drowsy'
- (33b) *ey-ne tombe-de mahak-pu uy-helli*
 I-Nom Tomba-Loc he-Acc drowsy-caused
 'I caused him to be drowsy through Tomba' — ?

(iii) We have described several other types of constructions in which only controllable verbs (actions and controllable states) can be used (see 7.2.2). Process verbs either cannot be used in these constructions, or have alternative connotations attached to them. They are similar to non-controllable state verbs on these points.

For example, suffixes like desiderative *ge* and concessive *si* do not occur with process verbs as they require the verbs to be controllable. This is also true of adverbials like *dum* 'without worry' and *de* 'without fail' and beneficiary marker *de-mak* 'for the sake of'; these also do not occur with process verbs.

7.4 Action verbs

Action verbs differ from the other two types of verbs in having, minimally, an argument in the nominative for denoting the actor. They denote only controllable events and manifest all the morphosyntactic properties that go with that characteristic, as described in an earlier section (see 7.2.2). Further, they are dynamic in nature and have additional properties ascribed to them on that account (see 7.3.3).

Their subgrouping is primarily based upon the type of valency structures that occur with them. We will be describing this subgrouping in detail in the ninth chapter. Action verbs also allow a classification on the basis of directionality as we describe in the next (eighth) chapter.

7.5 Noun incorporation

7.5.1 Some of the verbal bases of Manipuri may be regarded as involving a process called 'noun incorporation' (see Mithun 1984, Rosen 1989), as these verbs appear to have a noun closely attached to them in all their usages. While any of the other nouns occurring with these verbs in a sentence (as arguments) can be left unspecified, these nouns are generally required to be overtly specified. Further, unlike other nouns occurring as heads of arguments, these nouns do not take any modifiers or case suffixes. The following sentences exemplify the use of these incorporated nouns in Manipuri.

- (34) *thag asi meya paggi*
 knife this tooth blunt
 'This knife is blunt'
- (35) *layrik asi momel taggi*
 book this price costly
 'This book is costly'

Manipuri Grammar

or no ka-do way silli
 1 Nom room-Loc rubbish swept
 'Swept rubbish in the room'

tephak no samcet-no sem hatli
 he 3rd Nom comb Nom hair combed
 'He combed (his) hair with a comb'

...the nouns *mana* 'tooth' in (34), *mana* 'price' in (35), *way* 'rubbish' in (36) and *sem* 'hair' in (37) are incorporated nouns.

Noun incorporation is considered to involve two main types, namely classifier incorporation and compound incorporation (see Rosen 1989). In the former case, the incorporated noun does not affect the structure of the verb with which it gets incorporated, whereas in the latter case there is a reduction in the number of core arguments that can occur with the verb. Manipuri appears to make use of both these types of noun incorporations. The first two sentences (34, 35) given above exemplify the occurrence of classifier incorporation, whereas the last two sentences (36, 37) exemplify the occurrence of compound incorporation.

The primary function of noun incorporation in Manipuri is the removal of ambiguity. In almost all instances of noun incorporation in this language (i.e. instances in which the specification of a noun with the verb is obligatory), there are one or more homophonous verbal bases such that the meaning intended by the speaker would not be very clear if the incorporated noun is left unspecified. The homophonous verbs may be quite different from one another in their meaning, as can be seen in the instances described in the present section, or they may be related with the incorporated verb, showing an extended usage, as shown in the next section (see 7.5.3).

The following instances show the contrast between incorporated and non-incorporated homophonous verbs which have distinct meanings:

Non-incorporated	Incorporated	Noun used
1. 'eat'	sem hat	'comb'
2. 'reach out'	cak lam	'hungry'
3. 'catch'	mepun lak	'tie'
4. 'read'	mesa pa	'thin'
5. 'arrest'	sem pha	'dishevelled'
6. 'beget'	mey pok	'burn'
7. 'watch'	thabek song	'unoccupied'
8. 'dependent'	memon tan	'costly'
9. 'sleep'	mawog tum	'round'
10. 'scared'	mehaw log	'taste'
11. 'keep in the mouth'	mawog um	'conical'
		semcet 'comb'
		cak 'food'
		mepun 'bundle'
		mesa 'body'
		sem 'hair'
		mey 'fire'
		thabek 'work'
		memon 'price'
		mawog 'shape'
		mehaw 'taste'
		mawog 'shape'

The following pairs of sentences exemplify the contrastive use of these two types of verbs:

mehak-no layrik pay
 he 3rd Nom book read
 'He read the book'

- (38b) *məhak məsa pay*
 he body thin
 'He is thin'
- (39a) *əy-nə laynk lak-i*
 I-Nom book snatch-NFu
 'I snatched the book'
- (39b) *əy-nə cəru məpun lak-i*
 I-Nom straw bundle tie-NFu
 'I tied the straw'

It may be noted here that in some of these instances, specification of the incorporated noun is obligatory only when there is a possibility of misunderstanding. For example, the verb *pa* 'thin' can be used without the incorporated noun in the case of inanimate arguments like *cə* 'paper' but not in that of arguments like *məhak* 'he', this is apparently because the verb would mean 'read' if it is used without the incorporated noun in the latter case but not in the former case. Examples:

- (39c) *cə əsi pay*
 paper this thin
 'This paper is thin'
- (39d) *məhak pay*
 he read
 'He read (something)'

7.5.3 As mentioned earlier, noun incorporation may also be used in order to establish extended uses for some of the verbs. The extension generally involves narrowing of the meaning to a specific case, but it may also involve generalization. The following pairs of verbs exemplify this contrastive usage:

<i>khik</i>	'sprinkle'	<i>noŋ khik</i>	'shower'	<i>noŋ</i>	'rain'
<i>su</i>	'potind (paddy)'	<i>thəbək su</i>	'busy'	<i>thəbək</i>	'work'
<i>thi</i>	'count'	<i>mən thi</i>	'bargain'	<i>məmən</i>	'price'
<i>kon</i>	'embrace'	<i>naw kon</i>	'rear up'	<i>naw</i>	'child'
<i>kup</i>	'cover'	<i>mit kup</i>	'wink'	<i>mit</i>	'eye'
<i>kən</i>	'courageous'	<i>nun kən</i>	'stubborn'	<i>nun</i>	'inside'
<i>kəŋ</i>	'dry'	<i>yaŋ kəŋ</i>	'thin'	<i>yaŋ</i>	'backbone'
<i>lum</i>	'heavy'	<i>thun lum</i>	'lazy'	<i>thun</i>	'buttocks'
<i>kok</i>	'clean, shave'	<i>ləm kok</i>	'clear a place'	<i>ləm</i>	'land'
<i>thəŋ</i>	'touch'	<i>pən thəŋ</i>	'collide'	<i>pən</i>	'obstruction'

Some of the verbs used in extended meanings in this fashion take different incorporated nouns for providing different types of meanings. For example, *mək* 'dim', contrasting with *mək* 'be cloudy' takes the noun *məcu* 'colour' to provide the meaning 'be dim in colour'; the same verb takes the noun *məməy* 'face' to provide the meaning 'be pale'; similarly, the verb *thum* 'fix a fishing trap', contrasting with *thum* 'sweet', takes different nouns like *lu*, *kaw* and *layjep*, which denote different kinds of fishing nets, as its incorporated nouns.

7.4.4 Semantically, these incorporated nouns denote the following varieties of meaning

- (i) Location for characterization
- (ii) Basis for characterization
- (iii) Object of an event
- (iv) Location of an event
- (v) Instrument used in an action
- (vi) Result of an event

Some of the state verbs denoting physical (or mental) properties of animate beings have the concerned body-part as the incorporated noun and the possessor of the body-part as the effected individual (theme).
Examples

- (40) mehak meya cawwi
he tooth big
'He has big teeth'
- (41) mehak sem phay
he hair dishevelled
'His hair is dishevelled'
- (42) mehak cing lemni
he appearance grave
'He is grave in appearance'

Some of the inanimate nouns also occur in constructions of this nature as can be seen in the following sentences

- (43) uhey esi mekhok loy-re
fruit this stem finish-Perf
'This fruit is about to fall'
- (44) than esi meya pangi
knife this tooth blunt
'This knife is blunt'

In the case of some state verbs, however, the incorporated noun can only be described as the basis for characterization, i.e. as the classifier word which either specifies the meaning of the verb (in the case of contrastive usage) or narrows it down (in the case of extended use). Examples

4. Contrastive use

- (45a) mehak me-yum-de helli
he he-house-Loc returned
'He returned to his house'
- (45b) mehak wakhon helli
he thought tolerant
'He is tolerant'

(ii) *Extended use*

- (46a) mohak ma-gi sen thi
he he-Gen money counted
'He counted his money'

- (46b) ay-ne nanon-da mon thi-ga-da-ra
I-Nom you-Loc price bargain-Fu-Emph-Q
'Should I bargain with you?'

Some of the process and action verbs have their theme or patient occurring as the incorporated noun; they occur with a new theme or patient in some cases, but in other cases, the incorporated noun itself functions as the theme or patient. In the latter case, the specification of the argument concerned is obligatory only for removing the ambiguity. Example:

- (47) ay-ne ka way sith
I-Nom room rubbish swept
'I swept the room'

✓ 7.5.5 The root *ɿ* 'water' forms the basis of the following verbal bases in which it has been practically lexicalized. Notice that there are homophonous verbal bases in these cases as well; some of these are extensions and some are apparently unconnected.

<i>Non-incorporated</i>	<i>Incorporated</i>
lup 'dive'	irup 'dive'
lu 'be deep'	iru 'bathe'
loy 'be about to fall'	iroy 'swim'
ɿsit 'blow (wind)'	ɿsit 'scoop water for fishing'
li 'preserve'	iri 'store rain water'

7.6 Verbal Suffixes

We will be describing in detail in three of the following chapters (chapters 9, 10 and 11) the suffixes that can be or need to be attached to verbal bases in order to use them as predicates. We will be describing the suffixes that help us change the valency patterns of verbs (like the causative, reflexive and reciprocal) in the ninth chapter, the suffixes that indicate directional ('up', 'down', 'in' and 'out') and deictic ('go and do', 'do and go', 'come and do' and 'do and come') suffixes in the tenth chapter, and the tense, aspect and mood suffixes in the eleventh chapter.

In addition to these, there is an interesting set of three 'destructional' suffixes which indicate that something has been destroyed as a result of an action or event. As we have mentioned earlier, the occurrence of these suffixes is restricted to dynamic verbs, as their meaning involves primarily an event that results in some kind of destruction.

(i) The suffixes involved are *khay* (related to the root *me-khay* 'half'), *tha* (with an implied meaning 'pull') and *thek* (related to the verb *thek* 'break'). The following sets of sentences exemplify the use of these suffixes:

- (48a) tombe-ne napi net-khay-re
Tomba-Nom grass trample-half-Perf
'Tomba has trampled the grass (unknowingly)'

- (46h) *tombe-no napi net-thet-le*
Tomba-Nom grass trample-pull-Perf
'Tomba has trampled the grass (deliberately)'
- (48c) *tombe-no napi net-theh-e*
Tomba-Nom grass trample-break-Perf
'Tomba has trampled the grass' (for showing his holdness)
- (47a) *tombe-no cawbe-bu law-khay*
Tomba-Nom Chaoba-Acc shout-half(NFii)
'Tomba shouted at Chaoba' (in the course of conversation --
not for any specific purpose)
- (49b) *tombe-no cawbe-bu law-thet-li*
Tomba-Nom Chaoba-Acc shout-pull-NFii
'Tomba shouted at Chaoba deliberately'
- (49c) *tombe-no cawbe-bu law-theh-i*
Tomba-Nom Chaoba-Acc shout-break-NFii
'Tomba shouted at Chaoba' (was in favor of Chaoba)'

(ii) When preceded by syllables beginning with an aspirate or a fricative, the initial consonants of these suffixes get de-aspirated, and further, when immediately preceded by voiced sounds, these de-aspirated consonants get voiced (see 2.7). Examples:

Verbal base		Suffixed form
lɔŋ	'throw'	lɔŋ-khay
phək	'pull out'	phək-kay
thin	'pierce'	thin-gay
kək	'cut'	kək-thet
set	'tear'	set-tet
sɪ	'pound'	sɪ-det
net	'trample'	net-theh
thup	'fold'	thup-tek
thom	'hit'	thom-dek

(iii) All the three suffixes imply some kind of destruction or disturbance, but they differ from one another in their implications; the use of the suffix *khay* denotes an unintentional act whereas that of the suffix *theh* denotes a deliberate act. This distinction gets reflected in the constraint that the former can occur with both action verbs as well as process verbs, whereas the latter can occur only with action verbs ('that can be carried out 'deliberately') as shown below.

(a) Verbs that can take both *khay* as well as *theh*

theg	'collide'	cik	'bite'
cop	'cut'	say	'crush'
non	'press'	loy	'twist'
net	'trample'	muk	'bend'

(b) Verbs that can take *khay* only

pok	'burst'	way	'gore'
cek	'crack'		

(iv) The third suffix *thek* appears to be similar to *khay* in that its use also appears to get restricted to action verbs.

Chapter 8

DIRECTIONAL AND DEICTIC DISTINCTIONS

8.1 Introduction

8.1.1 It is possible to attach to the verb in Manipuri one of a set of four different *directional* suffixes and of a set of four different *deictic* suffixes in order to indicate a number of different spatial contours of the events or states that are being denoted by the verbal bases under consideration.

The four directional suffixes are *sin*, *thok*, *the* and *khə*. These are used for denoting the simple direction of movement (or of orientation) of the events and states; they are differentiated from one another by the semantic features 'in' versus 'out' and 'down' versus 'up'. Verbal bases which cannot show spatial directionality of the above nature because of the fact that they denote events or states that have no spatial orientation are found to take these suffixes for conveying certain implicational meanings which are, however, derivable in some way or the other from these directional meaning distinctions.

The four deictic suffixes are *ra*, *ru*, *rok* and *khi*. These are used for denoting the location or orientation of an event or state, primarily with reference to the speaker's location. There are three different semantic parameters which help to differentiate between these four suffixes. They are,

- (i) motion or orientation of the event ('towards' versus 'away from' the speaker)
- (ii) place of occurrence of the event ('at the place of the speaker' versus 'at a place which is away from him'), and
- (iii) relative positions of these two (event 'preceding' versus 'following' the motion or orientation).

8.1.2 One important difference between these two sets of spatial suffixes is that the deictic suffixes can be attached to any given verbal base, whereas the directional ones are found to have rather constrained uses. One can divide verbal bases into a number of distinct groups depending upon the type of directional suffixes that they can take; in fact, the suffixes that denote the directions 'in' and 'out' on the one hand, and the ones which denote 'down' and 'up' on the other, establish two different sets of opposing pairs of verbal bases.

8.1.3 When both these types of suffixes are used jointly after a verbal base, directional suffixes, which directly modify the event or state that is being denoted by the verb, occur immediately after the verb, whereas deictic suffixes, which relate the location of that event or state with the location of the speaker, get attached to the verb after one of the directional suffixes has been attached to it. That is, directional suffixes have a closer association with the verbal base than deictic suffixes.

8.1.4 Even though the meaning of these two types of suffixes is primarily spatial in nature, they do have certain temporal connotations as well. This is apparently in tune with another interesting aspect of this language, namely that aspectual suffixes, whose meaning is primarily temporal in nature, also show certain spatial connotations. Spatial suffixes are therefore correlatable with aspectual suffixes; they indicate the 'contours' of space and time respectively. We will examine in detail below the occurrences and the various connotations of these two sets of suffixes separately under two different sections.

8.2 Directional suffixes

8.2.1 There are mainly four different non-deictic directional suffixes, namely *sin* 'in', *thok* 'out', *tho* 'down' and *khə* 'up', which can be attached to dynamic verbal bases that allow spatial directionality to be specified through them; some of these bases are unmarked for directionality and in such cases, the suffixes have the function of marking the relevant direction for them; others are inherently marked for direction, and in such instances the suffixes have the function of emphasizing the direction that is inherently associated with them.

Directional suffixes can also be attached to non-directional dynamic bases and also to state verbs (which are also basically non-directional), and in these instances they have extended connotations which are basically non-directional. Many of these extended meanings are temporal rather than spatial in nature.

Even in such extended usages, however, the basic meaning of spatial directionality of these suffixes, namely 'in', 'out', 'down' and 'up' respectively, gets reflected in the various constraints which affect their distribution, and also in the kind of extended meanings that each of them is able to provide. These points would be discussed in detail in the following sub-sections:

The two paradigms given below and also the three sentences which follow the paradigms exemplify the use of these suffixes in Manipuri verbal forms:

pi	'give'	pi-sin	'give in'
		pi-thok	'give out'
		pi-thə	'give down'
		pi-khə	'give upwards'
cət	'go'	cət-sin	'go in'
		cət-thok	'go out'
		cət-thə	'go down'
		cət-khə	'go up'

- (1) mehak-ne layrik pu-sil-li
he-Nom book carry-in-NFu
'He carried the book inside'
- (2) əy-ne iŋkhol-de-gi yen tan-thok-i
I-Nom garden-Loc-Gen hen drive-out-NFu
'I drove away the hen from the garden'
- (3) mənət sət-lek-pə do loŋg pumnəmek pay-khə-ləm-mi
wind blow-Dei-Inf-Loc cotton all fly-up-Compl-NFu
'When the wind came, all the cotton flew up'

8.2.2 Allomorphy

Three of the suffixes of this set, namely *sin*, *thok* and *khæ*, show three different allomorphs each, whose distribution is controlled by

- (i) a non-contiguous dissimilation, and
- (ii) a contiguous assimilation.

First of all, when these suffixes are preceded by a syllable that contains an initial aspirated stop (*ph*, *th* or *h*) or an initial fricative (*s* or *h*), the initial aspirated consonants of these suffixes (*ph* or *kh*) become unaspirated and the initial fricative (*s*) becomes affricated. Secondly, when these suffixes are immediately preceded by a voiced sound in the above-mentioned environment, their initial consonant becomes voiced.

This second change, however, occurs only in those instances in which the first change has taken place, i.e. the voicing does not take place in those instances in which the suffix is preceded by a syllable that contains neither an initial aspirated stop, nor a fricative. Further, neither of these two changes affects the morph suffix of this group, namely *the* 'down'.

The two allomorphic changes mentioned above can be exemplified with the help of the following paradigms:

khik 'sprinkle'	khik-cin	'sprinkle in'
	khik-tok	'sprinkle out'
	khik-kot	'sprinkle up'
	khik-the	'sprinkle down'

hut 'bore a hole'	hut-cin	'bore in'
	hut-tok	'bore out'
	hut-kot	'bore up'
	hut-the	'bore down'

ing (following deaspiration)

khoy 'bend'	khoy-jin	'bend in'
	khoy-dok	'bend out'
	khoy-got	'bend up'
	khoy-the	'bend down'

hi 'trim'	hi-jin	'trim in'
	hi-dok	'trim out'
	hi-got	'trim up'
	hi-the	'trim down'

'hin 'pierce'	thin-jin	'pierce in'
	thin-dok	'pierce out'
	thin-got	'pierce up'
	thin-the	'pierce down'

8.2.3 Grouping of verbal bases

The occurrence of directional suffixes is constrained to a certain extent by the meaning of the verb; their meaning also gets altered to a certain extent by the type of verb with which they occur. In order to describe these constraints which affect their occurrence and changes which affect their meaning, we propose to classify verbs into the following groups and subgroups:

I Dynamic verbs (actions and processes)

Group I : Dynamic verbs which are unmarked for directionality (These can freely take any of the four directional suffixes for correctly specifying the direction in which the event that they denote occurs)

Group II : Dynamic verbs which are inherently marked for direction (These can take only one or two of the four directional suffixes depending upon the direction in which the events that they represent occur; the suffixes have only the function of emphasizing the direction that is already implied by the verbs)

Group III : Dynamic verbs which lack directionality (Verbs of this group denote events that lack any directionality as such; they may occur with one of these suffixes for denoting certain extended connotations)

Non-Dynamic (state) verbs

- Set I : Pairs showing 'in-out' contrast
 Set II : Pairs showing 'down-up' contrast
 Set III : Pairs combining set I and set II
 Set IV : Pairs reversely combining set I and set II

8.2.4 Dynamic verbs which are unmarked for directionality

Verbal bases that we have so far been using in this second section in order to illustrate the occurrence of directional suffixes, and also their allomorphy, are all dynamic, and are unmarked for directionality; that is, they are non-committal regarding the direction in which the action or process that they denote actually occurs. They can therefore take any of these four directional suffixes for specifying that direction

The following is a sample list of verbal bases which belong to this particular group (see 8.2.2. for examples which show the use of directional suffixes with verbs of this group):

pay	'fly'	pa	'overflow'
coj	'jump'	loy	'swim' —
cof	'go'	taw	'float'
cen	'run'	on	'roll'
loy	'turn'	hay	'swing'
yeŋ	'look'	pi	'give'
set	'tear'	tha	'send'
kaw	'kick'	thow	'drive'
kap	'shoot'	low	'take'

hen	'dig'	thim	'pierce'
et	'sweep'	khik	'sprinkl'
than	'carry'	lon	'throw'

The following set of sentences exemplify the use of one of these verbs with four different direction-

suffixes

- (a) nahak-ne turen-do coq-sil-li
he.Nom river-Loc jump-in-NFu
'He jumped into the river'
- (b) mahak-ne ka-do-gi coq-thok-i
he.Nom room-Loc-Gen jump-out-NFu
'He jumped out of the room'
- (c) mahak-ne tehel-do coq-khat-li
he.Nom table-Loc jump-up-NFu
'He jumped on to the table'
- (d) mahak-ne tehel-do-gi coq-tha-y
he.Nom table-Loc-Gen jump-down-NFu
'He jumped down from the table'

4.2.5 Dynamic verbs which are inherently marked for directionality

Verbal bases which are inherently marked for directionality generally show the following two kinds of contrast

- between 'in' and 'out', and
- between 'down' and 'up'.

This point is exemplified by the fact that verbal bases which belong to this inherently marked group can be arranged into two different sets; of these, one consists of pairs of opposites, verbs of which one takes the suffix *sin* 'in' and the other one takes the suffix *thok* 'out'; the second set, on the other hand, consists of pairs of opposing verbs of which one takes the suffix *the* 'down' and the other one takes the suffix *tha* 'up' as shown below:

Set 1: Pairs of verbs showing 'in' versus 'out' contrast

verbs which normally take the suffix

sin 'in'

not	'add'
thip	'shut'
yok	'rear up'
li	'preserve'
ter	'mix'
sa	'build'
khuy	'wither'
kut	'dent'
tu	'topple down'

verbs which normally take the suffix

thok 'out'

khay	'subtract'
phak	'open'
hat	'kill'
loy	'finish'
cum	'filter'
si	'dismantle'
sat	'blossom'
kor	'bulge'
how	'rise'

thet	'insert'	hek	'pluck'
them	'put'	men	'pick out'
mam	'darken' 1	gan	'shine'
hek	'put a mark'	tek	'rub off'
yug	'erect (post)'	set	'pull out'
tha	'plant'	phoy	'uproot by hand'
lot	'hide'	phon	'publish'
tin	'gather'	son	'spread'
khay	'collect donation'	khay	'share out'
səm	'join together'	they	'divert'
yaw	'join a club'	tok	'leave a club'
men	'stop (leakage)'	ci	'drop'
han	'put in'	kay	'take out'

Set II: Pairs of verbs showing 'down' versus 'up' contrast

verbs which normally take the suffix
the 'down'

kut	'dent'
tu	'topple down'
ci	'drip'
sum	'squeeze'
tem	'flatten, level'
phan	'cut'
cum	'filter'
han	'open (door)'
set	'wear dhoti'

verbs which normally take the suffix
khə 'up'

kəŋ	'bulge'
ka	'climb'
pa	'overflow'
kam	'blow up'
pop	'swell up'
sa	'build'
then	'fill up'
kup	'cover'
in	'wear shawl'

It can be seen from the verbs given above that some pairs like *kut* 'dent' versus *kəŋ* 'bulge' occur in both these sets, whereas some verbs like *tu* 'topple down', while occurring in both, take different verbs for forming pairs in different sets.

Generally, the verbs that take the suffix *sin* 'in' are more likely to take the suffix *the* 'down' than *khə* 'up'. That is, the contrast 'in' versus 'out' corresponds to 'down' versus 'up' in that order.

In addition to these paired verbs, there are also others in this group which, while taking only one of these four suffixes, do not appear to possess any opposing partners. The following is a sample list of such verbs

(1) Verbs which normally occur with *sin* 'in'

həw	'grow'	hap	'put'
phum	'bury'	khin	'place a pot'
yot	'swallow'	yu	'leak'
hip	'lie down'		

(2) Verbs which normally occur with *thək* 'out'

kok	'shave'	ka	'open partially'
than	'light a lamp'		

12.5 Verbs which normally occur with the 'down'

met	'trample'	soy	'cut into pieces'
wo	'vomit'	khep	'winnow'
nik	'shake'		

12.6 Verbs which normally occur with *khə* 'up'

tha	'grow'	poy	'pile up'
cew	'heal up'	khen	'cover the eyes'

12.6 Dynamic verbs which lack directionality

Dynamic verbs which do not allow the specification of any directionality as such can also take any of the four suffixes mentioned above, but in such a situation, the suffixes have a somewhat different connotation.

(i) The suffix which is used most frequently after these verbs is *khə* 'up'. It has the temporal meaning 'begin to' or 'start' after these verbs, as can be seen from the following examples:

khan	'think'	khen-gət	'begin to think'
tak	'teach'	tak-khet	'begin to teach'
hay	'say'	hay-gət	'begin to say'
təŋ	'taste'	təŋ-khet	'begin to taste'

Examples:

- (12a) mehak-ne cak ca-khet-li
he-Nom food eat-up-NFu
'He started to eat food'

- (12b) oja-ne oŋaŋ-bu lavrik tak-khet-li
teacher-Nom child-Acc book teach-up-NFu
'The teacher started to teach lessons to children'

The suffix *khə* 'up' can have this temporal sense 'begin to' as an alternative meaning in the case of verbs which are unmarked for directionality (see 8.2.4). That is, verbs of the first group, while occurring with the suffix *khə*, are ambiguous between the meanings of 'up' and 'begin to'. Examples

kam	'swell'	kamkhet	'swell up; begin to swell'
sup	'cover'	supkət	'cover up; begin to cover'
ka	'climb'	kakhet	'climb up; begin to climb'
cen	'run'	cenkhet	'run upwards; begin to run'

- (12c) tomba-ne ciŋ-də cen-khet-li
Tomba-Nom hill-Loc run-up-NFu
'Tomba started to run towards the hill'
(12d) 'Tomba ran up the hill'

Some of the verbs of this second group, which do not normally take the suffix *khə* 'up' because of the fact that the inherent direction of the action or event that they denote is in conflict with the meaning of this suffix, may occur with that suffix in this temporal sense, namely 'begin to'. Examples:

yot	'swallow'	yoikhet	'begin to swallow'
yu	'leak'	yukhet	'begin to leak'
cum	'filter'	cumkhat	'begin to filter'
hip	'lie down'	hipket	'begin to lie down'
han	'put in'	hanget	'begin to put in'

(ii) The suffix *thok* 'out' has also the temporal sense of 'doing something completely or exhaustively' when used with verbs of this second group (i.e. dynamic verbs that do not allow the specification of directionality). Examples

ca	'eat'	ca-thok	'finish eating'
on	'change'	on-thok	'change completely'
cak	'burn'	cak-thok	'burn completely'
thek	'drink'	thek-tok	'finish drinking'

It has also an extended spatial sense in the case of some of the verbs belonging to this group; the meaning involved here is that of 'doing something openly or publicly' as shown by the following examples

law	'cry'	law-thok	'cry openly'
sen	'spread'	sen-dok	'spread openly'
kep	'weep'	kep-thok	'weep openly'
si	'die'	si-dok	'die for a noble cause'

The following are a few additional connotations that the suffix *thok* has been found to provide in the case of these verbs:

- (a) *carelessly*
- | | | | |
|------|--------------|---------|--|
| tun | 'sleep' | tumthok | 'sleep carelessly' |
| than | 'light' | thandok | 'light carelessly' (burn more lamps unnecessarily) |
| phəm | 'sit' | phəmdok | 'sit carelessly' |
| ləŋ | 'throw' | ləŋthok | 'throw carelessly' |
| phəy | 'put across' | phəydok | 'put across carelessly' |
| khen | 'think' | khendok | 'think carelessly' |
- (b) *'connected with an evil spirit'*
- | | | | |
|-----|-----------|---------|-------------------------------------|
| lat | 'worship' | latthok | 'worship an evil spirit' |
| tha | 'offer' | thadok | 'offer to an evil spirit' |
| kok | 'remove' | kokthok | 'remove evil spirit (from a house)' |
- (c) *Other meanings*
- | | | | |
|------|--------|---------|---------------------------------|
| top | 'add' | topthok | 'add an extension to the house' |
| kheŋ | 'know' | kheŋdok | 'get information about others' |
| lep | 'stop' | lepthok | 'stop suddenly while walking' |

Examples

- (4a) ay-nə tomhəŋ məmən-də cak ca-thok-i
 I-Nom Tomha-Gen front-Loc food eat-out-NFut
 'I finished eating before Tomha'

- (d) *tomba-ne moyam mema-de kap-thok-i*
 Tomba-Nom all front-Loc cry-out-NFu
 'Tomba cried openly before everyone'

- (e) *mehak-ne ma-gi yum top-thok-i*
 he-Nom he-Gen house add-out-NFu
 'He added extensions to his house'

- (iii) The suffix *sin* 'in' has the extended meaning of joining some other persons or objects that are involved in the event that is denoted by the verb. Examples:

kap	'weep'	kap-sin	'join' 'ers in weeping'
nan	'speak'	nan-sin	'join' 'when someone is speaking'
lep	'stand'	lep-sin	'stand' 'in front of others and obstruct the view'
khu	'cough'	khu-jin	'cough' 'in a place where someone is standing'
phut	'boil'	phut-cin	'put' 'with additional objects for boiling'
phaw	'expose to sun'	phaw-jin	'put' 'with additional things in the sun for drying'

In contrast with the meaning of 'doing something publicly' that has been pointed out above for the suffix *thok* 'out', the suffix *sin* 'in' has the meaning of 'doing something privately (or in a particular place)' in some cases. Examples:

khap	'endure'	khap-jin	'endure' 'silently'
na	'lean'	na-sin	'lean' 'in a corner'
yon	'sell'	yon-sin	'having something sold to the speaker himself'
khap	'winnow'	khap-cin	'winnow' 'in a particular place'
khok	'peel'	khok-cin	'peel' 'in a particular place'

The following are some additional connotations that the suffix *sin* is found to provide in the case of some verbs:

phom	'sit'	phom-jin	'sit for a long time'
phay	'put across'	phay-jin	'put across knowingly'
khén	'think'	khén-jin	'think seriously'
khing	'ring'	khing-jin	'ring undesirably'

Examples

- (a) *tomba-ne makhoy-gi marek-te kap-sil-li*
 Tomba-Nom they-Gen middle-Loc weep-in-NFu
 'Tomba came and wept among them'

- (b) *ey-ne owaho pumnamok khap-jil-li*
 I-Nom difficulty all endure-in-NFu
 'I endured silently all the difficulties'

- (c) *ax-ne metem kuy-ne phom-jil-li*
 I-Nom time long-Adv sit-in-NFu
 'I sat for a long time'

(iv) The suffix *tha* 'down' has the temporal sense of continuing an action when used with verbs of this second group. It has this meaning as an alternative sense in the case of some of the verbs of the first group (8.2.4) as well. Examples:

- | | | | | |
|-----|------|---------|----------|-------------------------------|
| (a) | gay | 'wait' | gay-tha | 'continue to wait' |
| | khu | 'cough' | khu-tha | 'continue to cough' |
| | khen | 'think' | khen-tha | 'continue to think' |
| | su | 'work' | su-tha | 'continue to work' |
| (b) | ci | 'drip' | ci-tha | 'drip down; continue to drip' |
| | phan | 'cut' | phan-tha | 'cut down; continue to cut' |
| | yeŋ | 'look' | yeŋ-tha | 'look down; continue to look' |
| | pi | 'give' | pi-tha | 'give down; continue to give' |

Examples.

- (6a) əy-nə yum-thək-tə-gi yeŋ-tha-y
 I-Nom house-top-Loc-Gen look-down-NFu
 'I looked down from the top of the house'
- (6b) məhak-nə mətem kuy-nə əyŋon-də yeŋ-tha-y
 he-Nom time long-Adv I-Loc look-down-NFu
 'He continued to look at me for a long time'

8.2.7 Meaning of volitionality

There is an interesting characteristic that is shared by all the four directional suffixes, namely that they appear to impart some kind of *volitional* meaning to verbs in many of these instances. This is very clearly seen in the following instances:

- | | | | |
|-----|---------|----------|-------------------------|
| can | 'like' | can-sin | 'like intentionally' |
| si | 'die' | si-dok | 'die for a noble cause' |
| tum | 'sleep' | tum-thok | 'sleep carelessly' |

Example.

- (7) məhak-nə mə-rəybak-ki-də-mək si-dok-i
 he-Nom he-country-Gen-Loc-Emph die-out-NFu
 'He died for the sake of his country'

The verb *m* 'hear' or 'listen to' can take these directional suffixes only in the sense of 'listen to' and not 'hear'. Further, certain non-volitional verbs like *n* 'see', *kə* 'fear' do not take any of these suffixes. This particular constraint, however, needs to be studied in greater detail.

8.2.8 Non-dynamic (state) verbs

State verbs are similar to inherently marked dynamic verbs in that they occur only with one or two of the four directional suffixes, there is apparently some kind of inherent directionality in their meaning which forms the basis of this constraint

Further, in the case of most of these state verbs, directional suffixes have only certain extended connotations; they do not provide their regular meaning of directionality. The first three suffixes, namely

in 'thok 'out', and *khə* 'up' change state verbs into process verbs, whereas the 'down' one, *the* 'down', has the effect of adding intensity to their meaning. Examples

səm	'be brief'	səm-jin	'become brief'
hən	'be cheap'	hən-dok	'become cheap'
thu	'be quick'	thu-gət	'become quick'
then	'be late'	then-the	'be very late'

For example

(12) kum-si-di heynew khəre hən-dok-i
year-this-Emph mango some cheap-out-NFu
'Mangoes have become a bit cheap this year'

(13) oja-ne nəsī klas-to lak-pə then-the-y
teacher-Nom class-Loc come-Inf late-down-NFu
'The teacher's coming to the class today is very late'

(i) There is one single state verb, namely *pəy* 'be slant' which is able to show the four directional meanings when the suffixes are attached to it as shown below:

pəy	'be slant'	pəy-sin	'become slant inwards'
		pəy-thok	'become slant outwards'
		pəy-khə	'become slant upwards'
		pəy-the	'become slant downwards'

There are a few other verbs which show directional meanings only incidentally when they are associated with one of these suffixes as shown below

saw	'be angry'	saw-jin	'become angry at a particular person'
		saw-dok	'show anger outside'
cum	'be straight'	cum-sin	'become straight towards a particular point'
		cum-khə	'become straight upwards'

(ii) As we have mentioned earlier (8.2.3), state verbs can be classified into four different groups depending upon their occurrence with directional suffixes. Several of these can occur with only one of the four directional suffixes, but they form two sets of opposing pairs, with verbs taking the suffix *sin* 'in' opposing those taking the suffix *thok* 'out', and verbs taking the suffix *the* 'down' opposing those taking the suffix *khə* 'up'.

Other state verbs take two different directional suffixes each, and majority of these combine the above-mentioned opposing pairs; that is, some of these take the suffixes *sin* 'in' and *the* 'down' and the verbs that have opposite meaning take the suffixes *thok* 'out' and *khə* 'up'. These form a third set of opposing pairs. There are a few verbs forming a fourth set which reversely combine the first two sets.

The following is a sample list of state verbs which form the first two sets of contrasting pairs; they are only one of the four directional suffixes as shown below. Notice that there is some semantic basis for their choice of directional suffixes.

Set I Pairs of state verbs showing 'in-out' contrast

States that only take <i>sin</i>	States that only take <i>thok</i>
khü 'narrow'	pak 'wide'
kun 'thick (cloth)'	lön 'thin (cloth)'
nək 'near'	lap 'far'
nəŋ 'thick (liquid)'	lan 'thin (liquid)'
cet 'tight'	hik 'loose'
mən 'old'	nəw 'young'
lu 'difficult'	lay 'easy'
taŋ 'costly'	hog 'cheap'

(ii) Set II: Pairs of verbs showing 'down-up' contrast

States that only take <i>thə</i>	States that only take <i>kha</i>
pa 'thin (paper)'	tha 'thick (paper)'
con 'long (shirt)'	kəw 'short (shirt)'
lu 'deep'	then 'shallow'
son 'weak'	kən 'strong'
təp 'slow'	yaŋ 'fast'
mon 'slow'	thu 'quick'
then 'late'	ŋən 'early'

Examples.

- (9a) kum-si-di layrik taŋ-sil-li
year-this-Emph book costly-in-NFu
'Books became costly this year'
- (9b) nəŋməy-di layrik hog-dok-kəni
next year-Emph book cheap-out-Fu
'Books will become cheap next year'
- (9c) tombə-ne cən-bə təp-thə-y
Tomba-Nom run-Inf slow-down-NFu
'Tomba's running became slow'
- (9d) chawhe ne cən-bə yaŋ-khat-li
Chaoha Nom run-Inf fast-up-NFu
'Chaoha's running became fast'

Notice that adjectival or adverbial (state) notions like narrow, near, tight and old are regarded as 'in' notions, whereas the opposing notions like wide, far, loose, and young are viewed as 'out' notions; similarly, notions like deep, weak, slow and late are viewed as 'down' notions, whereas the opposing notions like shallow, strong, quick and early are viewed as 'up' notions.

(iii) State verbs that can take two of the four directional suffixes each also show the same contrast as the ones given above, namely between *sin* 'in' and *thok* 'out' on the one hand, and *thə* 'down' and *kha* 'up' on the other. However, they form only one set of contrasting pairs, as they combine the two oppositions into a single one. That is, verbs which take *sin* 'in' also take *thə* 'down' and the ones which take *thok* 'out' also take *kha* 'up'.

11.1 Pairs of verbs which combine set I and set II

Stative verbs which normally take *sin* and *tho*

len	'short'
pek	'small'
len	'thin'
nein	'low, short'
ku	'low'
in	'cold'
lum	'heavy'
nein	'not loud'
mok	'dim'
thi	'ugly'
man	'impure'
not	'dirty'
wat	'less'
pen	'stupid'

Stative verbs which normally take *thok* and *khok*

san	'long'
caw	'big'
noy	'fat'
wan	'tall'
ton	'raised'
sa	'hot'
van	'light'
haw	'loud'
la	'bright'
pho	'beautiful'
seg	'pure'
nan	'clean'
hen	'excess'
sin	'clever'

There is an interesting set of physical property verbs consisting of three different pairs which combine these directional suffixes in the reverse order. That is, the verbs which normally take the suffix *sin* in these pairs of verbs take *khok* rather than *tho*, and the ones which normally take the suffix *thok* take *sin* rather than *khok*.

11.2 Pairs of verbs reversely combining set I and set II

Statives that normally take *sin* and *khok*

len	'hard'
lum	'straight'
kon	'dry'

Statives that normally take *thok* and *tho*

pet	'soft'
khoy	'bent'
cot	'wet'

11.3 Implicational connotations

The possibility of using two different directional suffixes after the state verbs of the third and fourth sets above has made it possible to attach certain implicational connotations to them. We have noticed the following connotations of this nature:

(i) In the case of dimensional state verbs, the suffix *thok* 'out' generally denotes an unnatural or forced process, whereas the suffix *khok* denotes a natural process like growth. Examples:

san	'long'	san-dok	'lengthen suddenly'
		san-khok	'grow long'
noy	'fat'	noy-thok	'fatten suddenly'
		noy-khok	'fatten gradually (by growth)'

- (10a) *un esi khənsaŋ saŋ-dok-i*
 creeper suddenly long-out-NFu
 'This creeper has suddenly become long'

- (10b) *un esi yamna -aŋ-gei-li*
 creeper this much long-up-NFu
 'This creeper has grown very long'

In the case of other stative verbs also, these two suffixes show the corresponding distinction between sudden and gradual processes respectively. Examples:

la	'bright'	la-thok	'brighten suddenly'
		la-khot	'brighten gradually'
pha	'good'	pha-dok	'become good suddenly'
		pha-gei	'become good gradually'

(ii) The suffix *un* 'in' contrasts with *khə* 'up' in the case of some verbs, with the former providing the meaning of completion and the latter that of starting. Examples:

kən	'hard'	kənsin	'become completely hard'
		kənkhət	'start to become hard'
kəŋ	'dry'	kəŋsin	'become completely dry'
		kəŋkhət	'start to become dry'

- (11a) *əy-ne isɿŋ cay-la-dunə u-du kəŋ-sil-le*
 I-Nom water sprinkle-Neg-because tree-that dry-in-Perf
 'The tree has become completely dry because I did not sprinkle water on it'
- (11b) *əy-ne isɿŋ cay-la-dunə u-du kəŋ-khet-le*
 I-Nom water sprinkle-Neg-because tree-that dry-out-Perf
 'The tree has started to become dry because I did not sprinkle water on it'

8.3. Deictic suffixes

8.3.1 As mentioned earlier, there are four different deictic suffixes in Manipuri, namely *ra*, *ru*, *rek* and *khi*. These are attached to verbal bases in order to indicate the spatial contours of events or states primarily with reference to the speaker's location. They can be differentiated from one another with the help of the following three semantic features which are to be viewed with reference to the speaker of the given utterance

- motion or orientation,
- place of occurrence, and
- relative position of these two.

The four suffixes mentioned above are marked for these three features as shown in table I.

suffixes	motion or orientation	place of occurrence	relative position
r	towards the speaker	at the speaker's place	event follows the motion
ni	away from the speaker	away from the speaker's place	event follows the motion
rok	towards the speaker	away from the speaker's place	event precedes the motion
chi	away from the speaker	at the speaker's place	event precedes the motion

Table - 1

The use of these four suffixes can be illustrated with the help of the following paradigms and examples.

aw	'do'	towray	'came here and did something'
		towruy	'went away and did something'
		towraki	'did something and came here'
		towkhi	'did something and went away'

ca	'eat'	caray	'came and ate'
		caruy	'went and ate'
		careki	'ate and came'
		cakhi	'ate and went away'

1. mahak-ne kolketta-de-gi sal purak-o-ga aygon-de pi-ra-y
 he-Nom Calcutta-Loc-Gen shawl bring-Perf-Conj me-Loc give-D1-NFu
 'He brought a shawl from Calcutta and gave it to me'

2. Kumar-ne tombo khoy-de cak ca-ni-y
 Kumar-Nom Tomba place-Loc rice eat-D2-NFu
 'Kumar went to Tomba's place and dined'

3. chaoba-ne moyum-de-gi ca thak-lok-i
 Chaoba-Nom he-house-Loc-Gen tea drink-D3-NFu
 'Chaoba took tea in his place and came here'

4. jorani-ne yam-ne saw-ne thebok tok-khi
 cook-Nom much-Adv anger-Adv work leave-D4(NFu)
 'The cook resigned angrily from his job and went away'

When the speaker himself is carrying out an activity, the motion that he indicates through these suffixes is related to the location from which he is speaking rather than to the one in which he carried out (or will be carrying out) that activity. Examples:

- (15) əy ca-rə-gəni
I eat-Dei1-Fu
'I will come here and eat'
- (16a) əy ca-ru-gəni
I eat-Dei2-Fu
'I will go and eat (somewhere else)'
- (16c) əy ca-rək-kəni
I eat-Dei3-Fu
'I will eat (somewhere else) and come here'
- (16d) əy ca-khɪ-gəni
I eat-Dei4-Fu
'I will eat here and go (somewhere else)'

8.3.2 Allomorphy

The initial consonant *r* of the first three of these suffixes shows certain morphophonemic changes as described below; the meanings of some of these suffixes in some of the examples given below may appear to be somewhat different from the primary meanings mentioned above; the exact nature of these differences would be discussed in detail later on in this section.

(i) The initial consonant *r* of these three deictic suffixes assimilates completely to the preceding consonant when that consonant is *m*, *n* or *p*. Examples:

phəm	'sit'	phəm-mə-y	'came and sat here'
		phəm-mu-y	'went and sat there'
		phəm-mək-i	'came sitting (as on a bus)'
təŋ	'touch'	təŋ-ŋə-y	'came and touched'
		təŋ-ŋu-y	'went and touched'
		təŋ-ŋək-i	'touched from the opposite direction'
ləp	'decide'	ləp-pə-y	'came and decided'
		ləp-pu-y	'went and decided'
		ləp-pək-i	'decided and came'

(ii) The initial *r* of the three suffixes changes to *l* when the preceding consonant is *l* or *n*; the preceding consonant itself changes to *l* before it when that consonant is *n*. Examples:

sot	'take on credit'	sot-lə-y	'came and took on credit'
		sot-lu-y	'went and took on credit'
		sot-lək-i	'took on credit and came'

ʔm	'earn'	tal-lə-y	'came and earned'
		tal-lu-y	'went and earned'
		tal-lək-i	'earned and came'

(iii) If the preceding consonant is *k*, the first two suffixes (*rə* and *ru*) delete their initial consonant, the third one (*rək*) changes it to *l*. Examples:

lək	'harvest'	lok-ə-y	'came and harvested'
		lok-u-y	'went and harvested'
		lok-lək-i	'harvested and came'

(iv) The final *r* of the suffix *khi* changes to *ə* or gets deleted when followed by the perfect suffix. Examples:

ca	'eat'	ca-kh-re	'has eaten'
		ca-khə-re	'has eaten'

(1.13) As we have pointed out in the introduction to this chapter (8.1), the occurrence of these deictic suffixes is unconstrained by the type of verbal bases with which they occur; they are quite different from locational suffixes on this point. They do show, however, some extended usages, which are dependent upon the meaning of verbs with which they occur.

We propose to describe the four deictic suffixes in the following sections under two headings to begin with, grouping the first two, *rə* and *ru*, into one set that denotes an event as following a motion, and the other two, *rək* and *khi*, into another set that denotes an event as preceding a motion.

1.14 Event following a motion

The two deictic suffixes *rə* and *ru* share the meaning of moving to some place (coming or going) *before* an event, the activity or showing the characteristic that is under consideration. They differ from one another in the direction in which this motion takes place: it is towards the speaker in the case of the suffix *rə*, away from the speaker in the case of the suffix *ru*, as shown below:

Personal verbs

law	'cry'	law-rə-y	'came and cried'
		law-ru-y	'went away and cried'
si	'die'	si-rə-y	'came and died (here)'
		si-ru-y	'went and died (there)'
yok	'rear'	yok-ə-y	'brought someone and reared'
		yok-u-y	'took away someone and reared'
sat	'blossom'	sat-lə-y	'(a plant) that has been brought here blossomed'
		sat-lu-y	'(a plant) that has been taken away from here blossomed'

Stative verbs

lam	'hungry'	lam-mə-y	'came here and is hungry'
		lam-mu-y	'went somewhere and was hungry there'
cil	'busy'	cil-lə-y	'came here and is busy'
		cil-lu-y	'went and is busy there'

pho	'good'	pho-re-y	'came here and is good'
		pho-ru-y	'went and is good there'
in	'cold'	in-gə-y	'came here and feels cold'
		in-gu-y	'went and feels cold there'

(i) The above two suffixes are somewhat infrequent after non-volitional intransitive verbs like *pop* 'swell', *pom* 'bud', *sar* 'boil', etc., and in the case of some of them, the suffixes show certain extended or metaphorical connotations. Examples:

cak	'burn'	cak-e-y	'sad thoughts came and burnt the heart'
		cak-u-y	'sparks flew off and burnt something at a distance'

(ii) The state or property is seen in the theme rather than in the actor in the following cases

cum	'straight'	cum-mə-y	'came and straightened something here'
		cum-mu-y	'went and straightened something there'
khoy	'be bent'	khoy-rə-y	'(river) flows straight and bends here'
		khoy-ru-y	'(river) flows straight and bends there'

(iii) In the case of color terms, the meaning of these suffixes may not involve any motion or orientation as such, but only the spatial distribution. Examples:

nan	'red'	nan-ŋə-y	'is red here'
		nan-ŋu-y	'is red over there'
mu	'black'	mu-rə-y	'is black here'
		mu-ru-y	'is black over there'

8.3.5 Event preceding a motion

The suffix *rək* has the primary sense of 'doing something and coming towards the speaker (or the place where the speaking is taking place)', whereas the suffix *khi* has the opposite sense of 'doing something and going away from the speaker'. In both these cases the motion generally takes place after the action has been carried out (or at least initiated), but in the case of the suffix *rək* the action takes place at a location that is away from that of the speaker (and hence the motion is towards him), whereas in the case of the suffix *khi* the action takes place at the location of the speaker (and hence the motion is away from him). Examples:

(i) Dynamic verbs

ləy	'stay'	ləy-rək-i	'stayed somewhere and came'
		ləy-khi	'stayed here and went away'
ca	'eat'	ca-rək-i	'ate somewhere and came here'
		ca-khi	'ate here and went away'
thoŋ	'cook'	thoŋ-rək-i	'cooked and came'
		thoŋ-khi	'cooked and went'
phak	'open'	phak-lək-i	'opened (the door) and came'
		phak-khi	'opened (the door) and went out'

(ii) State verbs

pik	'small'	pik-lək-i	'had been small before coming here'
		pi-khi	'had been small before going there'

Manipuri Grammar

cat	'long'	saŋ-ŋok-i	'had been long before the speaker got the object'
		saŋ-khi	'had been long before someone else got the object'
pak	'wide'	pak-lək-i	'(river) becomes wide here'
		pak-khi	'(river) becomes wide there'

(ii) In the case of durative verbs like *kop* 'weep', *cen* 'run', *pay* 'fly', *iroy* 'swim', *taw* 'float', etc., it is shown to take place along with the motion (towards or away from the speaker respectively), though it is being assumed to have started at a distant place in the case of the suffix *rək* and at the place in the case of the suffix *khi*. Examples:

cop	'weep'	kop-pək-i	'came weeping'
		kop-khi	'went away weeping'
cen	'run'	cel-lək-i	'came running'
		cen-khi	'went away running'
taŋ	'carry'	thaŋ-ŋok-i	'came carrying something'
		thaŋ-khi	'went away carrying something'
loŋ	'lie'	loŋ-ŋok-i	'brought (a cup) face up'
	(with face up)	loŋ-khi	'took away (a cup) face up'

An interesting extension of this particular use is seen in the following instances in which the verb does not allow a simultaneous motion:

tuŋ	'sleep'	tum-mək-i	'came sleeping (in a sleeper)'
		tum-khi	'went away sleeping (in a sleeper)'
pham	'sit'	phom-mək-i	'came sitting (on a bus)'
		phom-khi	'went away sitting (on a bus)'

(iii) In instances in which the meaning of the verb does not directly involve any motion as such, the sense of orientation from the use of these suffixes. In the case of the suffix *rək* the motion is towards the speaker (from a place which is away from him), whereas in that of *khi*, it is away from the speaker. Examples:

ŋə	'look'	yeŋ-ŋəki	'looked from the other side (towards the speaker)'
		yeŋ-khi	'looked from the speaker' side (towards opposite side)'
ŋə	'lean'	ŋa-rək-i	'leaned towards the speaker'
		ŋa-khi	'leaned towards the opposite side'
law	'cry'	law-rək-i	'cried from the other side'
		law-khi	'cried from the speaker's side'

(iii) In the case of some of the transaction verbs, these two suffixes show an interesting exchange of roles as far as the actor of the relevant action is concerned.

When the transaction involves an actor who is also the receiver, the suffix *rək* indicates an arrangement in which the speaker functions as the actor; when it involves a losing actor, on the other hand, and another (specified or not specified person) who gains from the transaction, the suffix *rək* indicates an arrangement in which the speaker functions as the granter but not as the actor.

The suffix *khi* denotes an arrangement which is exactly opposite to the above one in the case of the various types of verbal bases.

The suffix *rek* can also be used in a comparable temporal meaning in the case of durative verbs such as 'lean' *khen* 'think', *lat* 'worship', *ven* 'look', *thaw* 'drive', etc. However, the suffix *rek* indicates here an on-going process or activity that had been started earlier (which is clearly an extension of the spatial meaning of 'someone starting an activity somewhere and moving towards the speaker'), whereas the suffix *khi* denotes an activity that had been completed or had ceased. Examples:

khen	'think'	khal- <i>lek-i</i> khen- <i>khi</i>	'have been thinking' 'had thought earlier'
ka	'lean'	ga- <i>rek-i</i> ga- <i>khi</i>	'have been leaning here for some time' 'had leaned here earlier'
thaw	'drive'	thaw- <i>rek-i</i> thaw- <i>khi</i>	'have been driving for some time' 'had driven earlier'
li	'narrate'	li- <i>rek-i</i> li- <i>khi</i>	'have been narrating' 'had narrated'

A somewhat different kind of temporal meaning is observed in the use of the suffix *rek* in the following instances:

lin	'meet'	lin- <i>lek-i</i>	'have been meeting from a fixed point of time'
phaw	'expose to sun'	phaw- <i>rek-i</i>	'have been exposing to sun from a fixed point of time'
phon	'publish'	phon- <i>rek-i</i>	'have been publishing from a fixed point of time'

(i) In the case of certain intransitive verbs which denote non-volitional events (such as *pom* 'bud' and *sat* 'blossom'), the suffix *rek* provides the temporal sense of 'the event taking place slowly or gradually'. As would be pointed out in the next section, this particular meaning is quite common for this suffix in the case of stative verbs. Example:

pom	'bud'	pom- <i>mek-i</i>	'(the plant) started giving out the buds slowly'
-----	-------	-------------------	--

(ii) In the case of state verbs also, these two suffixes show the related temporal connotations more frequently than spatial connotations. The suffix *rek* generally denotes that an individual or object attains the state or property slowly and gradually, whereas the suffix *khi* indicates that they had shown this property in the past. Examples:

nan	'red'	nan- <i>rek-i</i> nan- <i>khi</i>	'became red gradually' 'had been red (but not any more)'
cik	'calm'	cik- <i>lek-i</i> cik- <i>khi</i>	'became calm gradually' 'had been calm'
sa	'hot'	sa- <i>rek-i</i> sa- <i>khi</i>	'became hot gradually' 'had been hot'
hay	'skillful'	hay- <i>rek-i</i> hay- <i>khi</i>	'became skillful gradually' 'had been skillful'

Chapter 9

VALENCY PATTERNS

9.1 Introduction

We propose to describe the valency patterns of Manipuri verbs in this chapter on the basis of a three-fold division of verbs into states, processes and actions. The valency pattern is described in terms of (i) a theme which is unmarked for case, (ii) an actor (or a causer or a natural force) marked by the nominative *na*, (iii) a patient marked by the accusative *bu* in the case of animate nouns and generally left unmarked for case in that of others, (iv) a location (including experiencer, goal, source, and location proper) marked by the locative *da*, (v) a beneficiary (or possessor) marked by the genitive *gi* and (vi) an associate marked by the conjunctive *gə*.

In addition to these, the valency patterns of verbal bases in Manipuri also include non-core arguments like (vii) an instrument (which includes cause, material, medium and means, in addition to the instrument proper) which is marked by the nominative *na*, and (viii) a quantifier argument which is unmarked for case. Some of the verbal bases obligatorily take a classifier argument which helps to disambiguate them from other homophonous verbs. Further, some verbs require a nominalized clause as one of their arguments or as the sole argument, as they indicate an action, process or characteristic of some other event. This nominalized clause may occur with the locative *da*, nominative *na*, or it may be left unmarked for case.

State and process verbs are rather similar to one another in their valency pattern in contrast to action verbs which are different from them on several points. Both state and process verbs require a theme as one of their core arguments, they may have a theme only or a theme and a location towards which the state or process is being directed. Examples.

- (1a) *phi əsi ɲəwwi*
cloth this white
'This cloth is white'
- (1b) *lɔŋ əsi tɔlli*
thread this snapped
'This thread snapped off'
- (2a) *cəy təhəl-de (yɛnni)*
stick table-LOC vertical
'The stick is vertical to the table'

Manipuri Grammar

phi camhen-de pelli
cloth fence-Loc entangle
'The cloth got entangled with the fence'

p- state as well as process verbs may occur with a nominalized clause as their theme or as an
nominal argument (patient or location) which they affect or towards which they are directed. Examples
ma na wan li-be sangpi
he-Nom story narrate-Inf long
'His narrating of the story is long'

ma-ne wan li-be lox
he-Nom story narrate-Inf over
'His narrating of the story is over'

ma-ne cet-pa oy khongpi
he-Nom go-Inf I know
'I know of his going'

ma-ne pa-be-de oy pelli
he-Nom read-Inf-Loc I satisfied
'I am satisfied of his reading'

Both state as well as process verbs can occur with a non-obligatory instrument with the nominative
particle. It denotes a cause in the former case and a cause, material or means in the latter case, the latter
p- also occur with an argument denoting natural force which also occurs with the nominative suffix
-ngpi. Examples

ii mehak kensor-ne nay
he cancer-Nom ill
'He is ill with cancer'

i then nupsit-ne hagnpi
door wind-Nom opened
'The door opened due to wind'

Process verbs differ from state verbs in allowing a patient to occur as the second argument; state
on the other hand, can have two themes, as in the case of copulative sentences, or sentences that
have a quantifier argument. Examples:

ma oja oy
he teacher is
'He is a teacher'

oy ma-hu oy
I he-Acc saw
'I saw him'

Action verbs are different from state and process verbs in having an actor in the nominative as one
of their core arguments. There are very few verbs in this group which occur only with a single core

argument, namely the actor; most of them have an additional patient or location; that is, actions are generally viewed as affecting a patient or as being directed towards, away from, or at a location. Some of them occur with a patient as well as a location (i.e. in addition to the actor) as seen, for example, in the case of transaction verbs. Actions may also be directed towards another action or event, in which case they occur with a nominalized clause as one of their arguments. Examples

- (8a) *ma-ne kappi*
 he-Nom wept
 'He wept'
- (8b) *ey-ne ma-bu kəw wi*
 I-Nom he-Acc called
 'I called him'
- (8c) *ey-ne tɛhəl-də nemmi*
 I-Nom table-Loc pressed
 'I pressed (on) the table'
- (8d) *ey-na ɔŋaŋ-bu cak illi*
 I-Nom child-Acc food fed
 'I fed (food to) the child'
- (8e) *ey-ne məhak cət-pə thiŋgi*
 I-Nom he go-Inf stopped
 'I stopped him going'

The crucial difference between action verbs on the one hand, and state and process verbs on the other, is that the former have a controlling argument (actor) marked by the nominative suffix as one of their core arguments. They are comparatively more complex from state and process verbs in that this controlling argument can be viewed as an increment in the valency pattern. The two are also derivationally related: the addition of the causative suffix to state and process verbs changes them (ambiguously) into corresponding action verbs (see 10.2 for details). Examples:

- (9a) *cə ɔsi ŋaŋgi*
 paper this red
 'This paper is red'
- (9b) *ey-ne cə ɔsi ŋaŋ-həlli*
 I-Nom paper this red-caused
 'I made (colored) this paper red'
- (10a) *layrik ɔsi cak-i*
 book this burnt
 'This book burnt'
- (10b) *ey-ne layrik ɔsi cak-həlli*
 I-Nom book this burn-caused
 'I burnt this book'

There are also several instances in which a state or a process verb can be used ambiguously either as a verb or a process verb or as an action verb. There would be a theme that gets characterized or affected in the former case, whereas in the latter case, there would be an actor who performs an action.

ca: e: mecin tumm
 this tip pointed
 'This stick is pointed (by its tip)'

ey-no coy e: mecin tumm
 I-Nom stick this tip pointed
 'I made this stick pointed (by its tip)'

phi-gi mecu olli
 cloth-Gen color changed
 'The color of the cloth changed'

ey-no phi-gi mecu(olli)
 I Nom cloth-Gen color changed
 'I changed the color of the cloth'

It may be noted here that the distinction between these two types of verbs (actions and non-actions) remains one of volitionality or control and not of transitivity, in spite of the fact that action verbs generally have two or more arguments in their valency pattern whereas non-action verbs (states and processes, especially states) frequently occur with a single argument. We have discussed this point in detail in an earlier chapter (see 4.4).

2.2 Valency patterns of state verbs

Mein divide state verbs into three main groups as follows

- Group I: State verbs which occur with a theme only as their core argument.
- Group II: State verbs which occur with a theme and a location (with reference to which the characterization holds), and
- Group III: State verbs which require a nominalized clause to occur as one of their arguments.

In addition to state verbs belonging to these three main groups, there are a few additional ones such as a small set of three verbs which relate two different noun phrases, and a few of group II which take a theme and a beneficiary. Details regarding the use of these verbs are given below.

2.2.1 Group I state verbs

The following is a sample list of state verbs which take only a theme (which is unmarked for case) as their argument. Most of these verbs translate as adjectives and have the function of characterizing their theme:

mu	'be black'	gow	'be white'
lu	'be deep'	ten	'be scared'
thum	'be sweet'	haw	'be loud'
kop	'be dented'	waw	'be dirty'

ham	'be hollow'	cik	'be calm'
nan	'be smooth'	nəv	'be muddy'
khuy	'be narrow'	səŋ	'be unripe'
kəŋ	'be dry'	li	'be old'
khoy	'be bent'	nəw	'be fresh'
cot	'be wet'	pik	'be small'

Examples

- (13) ɪsɪŋ ɔsɪ ŋ-ŋi
water this cold NF_u
'This water is cold'
- (14) kəbɪ ɔsɪ nəw-wɪ
cabbage this fresh-NF_u
'This cabbage is fresh'
- (15) məhək waw-wɪ
he dirty-NF_u
'He is dirty'

9.2.2 As we have pointed out in detail elsewhere in this grammar (see 7.5) Manipun makes use of the device of noun-incorporation in order to differentiate between two or more homophonous verbal bases. The incorporated noun may function as a classifier which specifies the meaning of the verb, or as one of the arguments which occurs obligatorily with the verb, i.e. an argument which cannot be left unspecified in the sentence. The distinction between the two, however, is not very clear-cut.

The following is a sample list of state verbs which occur with such incorporated nouns

səm phà	'dishevelled (by hair)'
məsa pa	'thin (by body)'
məwəŋ tum	'round (by shape)'
məməŋ tən	'costly (in price)'
thəbək su	'bussy (in work)'
cək lam	'hungry (for food)'
məcu mək	'dim (in color)'

Examples

(i) Used as a classifier noun

- (16) məhək səl lɪk-ɪ
he money stingy-NF_u
'He is stingy'
- (17) u ɔsɪ mənə pʊŋŋɪ
tree this leaf leafy
'This tree is leafy'

(ii) Used as an obligatory argument

- (18) məhək məkhwəŋ cəŋŋɪ
he waist thin
'He is thin (at the) waist'

- 12.1) mahak thobok cilli
he work busy
'He is busy (with) work'

In the case of the latter type of verbs, the incorporated argument may optionally occur with the case or nominative case suffix, in which case the noun functions more clearly as an independent argument (location or instrument). It is also possible for the characterized argument (i.e. the theme of the verb) to occur in the genitive, in which case the incorporated noun shifts to the position of the theme examples

- 12.2) mahak mit seppi
he eye oblique
'He is oblique (in the eye)'

- 12.3) mahak mit-to seppi
he eye-Loc oblique
'He is oblique in the eye'

- 12.4) mahak-ki mit seppi
he-Gen eye oblique
'His eye is oblique'

- 12.5) mahak mekhon meggi
he voice soft
'He is soft (in his voice)'

- 12.6) mahak mekhon-ne meggi
he voice-Nom soft
'He is soft by his voice'

- 12.7) mahak-ki mekhon meggi
he Gen voice soft
'His voice is soft'

12.8 Some of the state verbs may optionally take a locative argument in which case the argument would indicate the person who experiences the relevant characteristic in the object or individual under consideration. In some of these cases, the experiencer may occur without a case suffix. The following is a sample of state verbs of this type:

caw	'big'	ngng	'red'
nem	'low'	sa	'hot'
wan	'tall'	haw	'tasty'
yam	'many'		

This set is related to the one to be given later (see 9.2.5) in which the locative argument appears to be part of the core meaning. Examples:

- 12.9) saba! esi wanni
bicycle this high
'This bicycle is high'

(22b) saykel esi eygon-de wanni
bicycle this I-Loc high
'This bicycle is high for me'

(23a) mesi eygon-de say
this I-Loc hot
'This is hot for me'

(23b) mesi ey say
this I hot
'I (find) this hot'

There is an interesting use of the locative argument in the case of state verbs like *pəp* 'foolish'; by using the pronoun *ey* 'I' in the locative, the speaker can indicate that the characterization is true in his opinion. Example.

(24a) məhak eygon-de pəŋgi
he I-Loc foolish
'He is foolish in my opinion'

(24b) mədu eygon-de-di yammi
that I-Loc much
'That is too much in my opinion'

(24c) potyom esi eygon-de-di kilo tərə lum-gen
bundle this I-Loc kilo ten heavy-Fu
'This bundle will weigh ten kilos in my opinion'

Some of the state verbs which denote a quantity take a quantifying argument for denoting the measurement by which the quantity is being specified. Examples:

(25a) ləphoy esi eygon-de helli
banana this I-Loc much
'This banana is too much for me'

(25b) ləphoy esi məŋa helli
banana this five much
'This banana is five in excess'

(26a) layrik esi lummi
book this heavy
'This book is heavy'

(26b) layrik esi kilo ɔmə lummi
book this kilo one heavy
'This book weighs one kilo'

9.2.4 Some of the state verbs belonging to this first group may optionally take a nominalized clause in order to indicate an event with reference to which an object exhibits the relevant characteristic. The

Manipuri Grammar

A nominalized clause may be replaced by a nominal in which case the experiencer would be used in the genitive for denoting the possessor of the characterized object. Examples

phunt asi colli
shirt this long
'This shirt is long'

mehak na phunt lit-po colli
he Nom shirt wear-Inf long
'He is long in wearing the shirt'

mehak ki phurit khulit colli
he Gen shirt wearing long
'His (way of) wearing the shirt is long'

mehak senngi
he clean
'He is clean'

mehak-na way sit-po senngi
he Nom rubbish sweep-Inf clean
'He is clean in sweeping the rubbish'

mehak-ki way khusit senngi
he Gen rubbish sweeping clean
'His (way of) sweeping the rubbish is clean'

The following is a sample list of state verbs which allow a nominalized clause or a nominal to be put in this fashion:

nən	'harsh'	kam	'dirty (in habits)'
siŋ	'clever'	nan	'clean'
ten	'idle'	mot	'dirty'
thin	'retarded'	soŋ	'weak'
cop	'selfish'	yaŋ	'light (not heavy)'
poŋ	'foolish'	thi	'ugly'
khot	'rash'	kaw	'short (shirt)'

Some of the state verbs which denote human properties allow a nominalized clause in the locative to be used with them in order to denote the action or event in which the person (theme) experiences the altered state. The following are some of the verbs of this type:

üy	'drowsy'	khot	'naughty'
phen	'showy'	nen	'harsh'
poŋ	'puffed up'	siŋ	'clever'
gaw	'mad'	cop	'selfish, ashamed'
phaw	'famous'	ke	'obstinate (child)'
nən	'humble'		

Examples

- (29) məhak wa ɲaŋ-bə-də nɔlli
 he word speak-Inf-Loc humble
 'He is humble in speaking'
- (30) məhak cak ca-bə-də coppɪ
 he food eat-Inf-Loc selfish
 'He is selfish in eating food'

9.2.5 Group II state verbs

State verbs belonging to the second group indicate, semantically (i) prepositional relationships between a theme (unmarked) and a location (occurring in the locative), or (ii) a theme and a beneficiary (occurring in the genitive). Examples:

- (31) cɔy əsi təbəl-də phey
 stick this table-Loc horizontal
 'This stick is horizontal to the table'
- (32a) mɛdu təbəl-lom-də lappɪ
 that table-towards-Loc far
 'That is far towards the table'
- (32b) mɛdu təbəl-də-ɣɪ lappɪ
 that table-Loc-Gen far
 'That is far from the table'
- (33) lɛmbɪ əmɔ ɔykhoy əni-ɣɪ yum-də khɛlli
 road one we two-Gen house-Loc between
 'There is a road in between our two houses'
- (34) cak əsi əy-ɣɪ-dɪ ɔk-ɪ
 rice this I-Gen-Emph sufficient-NFu
 'This rice is sufficient for me'

The following is a sample list of state verbs of the above type. Notice that the verb *ɔk* 'sufficient' occurs in both these sets

(i) With a locative argument:

khən	'in between'	taŋ	'dependent'
thap	'far away'	ɔk	'sufficient'
lap	'far'	pək	'suitable'
nək	'near'	hup	'together (against someone)'
phey	'horizontal'	nin	'humble'
yug	'vertical'	non	'on or above'

(ii) with a genitive argument

ɔk	'sufficient'	cəŋ	'need'
ika	'ashamed of'		

2.5 Group III state verbs

Verbs of the third group mentioned above are mainly of two different types, namely (i) verbs with an adverbial meaning which take a nominalized clause or a nominal as their theme, and (ii) verbs with a descriptive meaning which take a theme and a nominalized clause as their arguments. The following is a list of state verbs that belong to the first type:

tep	'slow'	nen	'early'
mön	'very slow'	then	'late'
yan	'fast'	nen	'in time'
thu	'quick'	ney	'recent'
toy	'frequent'	nöw	'just now'
pet	'excessive'	kön	'last'
san	'long'	kuy	'a long time'
cum	'correct'	lay	'easy'
lan	'incorrect'	lò	'difficult'
gay	'just, only'	san	'far away'

These verbs generally take a nominalized (infinitive) clause as their argument. The clause may be preceded by a nominal in some cases. Some of them can also occur with a noun with or without the relative that denotes the event with reference to which the state verb holds. Notice, however, that in this case, there would always be an implied event. Examples:

1. mahak-ne thew-he toppi
he-Nom drive-Inf slow
'His driving is slow'
2. mahak-ki khuthew toppi
he-Gen driving slow
'His way of driving is slow'
3. ghen öst toppi
clock this slow
'This clock is slow (in running)'
4. mahak-ne höymew löw-khet-pö kolli
he-Nom mango pick-up-Inf last
'He is the last in picking up the mango'
5. mahak-ki lekcor-ne kolli
he-Gen lecture-Nom last
'His lecture is the last one'
6. mahak-ne kolli
he-Nom last
'He is the last one'

The following is a sample list of verbs belonging to the second type:

hav	'skilled'	da	'appear'
khəŋ	'know'	man	'appear'
paɪn	'like'	oy	'possible (neg)'
nom	'able to'	ya	'possible'
thəne	'believe'	ta	'ought to'
ciŋne	'doubt'		

Verbs of this type generally occur with a theme that the verb characterizes, and a nominalized clause that denotes an event with reference to which the characterization holds; however, some of them may have a nominal or a noun for representing the latter argument, and some may occur only with a theme. Examples:

- (37) məhak cət-pə əy khəŋgi
he go-Inf I know
'I know of his going'
- (38a) əy cət-pə hav
I walk-Inf skilled
'I can walk (know how to walk)'
- (38b) məhak layɪk həy
he book skilled
'He is educated'
- (38c) məhak həy
he skilled
'He is skilful'

The verb *ov* 'possible' differs from *va* 'posible' in that the former occurs only with the negative suffix *te*. Examples:

- (39) thəhək əsi oy-te
work this possible-Neg
'This work is not possible'
- (40) məhak lak-pə vay
he come-Inf possible
'He might come'

9.2.7 There are three additional verbs, namely *ov* 'be the characteristic', *man* 'be similar' and *su* 'be the number', which relate the referents of two different noun phrases, both of which occur unmarked for case; we may regard these as copulative verbs. Examples:

- (41) məhak oja ov
he teacher is
'He is a teacher'
- (42) məhak mə-pa malli
he he-father similar
'He is similar to his father'

Manipuri Grammar

Valency patterns of process verbs

Process verbs are also classified into three main groups for describing the valency patterns that are observed in them as follows:

- Group I: Process verbs which occur with a theme only as their core argument.
- Group II: Process verbs which occur with a theme and a related argument which could be a patient, location, instrument, beneficiary or associate.
- Group III: Process verbs which require a nominalized clause functioning as their theme or as one which is related to its theme as one of its arguments.

Details regarding the use of these verbs are given below:

Group I process verbs

Following is a sample list of process verbs which take only a theme as their core argument:

tet	'snap off'	haw	'elapse'
pham	'curdle'	on	'change'
mun	'ripen'	nik	'shake'
pop	'swell'	sit	'blow'
cak	'burn'	tüm	'melt'
sat	'blossom'	saw	'boil'
haw	'grow'	cu	'rain'

ngon phammi
milk curdled

ngot sithi
wind blew

ngak nika
he trembled

There are a few process verbs which take an obligatory classifier noun in addition to the theme undergoes the process; as we have pointed out elsewhere in this grammar (7.5) the function of these classifier nouns is primarily to disambiguate the verbs from other homophonous verbs. Examples:

as meñ meñi
I dream dreamt
'I dreamt'

haw meñ say
mango blossom blossomed
'The mango blossomed'

lampak isig pay
ground water flooded
'The ground flooded (with water)'

9.3.2 Group II process verbs

Process verbs belonging to the second group occur with a theme which is accompanied by a patient, location or instrument. The theme is unmarked for case; the patient occurs with the accusative if its referent is animate; it is unmarked otherwise; the location and instrument are in the locative and nominative respectively.

The following is a sample list of process verbs which take a theme and a patient:

u	'see'	man	'lose'
saw	'angry'	phəŋ	'get'
sin	'grudge'	təm	'be ordained'

Examples

- (49) əy ma-hu uy
I he-Acc saw
'I saw him'

- (50) əy layrik manŋɪ
I hook lost
'I lost the hook'

The locative argument occurring with process verbs of this group may be a goal, source, or a location proper. The following is a sample list of such verbs:

taw	'float (on)'	pək	'stick (to)'
yan	'hang (from)'	then	'touch'
tu	'fall (to)'	net	'trample'
ken	'fall (from)'	thu	'get trapped'
pn	'lose (as in a game)'	on	'roll (on)'
len	'move (to)'	khay	'get grounded'

Examples

- (51) əy-ne manŋɪ ləm-də ləŋŋɪ
I Nomin he-towards-Loc moved
'I moved towards him'
- (52) məkhoy hoki-də poy
they hockey-Loc lost
'The lost in (the game of) hockey'
- (53) ucek laŋ-də thuy
bird net-Loc trapped
'The bird got trapped in the net'

The instrument occurring with verbs of this group may denote the cause, material, or the instrument proper that is involved in the process under consideration. The following are some of the verbs of this type:

pək	'burn'	tek	'break (branch)'
ləw	'entangle'	phùn	'fill (hole)'
pon	'entangle'	si	'die'

Examples:

- (6d) mehak kensor-ne si
he cancer-Nom died
'He died of cancer'

- (7c) mekhun esi leytak-ne pulli
hole this mud-Nom filled
'This hole got filled with mud'

There are a few verbs like *pok* 'beget', *sok* 'deteriorate', *lein* 'be left over' and *cik* 'pain' which take a beneficiary in the genitive along with the theme: the beneficiary may also occur unmarked. Examples:

- (6a) oja-gi meca ome pok-i
teacher-Gen child one beget
'A child is born for the teacher'

- (6b) oja meca ome pok-i
teacher child one beget
'The teacher beget a child'

- (7a) mehak-ki phibem sok-i
he-Gen condition deteriorated
'His condition deteriorated'

- (7b) mehak phibem sok-i
he condition deteriorated
'He deteriorated (in his) condition'

The verb *ya* 'agree' takes an associate with the conjunct suffix *go* as the second argument. This second argument may also occur as a patient in the accusative. Examples:

- (8a) ey ma-go yay
I he-Conj agree
'I agree with him'

- (8b) ey ma-bu yay
I he-Acc agree
'I agree (with) him'

13.3 Group III process verbs

Process verbs of the third group, which take a nominalized clause as their argument, mainly denote spectral meanings as in the case of the following set of verbs:

lot	'almost stop'	khok	'stop (bleeding)'
pho	'stop being something'	loy	'be over, finished'
lep	'stop (due to interference)'		

Examples:

- (59) i thok-pe l-u-le
 blond bleed-Inf (almost) stop-Perf
 'The bleeding has almost stopped'
- (60) u-si caw-be lep-pe
 tree-this grow-Inf stop-Perf
 'This tree has stopped growing' (due to some interference)

There are also a few process verbs, such as the following, denoting human experiences which take a theme and a nominalized clause (in the locative) as their arguments.

kaw	'forget'	khəŋ	'be taken aback'
khaŋ	'endure'	ŋək	'be surprised'
pen	'be satisfied'		

Examples:

- (61) nəhak-ne təw-bə-de məhak pelli
 you-Nom do-Inf-Loc he satisfied
 'He is satisfied with what you have done'
- (62) wa-du ta-bə-de məhak khəŋgi
 word-that hear-Inf-Loc he taken (aback)
 'He was taken aback on hearing that report'

9.4 Valency patterns of action verbs

We may classify action verbs into five main groups as shown below in order to facilitate the description of their valency patterns:

Group I:	Action verbs with an actor only
Group II:	Action verbs with an actor and a patient
Group III:	Action verbs with an actor and a location
Group IV:	Action verbs with an actor, patient and a location
Group V:	Action verbs which require a nominalized clause

9.4.1 Group I action verbs

Action verbs of Manipuri are generally used as affecting a patient or taking place with reference to a location; there are very few verbs, such as the following, which occur without either an accompanying affected argument or a locational argument. Notice, further, that all action verbs involve an actor in the nominative as one of their core arguments.

kəp	'weep'	ŋəŋ	'roar, bark'
laŋ	'make noise'	khəŋ	'cry (non-human)'

Examples:

- (63) məhak-ne kəŋpi
 he-Nom wept
 'He wept'

Manipuri Grammar

ɬɛn na nɛnnɪ
 ɬɛn Nɛm barked
 The dog barked

There are some verbs, however, like the following, which are ambiguous between (i) actions that take an actor as argument and (ii) actions that take an actor and a patient

un	'spin'	yow	'reach'
len	'move'	yan	'hang'
lay	'turn'	pay	'fly'
on	'roll'	pun	'assemble'

ɬɛn na nɛnnɪ-ɬɛn-dɔɪ lɛnnɪ
 ɬɛn-ɬɛn towards-LOC moved
 'I moved (towards him)'

ɬɛn na tebaɪ lɛnnɪ
 ɬɛn Nɛm table moved
 'I moved the table'

Some of these verbs like *lay* 'turn', *on* 'roll', *len* 'move' and *un* 'spin' can also occur ambiguously as prepositional phrases or as actions, as can be seen in the following pair of sentences

ɬɛn tebaɪ lɛnnɪ
 ɬɛn table moved

ɬɛn tebaɪ na tebaɪ lɛnnɪ
 ɬɛn Nɛm table moved
 'I moved the table'

2 Group II action verbs

Verbs of the second group occur with an actor and a patient, with the action being regarded as being done to the patient. The actor would be marked by the nominative suffix *no* and the patient, if animate, by the accusative suffix *ba*; inanimate patients are generally left unmarked, but when under emphasis, they should be marked by the accusative suffix. The actions that such verbs denote are of the following

tha	'cut'	ki	'tie'
ɬov	'pound'	lon	'knit'
khek	'peel'	tu	'stretch'
tok	'grind'	khen	'build'
phok	'pull out'	nan	'cook'
ɬɛn	'squeeze'	ɬk	'hake'
ɬɛn	'wash'	phut	'boil'
ɬɛn	'search'	hit	'put on'
ɬɛn	'wrap'	up	'wear (cap)'
ɬɛn	'carry (load)'	thok	'drink'

	thow təw	'drive' 'do'	yot ca	'swallow' 'eat'
(iii)	hat pha tan	'kill' 'arrest' 'drive (cattle)'	yok sum lat	'rear up' 'put to sleep' 'worship'

Examples

- (67) puiis-na tomhe-hu phav
 police-Nom Tomba-Acc arrested
 'The police arrested Tomba'

- (68) əy-ne ma-bu ki
 I-Nom he-Acc tied
 'I tied him'

- (69) əy-ne phunt lili
 I-Nom shirt put on
 'I put on a shirt'

- (70) ny na ɬɬɨŋ thək-i
 I-Nom water drank
 'I drank water'

The second argument of several of these verbs shows an alternation between patient and location, that is, these verbs allow the object (or individual) concerned to be viewed either (i) as one that is being affected by the action, or (ii) as one that is the location (goal, source or location proper) of that action. The following is a sample list of verbs of this nature:

(i)	təy	'smear'	kək	'cut'
	nan	'rub'	hək	'cut, engrave'
	nəv	'press (body)'	khet	'scrape'
	kup	'cover'	sɨ	'pound'
	cik	'bite'	təw	'dig'
	thin	'pierce'	khot	'scratch'
	wav	'gore'	kaw	'kick'
	yəy	'strike'	phu	'beat'
(ii)	lon	'embrace'	nok	'laugh (at)'
	yeŋ	'look (at)'	koy	'woo'
	kham	'mediate'		

Examples

- (71a) huy-ne ma-bu cik-i
 dog-Nom he-Acc bit
 'The dog bit him'

- (71b) huy-ne maŋon-de cik-i
 dog-Nom he-Loc bit
 'The dog bit (on) him'

- (121) əv-nə ce kək-i
I Nom paper cut
'I cut the paper'
- (122) əv-nə ce-de kək-i
I-Nom paper-Loc cut
'I cut (on) the paper'
- (123) əv-nə mə-bu yəŋgi
I Nom he-Acc looked
'I looked (at) him'
- (124) əv-nə mənən-de yəŋgi
I Nom he-Loc looked
'I looked at him'

The verb *ɲay* 'wait' is rather exceptional in that it takes either a patient (in the accusative) or a beneficiary (in the genitive) as its second argument. Examples:

- (125) əv-nə mə-bu ɲay
I Nom he-Acc waited
'I waited (for) him'
- (126) əv-nə mənən-de ɲay
I Nom he-Loc waited
'I waited for him'

There are a few verbs like the following which allow the instrument (a non-core argument) to be used as the patient. In such a usage, the original patient would be viewed as a location (and used with the locative suffix).

kup	'cover'	nəm	'press'
nan	'rub'	tha	'pave'
təy	'smear'	pan	'yoke'
taw	'dig'		

Example:

- (127) əv-nə thaw-nə khut nalli
I Nom oil-Nom hand rubbed
'I rubbed the hand with oil'
- (128) əv-nə khut-de thaw nalli
I Nom hand-Loc oil rubbed
'I rubbed oil on the hand'
- (129) əv-nə nuy-nə lamhi thay
I-Nom stone-Nom road paved
'I paved the road with stone'

- (76b) *øy-ne læmbi-də nuŋ thay*
 I-Nom road-Loc stone paved
 'I paved the stone on the road'

In contrast to this, there are some other verbs, like the following, which allow a specific instrument to be used as the patient, with the original patient being left unspecified; that is, these verbs do not shift the original patient to the position of location as in the previous cases:

verb		instrument	
khay	'saw'	horay	'a saw'
tək	'gnnd'	cəkri	'grnder'
lon	'knit'	kata	'knitting needle'
han	'pump'	pəm	'a pump'
khon	'fish'	løn	'fishing basket'
thək	'drink'	glas	'glass'
təw	'dig'	yotpak	'spade'
hat	'comb'	səmcet	'a comb'
tha	'cut'	thəŋ	'knife'

Examples:

- (77a) *øy-ne səmcet-ne səm hatli*
 I-Nom comb-Nom hair combed
 'I combed the hair with a comb'

- (77b) *øy-ne səmcet hatli*
 I-Nom comb combed'
 'I combed (with) a comb'

- (78a) *øy-ne løn-ne ŋa kholli*
 I-Nom basket-Nom fish fished
 'I fished with a fishing basket'

- (78b) *øy-ne løn kholli*
 I-Nom basket fished
 'I fished (with) a fishing basket'

9.4.3 Group III action verbs

Action verbs belonging to the third group take an actor and a location. The following is a sample list of verbs which belong to this group:

phəm	'sit'	ma	'grope'
lep	'stand'	lak	'come'
pən	'stay'	cen	'run'
tum	'sleep'	lam	'reach out'
hup	'lie down'	koy	'wander'

Examples:

- (79) *øy-ne tebel-də leppi*
 I-Nom table-Loc stood
 'I stood on the table'

- (p0) eɣ-ne bojar-de lak-i
 1-Nom market-Loc came
 'I came to the market'

Some of the verbs of this group, like the following, are ambiguous between transitive and intransitive usages

yet	'coil'	up	'lie (face down)'
ŋa	'lean'	log	'lie (on back)'

Examples:

- (81a) lin-ne u-de yetli
 snake-Nom tree-Loc coiled
 'The snake coiled around the tree'

- (81b) eɣ-ne u-de thewri yetli
 1-Nom tree-Loc rope coiled
 'I coiled the rope around the tree'

Some others, like the following, allow the location to be optionally viewed as a patient.

cat	'go'	kan	'step over'
cij	'descend'	ɣhaw	'pass through'
ka	'climb'	cag	'enter'
hit	'crawl'	coŋ	'jump'

Examples:

- (82a) eɣ-ne bojar-de cotli
 1-Nom market-Loc went
 'I went to the market'

- (82b) eɣ-ne bojar cotli
 1-Nom market went
 'I went (to the) market'

- (83a) eɣ-ne khonban-de coŋgi
 1-Nom ditch-Loc jumped
 'I jumped (over) the ditch'

- (83b) eɣ-ne khonban coŋgi
 1-Nom ditch jumped
 'I jumped the ditch'

9.4.4 Group IV Action verbs

Action verbs of the fourth group take a patient as well as a location (along with the actor); these are of several different types. For example, their patient may be inanimate as in (i), or animate as in (ii); their location may also be animate (recipient or experiencer) as in (iii).

(i)	thom khin sin hay	'place' 'place (pot)' 'spread' 'pour'	phoy pay tig phow	'put across' 'pile up' 'stretch' 'expose (to sun)'
(ii)	thin	'escort'	pon	'seat'
(iii)	hu sân yon sig	'steal' 'hire (to)' 'sell' 'repay'	pu ket ut li	'borrow (money)' 'offer' 'show' 'narrate'

Examples:

- (84) ey-ne tabel-de layrik thommi
I-Nom table-Loc book placed
'I placed the book on the table'
- (85) ey-ne ma-bu skul-de thilli
I-Nom he-Acc school-Loc escorted
'I escorted him to the school'
- (86) ey-ne manon-de wari li
I-Nom he-Loc story narrated
'I narrated him a story'

The locative may also be one of several different types that are translatable with prepositions like 'from', 'to', 'in', 'on', 'above', 'under', 'around', etc. As we have pointed out in an earlier chapter (see 6.6.2), Manipuri uses the locative suffix as the general marker for all these different types of locations, but there are additional markers that can be employed along with it when it is necessary to specify the exact type of location involved. Examples:

- (87a) ey-ne manon-da layrik way
I-Nom he-Loc book borrowed
'I borrowed a book (from) him'
- (87b) ey-ne manon-da-gi layrik way
I-Nom he-Loc-Gen book borrowed
'I borrowed a book from him'
- (88a) mehak leymay-de tuy
he floor-Loc fell
'He fell to the floor'
- (88b) mehak leymay-rom-de tuy
he floor-on-Loc fell
'He fell onto the floor'

In the case of a set of verbs of the following type, however, the location can optionally be used as a patient, with the original (inanimate) patient apparently functioning as a theme.

tak	'teach'	tha	'send'
i	'write'	ju	'give'
in	'feed'	yen	'discover'
hap	'serve food'	thag	'contribute (money)'
huk	'garland'	thön	'give share'

Examples

- (89a) ey-ne magen-do cak happi
I-Nom he-Loc food served
'I served food to him'

- (89b) ey-ne ma-bu cak happi
I-Nom he-Acc food served
'I served him food'

- (90a) ey-ne magen-do cithi i
I-Nom he-Loc letter wrote
'I wrote a letter to him'

- (90b) ey-ne ma-bu cithi i
I-Nom he-Acc letter wrote
'I wrote him a letter'

It may be noted here that some of the action verbs are used obligatorily with a classifier or specifier noun in order to disambiguate them from other homophonous verbs; we have described this usage as involving a syntactic process called 'noun incorporation' (see 7.5). Action verbs that shift their location to the position of a patient and the original patient to the position of a theme (mentioned above) are rather similar to these verbs with incorporated nouns. Examples:

- (91) ey-ne yensan mahaw tonggi
I-Nom curry taste tasted
'I tasted (the taste of) the curry'
- ey-ne ka way sitti
I-Nom room rubbish swept
'I swept the room (of its rubbish)'

Some verbs, like the following, allow their patients to occur as an instrument (i.e. with the nominative suffix *na*), but the location continues to occur with the locative suffix.

khik	'sprinkle'	thet	'attach, paste'
cay	'sprinkle (over a wide area)'	pan	'yoke'

Examples

- (92a) ey-ne pambi-do isig khiki
I-Nom plant-Loc water sprinkled
'I sprinkled water over the plant'

- (92b) ey-ne isig-na pambi-do khiki

I-Nom water-Nom plant-Loc sprinkled
'I sprinkled (over the) plant with water'

- (94a) *ey-ne phaklag-de ce thetli*
I-Nom wall-Loc paper pasted
'I pasted paper to the wall'
- (94b) *ey-ne ce-ne phaklag-de thetli*
I-Nom paper-Nom wall-Loc pasted
'I pasted (to the) wall with paper'

In the case of two verbs, namely *lek* 'lick' and *cup* 'suck', the location may occur as the patient, but the original patient would be left unspecified in such a usage. The location may also be specified as the source with the genitive suffix. Examples:

- (95a) *ey-ne khudombi-da-gi khayhi lek-i*
I-Nom finger-Loc-Gen honey licked
'I licked honey from the finger'
- (95b) *ey-ne khudombi-da khayhi lek-i*
I-Nom finger-Loc honey licked
'I licked honey (from) the finger'
- (95c) *ey-ne khudombi lek-i*
I-Nom finger licked
'I licked the finger'

Action verbs occurring with a patient can optionally occur with an instrument (non-core argument) and also a non-core location. The following sentences exemplify these usages:

- (96a) *ey-ne egay poy*
I-Nom baby carried (on the back)
'I carried the baby (on my back)'
- (96b) *ey-ne egay nahon-na poy*
I-Nom baby baby-cloth-Nom carried
'I carried the baby (on my back) with a baby-cloth'
- (97a) *mehak-ne uku phaki*
he-Nom bark pulled
'He pulled out the bark'
- (97b) *mehak-ne thag-ne u-de-gi uku phaki*
he-Nom knife-Nom tree-Loc-Gen bark pulled
'He pulled out the bark from the tree with a knife'

In the case of verbs of the following type, however, the same argument can occur either as the instrument or a location:

pu	'carry'	pheng	'sharpen'
cām	'wash'	sei	'tear off'
sa	'weave'	sum	'squeeze'
ca	'eat'	pun	'fasten'
thog	'cook'	khok	'peel'
say	'chew'	gaw	'fry'

Examples

(9a) əy-ne thaw-na ɳa ɳəw-wi
1-Nom oil-Nom fish fried
'I fried fish with oil'

(9b) əy-ne thaw-de ɳa ɳəw-wi
1-Nom oil-Loc fish fried
'I fried fish in oil'

(9c) əy-ne khut-ne cak cay
1-Nom hand-Nom food ate
'I ate food with hand'

(9d) əy-ne khut-te cak cay
1-Nom hand-Loc food ate
'I ate food on the hand'

5.4.5 Group V action verbs

Action verbs which take a nominalized clause (with an infinitive verb) as one of their arguments are mainly aspectual in their meaning: they are of two types: (i) verbs that have an actor which is coreferential with the actor or theme of the nominalized clause, and (ii) verbs which have the two as non-coreferential. In addition to these, there are also some non-aspectual verbs in this group. Most of these verbs can occur with the corresponding derived nominal as well (i.e. instead of the nominalized clause), but the nominal has to denote or at least imply an event or action.

The following is a sample list of verbs which occur under these three subgroups:

(i) Verbs with coreferential actors

haw	'start'	thu	'start quickly'
tok	'stop'	lot	'almost stop'
ley	'finish'	pho	'stop being something'
pha	'complete' (used with mɔpɔŋ)	lep	'stop (due to interference)'
han	'repeat'		

(ii) Verbs with non-coreferential actors

thɔŋ	'stop (by obstructing)'	kham	'stop, dissuade'
men	'stop (leakage)'	gak	'stop (a movement)'

(iii) Verbs with non-aspectual meanings

lep	'decide'	ya	'agree'
-----	----------	----	---------

Examples:

(100a) mehak-ne cat-pe tok-i
 he-Nom walk-Inf stopped
 'He stopped walking'

(100b) mehak-ne thebek tok-i
 he-Nom work stopped
 'He stopped the work'

(101a) ey-ne ma-ne cat-pe khammi
 I-Nom he-Nom go-Inf stopped
 'I stopped him going'

(101b) ey-ne tomb-be khammi
 I-Nom Tomba-Acc stopped
 'I stopped Tomba (doing something)'

(102a) ey-ne cat-pe leppi
 I-Nom go-Inf decided
 'I decided to go'

(102b) ey-ne mehak-ki kes leppi
 I-Nom he-Gen case decided
 'I pleaded his case'

Another group of action verbs, denoting different types of utterances, take nominalized sentences that end in the complementizer *hayne* 'that' as one of their arguments. Many of these allow this argument to be replaced by one ending in the purposive form of the verb, and some allow a nominal or noun to replace it; but in this latter case, an action or event will be denoted or implied by the argument.

We may subgroup these verbs depending upon whether they take only an actor and a nominalized clause, or whether they take an additional patient or location as well.

(i) Occurring with a *hayne* clause

pen	'mention'	khən	'think'
laː	'shout'	nig	'wish'
kəp	'weep, cry'	lep	'decide'
tà	'hear'	hənə	'try'

(ii) Occurring with an additional patient or location

həy	'say'	yet	'argue'
həŋ	'ask'	ni	'request'
həy	'abuse'	ŋəŋ	'speak, advice'

Examples:

(103) ey cat-koni hayne leppi
 I go-Fu that decided
 'I decided that I will go'

- (104a) *ey-ne mahak lak-oy hayno palli*
 1-Nom he go-Neg that mentioned
 'I mentioned that he will not go'
- (104b) *ey-ne mahak lak-na-bo palli*
 1-Nom he come-Pur-Inf mentioned
 'I mentioned (reported) so that he would come'
- (105a) *ax-ne manon-de layrik pi-yu hayno ni*
 1-Nom he-Loc book give-imp that requested
 'I requested that (he) give a book (to me)'
- (105b) *ax-ne manon-de layrik pi-na-bo ni*
 1-Nom he-Loc book give-Pur-Inf requested
 'I requested (to) him to give a book (to me)'
- (106a) *ax-ne manon-de layrik ni*
 1-Nom he-Loc book requested
 'I requested (him) a book'
- (106b) *a-na ma-bu ca-na-bo hay*
 1-Nom he-Acc eat-pur-Inf asked
 'I asked him to eat'

We have described the use of these action verbs (occurring with nominalized clauses as arguments) in greater detail in a separate chapter (see 13.3.1).

9.5 Non-core arguments

In addition to the core arguments described in the previous sections, sentences in Manipuri can also contain non-core arguments like an instrument, associate, beneficiary, cause and reason. They can also contain adjuncts like those of place and time which are nominal rather than verbal (involving case suffixes) and behave like other arguments. The use of these non-core arguments is generally unconstrained by the semantic classification of verbal bases. We have described the nature of these arguments in detail in the sixth chapter.

9.6 Variations in valency patterns

Valency patterns of verbs show two different types of variations in Manipuri. As we point out in detail in the next chapter, the use of certain suffixes like the causative, benefactive, reflexive and reciprocal has the effect of either increasing or reducing the set of arguments that occur with verbs. These variations in the valency patterns, called 'valency alternations' result from changes in the form as well as the meaning of verbal bases.

Verbal bases of Manipuri show another kind of variation in their valency pattern which, unlike the previous one, is not dependent upon any variation or change in the form of verbs: the verbs remain as they are, but the speaker is allowed to have the freedom of choosing one or the other of the set of valency patterns that are associated with the verbs. We have described several such alternative valency patterns that are associated with different types of verbs in the previous sections.

It must be noted here that the case suffixes of Manipuri are directly associated with semantic relations. Their use with any given argument in a sentence can be shown to represent the specific semantic relation that they denote. For example, the use of the nominative, in contrast to that of the accusative, clearly denotes that the individual or object concerned has some kind of control over the action or process. It may be the doer, causer, instrument, means, reason or cause. The use of the accusative, on the other hand, indicates that the individual concerned has no control over the action or process that is reported to affect it.

Similarly, the use of the locative suffix indicates that the individual or object functions as some kind of location for the action, process or state. We have described this interesting aspect of the use of Manipuri case suffixes in detail in the sixth chapter.

It is this particular characteristic of Manipuri case suffixes which forms the basis of the variation that occurs in the valency patterns of verbs that we have mentioned above. While using a given argument, a speaker has the freedom to choose any of the case suffixes depending upon the semantic relation that he wants to ascribe to that participant. The constraint that the verb imposes upon this choice is only that the semantic relation must be derivable from its lexical meaning. That is, the use of case suffixes in this language is not a grammaticalized one.

Such variations are shown primarily by action verbs, apparently because the valency patterns of these verbs are comparatively more complex than those of state and process verbs, and hence there is more scope for making alternative choices. The variations involve alternative choices like the ascription of a location relation rather than that of a patient relation (see 9.4.2) and vice versa (9.4.3), instrument relation rather than that of a patient relation (9.4.2), and location relation rather than instrument relation (9.4.4). Notice that in all these cases the alternative choices need to be allowed by the meaning of the verbs concerned.

Another interesting type of variation shown by the valency patterns of verbs in this language concerns the necessity to specify certain participants in the sentence. Manipuri generally allows any of the arguments occurring in a sentence to be left unspecified. Such non-specifications can occur either (i) in contexts in which the identity of the participant concerned is derivable from previous utterances, or (ii) in contexts in which the speaker does not desire to identify the participant. Notice that in both these types of situations the meaning of the verb does imply the relevant participant. Examples:

- (107a) *tomba-ne cak thog-ge*
 Tomba-Nom food cook-Perf
 'Tomba has cooked food'
- (107b) *cak thog-ge*
 food cook-Perf
 (i) '(Someone) has cooked food'
 (ii) 'The food has been cooked'
- (107c) *thog-ge*
 cook-Perf
 (i) '(Someone) has cooked (something)'
 (ii) '(Something) has been cooked'

Notice that Manipuri allows the core arguments of a sentence to be left unspecified in this fashion in spite of the fact that its verbs do not carry any markers that show agreement with any of the those arguments.

In addition to this non-specification of expected (and implied) participants for different reasons, the valency patterns of verbs in Manipuri also show non-specification of arguments which result from assumptions of different points of view. For example, when an instrument is viewed (and expressed) as a patient, as in the following sentence (108b), it becomes necessary to leave the original patient unspecified (see 9.4.2).

- (108a) əv-ne coLri-ne həwəy təkɪ
 1-Nom grinder-Nom bean ground
 'I ground the beans with a grinder'
- (108b) əv-ne cəkri təkɪ
 1-Nom grinder ground
 'I ground (something with) a grinder'

There are some cases, however, in which the original patient is shifted to the position of a location, as in the following example:

- (109a) əv-ne phi-ne tətəl kuppi
 1-Nom cloth-Nom table covered
 'I covered the table with cloth'
- (109b) əv-ne tətəl-de phi kuppi
 1-Nom table-Loc cloth covered
 'I covered the cloth over the table'

Chapter 10

VALENCY ALTERNATIONS

10.1 Introduction

Manipuri makes use of four different suffixes that affect the valency of verbs to which the suffixes are added. Two of them, namely the causative *hən* and the benefactive *bi*, have the effect of increasing the valency by introducing a causer and a beneficiary respectively, whereas the remaining two, namely the reflexive *je* and the reciprocal *na*, have the effect of reducing the valency by combining together two of the existing arguments.

There is also the inchoative suffix *rak* which is primarily used as a deictic suffix for denoting motion towards the speaker (after carrying out an action) (see 8.3.1); it can change state verbs into process verbs, but it does not alter their valency structure. This is also true of certain other verbal suffixes like the perfect *re* which change the meaning of state verbs without altering their valency structure.

Manipuri also allows some of its process verbs to be used as action verbs without the need to attach any suffixes to them; it also allows some of its intransitive action verbs to be used as transitive verbs in a similar fashion.

Case markers of Manipuri provide direct representations for semantic relations; one important consequence of this particular characteristic of Manipuri is that the valency structure of its verbs shows a lot of variation which depends crucially upon the possible semantic relations that can be associated with them (see 9.6). This variation gets extended to derived verbs like causatives, benefactives, reflexives, etc. also as we will be pointing out below. Notice that there is no need to make use of grammatical relations like subject and direct object while describing these valency alternations of Manipuri; the descriptions can be based purely on semantic factors.

10.2 Causative verbs

Causatives are formed in Manipuri by attaching the suffix *hən* (which is *ha* before suffixes beginning with *h*) to the verb. It has the effect of introducing an additional causer argument to the valency pattern of the verb. Since this causer argument is viewed as controlling the event that the causative verb denotes, it occurs with the nominative suffix *na*. The effect of this addition on the valency structure of action sentences is rather different from the effect it has on the valency structure of process and state verbs. We will describe these effects separately in the following two sections.

10.2.1 Causatives of action sentences

In the case of action verbs, the effect of adding the causative suffix, and of the resultant addition of a new argument in the nominative, is that the argument in the nominative occurring in the original non-causative action sentence is shifted to the patient position; the latter generally takes the accusative suffix if it is animate; otherwise it is left unmarked. Examples:

- (1a) *ma-ne cel-li*
he-Nom run-NFu
'He ran'
- (1b) *ey-ne ma-bu cel-hal-li*
I-Nom he-Acc run-Cs-NFu
'I made him run'
- (2a) *oṅaṅ-ne cak ca-y*
child-Nom rice eat-NFu
'The child ate rice'
- (2b) *mama-ne oṅaṅ-bu cak ca-hal-li*
mother-Nom child-Acc rice eat-Cs-NFu
'Mother made the child eat rice'

Notice that the causative sentences (1b, 2b) differ from the corresponding non-causative sentences (1a, 2a) in having an additional causer argument which occurs with the nominative suffix *na*. The argument occurring with the nominative suffix in the corresponding non-causative sentence is used with the accusative suffix: that is, these latter arguments are viewed primarily as 'affected' arguments of the causative verb; other arguments of the sentence remain unchanged as far as their case markers are concerned.

Notice further that in the case of both these sentences, addition of the causative suffix has the effect of introducing only a 'non-contactive' causer to the sentence. That is, the action concerned is being performed by the original actor of these sentences. This is true of intransitive sentences like (1a) which do not contain any patient: the addition of the causative suffix does not change them into regular transitive sentences, but instead into causative sentences with a non-contactive causative meaning.

Manipuri makes use of certain other devices (like using a suppletive form or using the benefactive suffix) in order to change intransitive action verbs into simple transitive (contactive causative) action verbs. It does not have any regular morphological process for expressing this distinction.

For example, in the case of several verbs, Manipuri uses distinct lexical items (suppletive forms) for denoting 'intransitive' and 'transitive' actions. The following is a sample list of verbs of this nature:

Intransitive verbs

<i>ca</i>	'cat'
<i>cen</i>	'run'
<i>phem</i>	'sit'
<i>tum</i>	'sleep'
<i>tom</i>	'learn'
<i>non</i>	'rest'
<i>up</i>	'wear'
<i>cat</i>	'go'
<i>lak</i>	'come'
<i>tok</i>	'stop'
<i>tu</i>	'fall'

Transitive verbs

<i>in</i>	'feed'
<i>tan</i>	'chase'
<i>pon</i>	'seat'
<i>sum</i>	'put to sleep'
<i>tak</i>	'teach'
<i>thom</i>	'place'
<i>thom</i>	'clothe'
<i>thin</i>	'escort'
<i>purak</i>	'bring'
<i>kham</i>	'stop someone'
<i>thado</i>	'drop'

The following pairs of sentences exemplify the use of these distinct action verbs in contrast to their causative forms:

- (3a) *tombo-ne skul-de celli*
Tomba-Nom school-Loc ran
'Tomba ran to the school'

- (3b) *ey-ne tombe-bu skul-de cel-helli*
 I-Nom Tomba-Acc school-Loc run-caused
 'I made Tomba run to the school'
- (3c) *ey-ne tombe-bu skul-de talli*
 I-Nom Tomba-Acc school-Loc chased
 'I chased Tomba to the school'
- (3d) *cawba-ne ey-bu tombe-de skul-de tal-helli*
 Chaoba-Nom I-acc Tomba-Loc school-to chase-caused
 'Chaoba made me chase Tomba to the school'

Notice that the causative of the intransitive verb *cen* 'run' does not give us a transitive (contactive causative) action verb, but rather a non-contactive causative verb as shown by (3b); there is a distinct contactive causative verb *tan* 'chase' (3c) which also has a causative of its own (3d) which is also a non-contactive causative one.

The second device used, rather irregularly, to derive contactive causatives from some of the action verbs is to add the benefactive suffix *bi* to intransitive action verbs. The following are some of the action verbs which show this intransitive-transitive distinction through the use of the benefactive suffix:

Intransitive verbs

<i>in</i>	'cover (oneself)'
<i>təm</i>	'learn'
<i>kok</i>	'shave (oneself)'
<i>iruja</i>	'bathe'
<i>lit</i>	'put on (shirt)'
<i>təy</i>	'smear (oneself)'
<i>ham</i>	'wash (one's own hand)'

Transitive verbs

<i>in-bi</i>	'cover someone'
<i>təm-bi</i>	'teach'
<i>kok-pi</i>	'shave someone'
<i>iruja-bi</i>	'bathe someone'
<i>lit-pi</i>	'dress someone'
<i>təy-bi</i>	'smear someone'
<i>ham-bi</i>	'wash someone's hand'

The following sets of sentences exemplify the distinction between the use of the benefactive *bi* on the one hand, and of the causative on the other, with these verbal bases:

- (4a) *ey-ne manipuri təm-mi*
 I-Nom Manipuri learn-NFu
 'I learnt Manipuri'
- (4b) *tombe-ne ey-bu manipuri təm-hel-li*
 Tomba-Nom I-Acc Manipuri learn-Cs-NFu
 'Tomba made me learn Manipuri'
- (4c) *tombe-ne ey-bu manipuri təm-bi*
 Tomba-Nom I-Acc Manipuri learn-Ben(NFu)
 'Tomba taught me Manipuri'
- (5a) *ey-ne kok-i*
 I-Nom shave-NFu
 'I shaved'
- (5b) *me-ne ey-bu kok-hel-li*
 he-Nom I-Acc shave-Cs-NFu
 'He made me shave'

- (11c) *temba-ne ey-bu tha u-hel-li*
 Tomba-Nom I-Acc moon see-Cs-NFu
 'Tomba made me see the moon' (contactive or non-contactive)
- (11d) *chaw-be-ne temba-bu aygon-do tha ut-hel-li*
 Chanta-Nom Tomba-Acc I-Loc moon show-Cs-NFu
 'Chowba made Tomba show the moon to me' (non-contactive only)

There is clearly some difference between the use of *u-hen* 'make someone see' as a contactive causative and *ut* 'show': the latter, being an action sentence, only gives rise to a non-contactive causative *u: hen* 'cause to show'.

Manipuri allows some of its process verbs, such as the following, to be used either as process verbs or as action verbs, without undergoing any change:

leg	'move'	on	'roll'
yan	'hang'	hen	'return'
hag	'open'	pay	'fly'
lot	'hide'	up	'lie down with face upwards'

These verbs can be used with the causative suffix either as contactive or non-contactive causatives, or as double (non-contactive) causatives, as shown in the following set of sentences:

- (12a) *ey-ne phemun-do up-pi*
 I-Nom bed-Loc lie (face down)-NFu
 'I lied face down on the bed'
- (12b) *temba-ne ey-bu phemun-do up-hel-li*
 Tomba-Nom I-Acc bed-Loc lie (face down)-Cs-NFu
 'Tomba made me lie face down on the cot'
- (12c) *ey-ne tebei-do pukhom up-pi*
 I-Nom tabel-Loc plate (of rice) place (upside down)-NFu
 'I placed the rice plate upside down on the table'
- (12d) *temba-ne ey-bu tebei-da pukhom up-hel-li*
 Tomba-Nom I-Acc table-Loc plate (rice) place-Cs-NFu
 'Tomba made me place the rice plate upside down on the table'

10.2.3 Productivity

Causativization in Manipuri is as productive as any other inflectional process; the meaning that gets associated with its usage is also quite transparent and predictable. It can occur with all types of verbs including the ones which take nominalized sentences as their arguments. Examples:

- (13a) *ey-ne ma-ne cot-pe kham-mi*
 I-Nom he-Nom go-Inf stop-NFu
 'I stopped him going'
- (13b) *temba-ne ey-bu ma-ne cot-pe kham-hel-li*
 Tomba-Nom I-Acc he-Nom go-Inf stop-Cs-NFu
 'Tomba made me stop him going'

- (14a) *ey-ne mesi talli hayno yet-ŋ*
 I-Nom this wrong that argue-NFu
 'I argued that it is wrong'
- (14b) *tombe-na ey-bu mesi lolli hayno yet-hel-li*
 Tomba-Nom I-Acc this wrong that argue-Cs-NFu
 'Tomba made me argue that it is wrong'
- (15a) *ey-ne cat-pe gam-mi*
 I-Nom go-Inf possible-NFu
 'It is possible for me to go'
- (15b) *tombe-na ey-bu cat-pe gam-hel-li*
 Tomba-Nom I-Acc go-Inf possible-Cs-NFu
 'Tomba made it possible for me to go'
- (16a) *mesi eygon-de yam-mi*
 this I-Loc much-NFu
 'This is too much for me'
- (16b) *tombe-ne mesi eygon-de yam-hel-li*
 Tomba-Nom this I-Loc much-Cs-NFu
 'Tomba caused this to be too much for me'

10.2.4 Meaning of permission

The meaning that is generally associated with the causative suffix *həl* is either contactive or non-contactive causation as we have pointed out in the previous sections. However, it is also possible to use this suffix ambiguously in some cases in order to indicate 'permission' rather than causation, as in the following sentences:

- (17) *ey-ne ma-bu uy-hel-li*
 I-Nom he-Acc see-Cs-NFu
 (i) 'I made him drowsy (by drugging)'
 (ii) 'I permitted him to be drowsy'

10.2.5 Analysing as two clauses

We have described the causative marker *həl* as a suffix because it does not occur independently as a verbal base. However, causative forms of verbs can be regarded as involving the union of two different clauses of which one is embedded in the other. This claim is supported by the following characteristics of causative sentences in Manipuri:

(i) Causative sentences generally have a causer and a causee as their minimum arguments, these two can be regarded as the arguments of the matrix clause; the latter would be coreferential with one of the arguments of the embedded clause. It can be assumed that the argument of the embedded clause gets equi-deleted when the clause is combined with a causative clause to form a causative sentence.

(ii) Irrespective of the case-markers which occur with the arguments in a causative sentence, the first two arguments belong to the causative clause; that is, the first argument is generally the nominative and is the causer of the sentence, and the second one, occurring in the accusative, locative or in the unmarked form, is the causee.

10.2.6 Distinctions in the causee

Since the causer is invariably the controller of the caused event, it occurs in the nominative. The causee, however, can be (i) an affected animate being, in which case it would occur in the accusative, (ii) an affected inanimate being, in which case it would be unmarked for case, or (iii) a location (goal, source, experiencer or recipient) for the event, in which case it would occur in the locative.

The affected causee is inanimate in the following sentences, and is therefore left unmarked for case:

- (18) *ey-ne leyrik odu cak-hal-li*
 I-Nom book that burn-Cs-NFu
 'I burnt that book'
 (19) 'I caused that book to burn'
- (19i) *ey-ne isig saw-hal-li*
 I-Nom water boil-Cs-NFu
 'I boiled the water'
 (19ii) 'I caused the water to boil'

The following pairs of sentences exemplify the contrast between an affected animate causee, and a causee which is only being viewed as the location of the event:

- (20a) *ma-ne ey-bu tombo-do kaw-hal-li*
 he-Nom I-Acc Tomba-Loc kick-Cs-NFu
 'He made me kick Tomba'
- (20b) *ma-ne eygon-do tombo-bu kaw-hal-li*
 he-Nom I-Loc Tomba-Acc kick-Cs-NFu
 'He caused me to kick Tomba'
- (21a) *ma-ne ey-bu isey sok-hal-li*
 he-Nom I-Acc song sing-Cs-NFu
 'He made me sing a song'
- (21b) *ma-ne eygon-do isey sok-hal-li*
 he-Nom I-Loc song sing-Cs-NFu
 'He caused me to sing a song'
- (22a) *ma-ne ey-bu kop-hal-li*
 he-Nom I-Acc weep-Cs-NFu
 'He made me weep'
- (22b) *ma-ne eygon-do kop-hal-li*
 he-Nom I-Loc cry-Cs-NFu
 'He caused me to weep'

Notice that the second argument functions as the causee in all these sentences irrespective of the fact as to whether it occurs in the accusative, locative or is unmarked. All these sentences denote non-contactive meaning, except that (22a) and (22b) can be ambiguous on this point. The difference in the case markers that are used with the causee is correlatable with the semantic relation that is associated with it. Generally, the causee does not occur in the same semantic relation in which one of the following arguments occur in the sentence.

The following are some additional examples which exemplify this avoidance of the same semantic relation (and hence the same case marker) occurring with the causer as well as with one of the following arguments:

(23a) *tombo-ne oygon-de cawba-bu ciq-hel-li*
 Tomba-Nom I-Loc Chaoba-Acc pull-Cs-NFu
 'Tomba made me pull Chaoba'

(23b) *tombo-ne oy-bu cawba ciq-hel-li*
 Tomba-Nom I-Acc Chaoba pull-Cs-NFu
 'Tomba made me pull Chaoba'

(24a) *oy-ne ma-bu somben-de cog-hel-li*
 I-Nom he-Acc fence-Loc jump-Cs-NFu
 'I made him jump over the fence'

(24b) *oy-ne maqon-de somben cog-hel-li*
 I-Nom he-Loc fence jump-Cs-NFu
 'I made him jump the fence'

There are, however, some exceptions to the above-mentioned general rules, such as the following

(i) If the second argument is viewed as only a helper and placed in the locative, it is possible for the third argument in the accusative to be the causee. Example:

(25) *oy-ne tombo-de cawba-bu cithi i-hel-li*
 I-Nom Tomba-Loc Chaoba-Acc letter write-Cs-NFu
 'I made Chaoba write a letter (through) with the help of Tomba'

(ii) When the locative argument that occurs in the sentence indicates a place rather than an experiencer (or recipient), the causee can take the locative suffix in order to indicate an experiencer. Examples.

(26) *mehak-ne oygon-de phaklap-de lay thet-hel-li*
 he-Nom I-Loc wall-Loc picture hang-Cs-NFu
 'He made me hang the picture on the wall'

(27) *mehak-ne oygon-de ka-de way sit-hel-li*
 he-Nom I-Loc room-Loc rubbish sweep-Cs-NFu
 'He made me sweep the rubbish (off) the room'

(iii) It is also possible for the causer to be inanimate, as for example, when a natural force or a disease is used in that role; it takes the nominative *ne* as it is being viewed as the controller of the event concerned. Examples:

(28a) *mehak-ne may cam-mi*
 he-Nom face pock-marked-NFu
 'He is pock-marked on the face'

(28b) *smalpok-ne mehak-pu may cam-hel-li*
 Small pox-Nom he-Acc face pock-mark-Cs-NFu
 'Small pox made him pock-marked on the face'

- (29a) u-du tu-y
tree-that fall-NFu
'That tree fell down'
- (29b) nugsit-ne u-de tu-hol-li
wind-Nom tree-that fall-Cs-NFu
'The wind caused that tree to fall down'

It is possible, however, to regard the natural force here as the instrument rather than as the causer proper (with the causer being left unspecified), as it is possible to specify an additional causer argument. Example:

- (29c) lay-ne nugsit-ne u-du tu-hol-li
God-Nom wind-Nom tree-that fall-Cs-NFu
'God caused that tree to fall down with the help of the wind'
- (29d) nugsit-ne u-du tu-y
wind-Nom tree-that fall-NFu
'The tree fell down due to the wind'

10.2.7 Causatives with nominalized arguments

Causatives of predicates which take a nominalized sentence as the sole argument may appear to be exceptions to the claim that causative clauses have minimally a causer and a causee as their arguments, because such sentences may have only a causer and the nominalized sentence as their arguments. It can be claimed, however, that in such sentences the nominalized clause functions as the causee. It is also possible to have an additional causee argument in such sentences which would be coreferential with the argument occurring in the nominative in the nominalized clause. Examples:

- (30a) ma-ne ey-ne cat-pe gam-hol-li
he-Nom I-Nom go-Inf possible-Cs-NFu
'He made it possible that I go'
- (30b) ma-ne ey-bu cat-pe gam-hol-li
he-Nom I-Acc go-Inf possible-Cs-NFu
'He made it possible for me to go'
- (31a) ma-ne ey-ne ca-be hen-hol-li
he-Nom I-Nom eat-Inf much-Cs-NFu
'He caused it that I eat too much'
- (31b) ma-ne ey-tu ca-be hen-hol-li
he-Nom I-Acc eat-Inf much-Cs-NFu
'He made me eat too much'

It is also possible, in sentences of this type, for the nominalized argument to occur in-between the causer and the causee, as shown in the following example:

- (32) tombe-ne ey-bu isay saknato mason-de tak-hol-li
Tomba-Nom I-Acc song sing he-Loc persuade-Cs-NFu
'Tomba made him persuade me to sing a song.'

10.2.5 Notion of hierarchy

It appears from the foregoing description of Manipuri causativization that the process does not support the 'hierarchy of grammatical relations' that has been postulated by Comrie (1981:169), namely that the causee occupies the highest position that is not already occupied in the hierarchy subject > direct object > indirect object > oblique object. The reason for this, however, might be the fact that grammatical relations like subject and direct object do not have any role to play in the grammar of Manipuri as we have argued elsewhere (see 4.3) in this grammar.

10.3 Benefactive verbs

10.3.1 The suffix *bi* (which is *pi* after voiceless consonants) is added to the verb in order to derive the benefactive base in Manipuri. The argument newly introduced by it into the sentence structure generally takes the benefactive suffix *de-mak* 'for the sake of' (consisting of the locative *de* followed by the emphatic *mak*) which is attached to the genitive form of the noun. Examples:

- (33a) *məhak-ne ɣaŋ-ɣi*
he-Nom speak-NFu
'He spoke'
- (33b) *məhak-ne ɔy-ɣi-de-mak ɣaŋ-bi*
he-Nom I-Gen-Loc-Emph speak-Ben(NFu)
'He spoke for my sake'
- (34a) *məhak-ne θəbək cil-li*
he-Nom work busy-NFu
'He is busy with work'
- (34b) *məhak-ne tombə-ɣi-de-mak θəbək cin-bi*
he-Nom Tomba-Gen-Loc-Emph work busy-Ben(NFu)
'He is busy with work for the sake of Tomba'

Historically one might relate the benefactive suffix with the verb *pi* 'to give' as there are both formal as well as semantic similarities between the two, but the benefactive suffix, unlike the verb *pi* 'give', occurs with level tone.

A beneficiary argument with the suffix *de-mak* 'for the sake of' can occur in a sentence even when the sentence does not contain a benefactive verb, but in such cases the argument can only be regarded as having the function of an adjunct (non-core argument); the use of benefactive verb apparently has the effect of bringing this argument into the core structure. Examples:

- (35a) *ɔy-ne ma-ɣi-de-mak bejaŋ-de cət-li*
I-Nom he-Gen-Loc-Emph market-Loc go-NFu
'I went to the market for his sake'
- (35b) *ɔy-ne ma-ɣi-de-mak bejaŋ-de cət-pi*
I-Nom he-Gen-Loc-Emph market-Loc go-Ben(NFu)
'I went to the market for his sake'

Further, even when a benefactive verb has been used, it is not obligatory to use a beneficiary argument in that sentence. The possessor of one of the arguments may instead be regarded as the beneficiary, as in the following example:

- (46) *modu ma-to-de*
that black-Ben-Neg
'Luckily, that one is not black'
- (47) *yennap asi thum yik-pi-de*
curry this salt salty-Ben-Neg
'Luckily, this curry is not salty'

10.3.4 It can also be used in the case of some stative verbs in order to imply that the person concerned is showing the relevant characteristic rather unexpectedly, or that the characteristic should have been shown by some other person rather than the person concerned.

Examples:

- (48) *ay khoy-no henna pen-bi-re*
we-Nom much satisfy-Ben-Perf
'Unexpectedly, we have been much satisfied'
- (49) *mehak-na henna pag-bi-re*
he-Nom much foolish-Ben-Perf
'Unexpectedly, he has been very foolish'
- (50) *moma-na macanupi-do-gi henna khot-pi-re*
mother-Nom daughter-Loc-Gen much showy-Ben-Perf
'The mother has been unexpectedly more showy than her daughter'
- (51) *mehak-na syen-do caw-bi-re*
he-Nom I-Loc proud-Ben-Perf
'He is showing more pride than me
(even though there is reason for me to be more proud)'

10.4 Reflexive verbs

10.4.1 The suffix *jo* (which is *co* after voiceless consonants) is added to the verb in order to derive reflexive verbs in Manipuri. Its effect on the sentence structure is to indicate referential identity between two of its arguments. One of these identified arguments may be equi-deleted or denoted through a pronoun. Examples:

- (52a) *mehak-na tomba-do mingsen-do yeg-gi*
he-Nom Tomba-Loc mirror-Loc look-NFu
'He looked at Tomba in the mirror'
- (52b) *mehak-na mingsen-do yeg-je-y*
he-Nom mirror-Loc look-Ref-NFu
'He looked (at himself) in the mirror'
- (52c) *mehak-na mingsen-do ma-bu-do yeg-jo-y*
he-Nom mirror-Loc he-Acc-Loc look-Ref-NFu
'He looked at him(self) in the mirror'

The coreferential argument may be left unspecified in a reflexive sentence as in (52b), or it may be denoted through the use of an ordinary pronoun as in (52c); it is also possible to use special anaphoric pronouns like *nahe* 'self' or *mathanto* 'alone' for this purpose, as in (52d) below:

- (53d) mehak-ne miqsen-de meah-bu-de jay-je-y
he-Nom mirror-Loc self-Acc-Loc look-RefI-NFu
'He looked at himself in the mirror'

10.4.2 This coreference can occur between any two arguments of the reflexive sentence in Manipuri. In Manipuri does not show any constraint on this account which is comparable to the subject-antecedent constraint occurring in several familiar languages. Example:

- (53) oy-ne ma-be sel khara pi-jahal-li
I-Nom he-Acc money some give-RefI-Cs-NFu
(i) 'I made him give some money to me'
(ii) 'I made him give some money to himself'

It is also possible for an argument to be coreferential with the possessor of another argument in a reflexive sentence in Manipuri. Examples:

- (54a) tomba-ne mekhog-de nugthog thade-y
Tomba-Nom leg-Loc hammer drop-NFu
'Tomba dropped the hammer on (his or someone else's) leg'
(54b) tomba-ne mekhog-de nugthog thade-je-y
Tomba-Nom leg-Loc hammer drop-RefI-NFu
'Tomba dropped the hammer on his own leg'

10.4.3 In the case of sentences containing only a single argument, reflexive verb indicates that the relevant event or action occurred without any outside assistance or interference. Examples.

- (55a) cay edu tu-y
stick that fall-NFu
'That stick fell down'
(55b) cay edu tu-je-y
stick that fall-RefI-NFu
'That stick fell down on its own'
(56a) mehak nil-li
he noisy-NFu
'He is noisy'
(56b) mehak nin-je-y
he noisy-RefI-NFu
'He is noisy by himself'

Such a meaning can be indicated by reflexive verbs occurring in sentences that contain two or more arguments as well; this is especially true of sentences in which the arguments cannot be thought of as being coreferential; in the case of sentences in which arguments can be coreferential, it is possible for the above possibility to lead to ambiguity.

Examples:

- (57) imo-ne layrik pa-je-y
Imo-Nom book read-RefI-NFu
'Imo read the book by himself'

- (45) *cha-to no phi-du law-ja-y*
Chara-Nom cloth-that take-RefI-NFu
 'Chara took the cloth for himself'

Reflexive verbs are also used to denote characteristics that are possessed by persons or objects 'by nature' rather than through some action or event. This is especially true of state verbs. Examples:

- (59a) *modu mu-ja*
that black-NFu
 'That one is black'
- (59b) *modu mu-ja y*
that black-RefI-NFu
 'That one is black by nature'

10.4.4 Another interesting use of the reflexive verb in Manipuri is for indicating politeness towards the addressee or towards the person who is referred to in the sentence. Examples

- (60a) *oi naq-ne tembi-be pam-mi*
I you Nom teach-Inf want-NFu
 'I want you to teach (me)'
- (60b) *oi naq-ne tembi-be pam-ja y*
I you Nom teach-Inf want-RefI-NFu
 'I want you to teach (me), please' (polite towards the addressee)
- (61a) *mahak-ne oikhov-gi oja-bu nugsu*
she-Nom we Gen teacher-Acc love(NFu)
 'She loves our teacher'
- (61b) *mahak-ne oikhov-gi oja-bu nugsu-ja-y*
she Nom we Gen teacher-Acc love-RefI-NFu
 'She loves our teacher' (polite towards oja teacher')

There is ambiguity between reflexive and politeness connotations in the case of the following sentences

- (62a) *oikhov-ne cai li*
we Nom go-NFu
 'We went'
- (62b) *oikhov ne cai-ca-i*
we Nom go-RefI-NFu
 (i) 'We went on our own'
 (ii) 'We went' (polite towards the addressee)
- (63a) *oigon-do na hau-wi*
I Loc fish like NFu
 'I like fish'
- (63b) *oigon-do na hau-ja-y*
I Loc fish like-RefI-NFu
 (i) 'I like fish for myself'
 (ii) 'I like fish' (polite towards the addressee)

10.3. Reciprocal verbs

10.3.1 Reciprocal verbs are derived by adding the suffix *no* to the verbal base; they have the function of indicating that the referents of two different arguments of the event are involved in *both* the roles that the arguments denote; that is, the 'normal' involvement of referents in a given event is combined with their reverse involvement in these constructions. Examples:

- (64a) *tombo-ne cawba-de phu-y*
 Tomba-Nom Chaoba-Loc beat-NFu
 'Tomba beat Chaoba'
- (64b) *tombo-go cawba-go phu-ne-y*
 Tomba-Conj Chaoba-Conj beat-Rec-NFu
 'Tomba and Chaoba beat one another'

Notice that the two arguments occur in different case roles in (64a) (actor and location) whereas in (64b) the two have been combined together through the conjunctive suffix *go* and the two referents are indicated as occurring in both these roles. The two roles remain unspecified in (64b), but they can be specified through the use of the reduplicated form of *one* 'one' as in the following:

- (64c) *tombo-go cawba-go one-ne-me-de phu-ne-y*
 Tomba-Conj Chaoba-Conj one-Nom-one-Loc beat-Rec-NFu
 'Tomba and Chaoba beat one another'

The two compared arguments of the reciprocal verb can be combined together into a plural form also, as in the following sentence:

- (65a) *makhoy one-ne-me-de sei law-ne-y*
 they one-Nom-one-Loc money take-Rec-NFu
 'They took money from one another'

One may also use the reduplicated form of *one* 'one' occurring in such sentences with the conjunctive suffix, especially when the arguments concerned occur in the form of a noun phrase or pronoun in plural. Example:

- (65b) *makhoy one-go-me-go sei law-ne-y*
 they one-Conj-one-Conj money take-Rec-NFu
 'They took money from one another'

10.3.2 The meaning of reciprocity can combine together any two of the arguments occurring in the sentence, this possibility leads to ambiguity as can be seen in the following sentence:

- (66a) *makhoy-ne tombo-de huy thawjol-li*
 they-Nom Tomba-Loc dog set-NFu
 'They set dogs at Tomba'
- (66b) *makhoy-ne one-ne-me-de huy thawjen-ne-y*
 they-Nom one-Nom-one-Loc dog set-Rec-NFu
- (i) 'They set dogs at one another' (i.e. at the persons concerned)
 - (ii) 'They set dogs at one another' (i.e. at the dogs concerned)

It can also combine an argument with the possessor of another argument as in the following

- (67) *moiboy omo-ne-mo-gi nyihai day-ne-y*
 they one-Nom-one-Gen bicycle clean-like-NFu
 They cleaned one another's bicycle'

In the case of stative verbs like *piha* 'good', *man* 'similar', *lep* 'far', *nah* 'near', *lu* 'cunning', *hi* 'pride', etc. which indicate a characteristic that a person or object can show towards another person or object, reciprocal forms can indicate that the characteristics are shown by them towards one another. Examples:

- (68a) *tebol esi tebol ede mal-li*
 table this table that similar-NFu
 This table is similar to that table'
- (68b) *tebol oni-du man-ne-y*
 table two-that similar-Rec NFu
 Those two tables are similar to one another

It is also possible in some of these cases to use the first argument in the nominative and the second one in the conjunctive. Examples:

- (69a) *ev ne manen-de saw-wi*
 I Nom he-Loc angry-NFu
 I am angry with him
- (69b) *ev ne mo-go can-ne-y*
 I Nom he-Conj angry-Rec-NFu
 I and he are angry with one another
- (70a) *mohak-ne eymen-de li*
 he Nom I Loc fear-NFu)
 He is afraid of me
- (70b) *mohak-ne ev-go lu-ne-y*
 he Nom I-Conj fear-Rec-NFu
 I and he are afraid of one another'

10-3 When the noun phrase connected with the reciprocal verb occurs in its plural rather than its in-kind form, Manjapant allows its reciprocal sentences to have certain extended meanings. In the case of *ni* 'to die', *ni* 'to suffer' and *ni* 'to suffer' it provides the meaning of something happening to a number of persons or objects due to a common cause. Examples:

- (11) *memagen-de kolera-ne nu yamno xi-ne-y*
 long ago-Loc cholera-Nom man many die-Rec-NFu
 Long ago, many people died of cholera
- (12) *stan tha-de-di ca-be phog-de-dune nu yamno wa-ne-y*
 fourth month Loc-Emph eat-Inf obtain-Neg for man many suffer-Rec-NFu
 Many people suffered during the famine due to their not obtaining any food'

This extended meaning is apparently connected with another use of the reciprocal verb, namely with *man* 'together' to indicate that the action or event was performed jointly by a number of referents as in the following sentences:

- (73) *mekhey-no ayelet ang-mak-no-y*
they-Nom bicycle clean-together-Rec-3Pl
 'They cleaned the bicycle together'
- (74) *mekhey saw-mak-no-y*
they angry-together-Rec-3Pl
 'They were angry together'

The above-mentioned meaning of the reciprocal verb is further extended in several instances in Manipuri in order to indicate that the action or process concerned is a generic or habitual occurrence. In this latter case also, the concerned noun phrase has to be in the plural form, it cannot be in its conjoined form. Examples

- (75) *manipur-de-di langhon-de hip-no-y*
Manipur-Loc-Emph cot-Loc he-Rec-3Pl
 'In Manipur (people) lie on cots'
- (76) *mi-no mehak-pu ki-no-y*
man-Nom he-Acc fear-Rec-3Pl
 'People generally fear him'

There are some verbal bases in Manipuri in which the use of the reciprocal suffix appears to be obligatory. The verbal roots of these bases do not occur by themselves (i.e., without this suffix). In some of these cases the roots can be used by themselves, but in such a usage, they have very different (though related) meanings. We have noted the following reciprocal forms of this nature.

<i>oy-no</i>	'be obstinate'	<i>sin-no</i>	'entrust'
<i>kaw-no</i>	'be in good terms'	<i>lon-no</i>	'be one after another (villages or houses)'
<i>yet-no</i>	'be entangled'	<i>cu no</i>	'be agreeable, fitting'
<i>yek-no</i>	'be in enmity'	<i>theg-no</i>	'be next to' (<i>mathag</i> 'next')
<i>haw-no</i>	'be the custom'	<i>kuy-no</i>	'be close to one another'

10.6 Combinations of valency changing suffixes

10.6.1 The valency changing suffixes described above can also be used jointly in order to derive more complex verbal bases. We have noticed the following possible combinations

	<i>han</i>	<i>jo</i>	<i>bi</i>	<i>no</i>
<i>han</i>	—	+	+	+
<i>jo</i>	+	—	+	—
<i>bi</i>	+	—	—	—
<i>no</i>	+	+	+	—

(i) Notice that the causative suffix can occur after all the three remaining suffixes; we may regard these as causative forms of the reflexive, reciprocal and benefactive verbs respectively; these complex causative forms indicate that the person denoted by the newly introduced argument causes the reflexive, reciprocal and benefactive actions that would be performed by the cause. Examples:

- (77a) *tombo-ne caa ca-jo-y*
Tombo-Nom food eat-Refl-NFu
'Tombo ate the food himself'
- (77b) *ey-ne tombo-bu cak ca-jo-hol-li*
I-Nom Tombo-Acc food eat-Refl-Cs-NFu
'I made Tombo eat the food himself'
- (77c) *ey-ne ma-bu ma-khat-ne ca-jo-hol-li*
I-Nom he-Acc he-hand-Nom eat-Refl-Cs-NFu
'I made him eat with his own hand'
- (78a) *mekhey-ne cak ca-ne-y*
they-Nom food eat-Rec-NFu
'They ate the food with one another'
- (78b) *ey-ne mekhey-bu cak ca-ne-hol-li*
I-Nom they-Acc food eat-Rec-Cs-NFu
'I made them eat food with one another'
- (79a) *tombo-ne caa-ba-gi layrik pa-bi*
Tombo-Nom Chaoba-Gen book read-Ben(NFu)
'Tombo read the book for Chaoba'
- (79b) *ey-ne tombo-bu caa-ba-gi layrik pa-bi-hol-li*
I-Nom Tombo-Acc Chaoba-Gen book read-Ben-Cs-NFu
'I made Tombo read the book for Chaoba'

(ii) The reciprocal-causative combination can be followed by the benefactive suffix in order to indicate that the causation of the reciprocal action is for the benefit of someone other than the causee. Examples:

- (80a) *mekhey can-ne-y*
they friendly-Rec-NFu
'They compromised (are friendly with one another)'
- (80b) *ey-ne mekhey-bu can-ne-hol-li*
I-Nom they-Acc friendly-Rec-Cs-NFu
'I made them compromise (with one another)'
- (80c) *ey-ne mekhey-bu can-ne-hon-bi*
I-Nom they-Acc friendly-Rec-Cs-Ben(NFu)
'I made them compromise (with one another) for their own sake'

(iii) The causative suffix can follow any of the three remaining suffixes; in the case of the reflexive, this construction indicates that the original doer is himself the causer. Example:

- (81) *ma mesa-ne thotok-tu tow-hon-jo-y*
he himself-Nom work-that do-Ca-Refl-NFu
'He himself got the work done'

In the case of the reciprocal, this construction has an entirely different meaning, namely that a causer A makes B to do something, B makes C to do something, and so on in the form of a chain reaction. Example:

- (82) *məkhoy omo-gə-mə-gə bɔrɪk pi-hən-nə-y*
 they one-Conj-one-Conj book give-Cp-Rec-NFu
 'They made each other give a book to someone else'

The use of the benefactive after the causative implies that the causer 'allowed' the causee to carry out the concerned activity Example:

- (83) *məkhoy-nə əy-bu thəbək tɔw-hən-bi*
 they-Nom I-Acc work do-Cp-Ben(NFu)
 'They allowed me to do the work'

(iv) The benefactive suffix can also be used after the reciprocal suffix in order to indicate that the reciprocal action has been carried out in favor of someone else. Example:

- (84) *məkhoy-nə əy-gi wə hən-nə-bi*
 they-Nom I-Gen speech say-Rec-Ben(NFu)
 'They spoke with one another for my sake'

(v) The use of the benefactive after the reflexive, on the other hand, is facilitated by the fact that the reflexive can also be used as a politeness marker (see 10.4.4). When followed by the benefactive reflexive indicates that the sympathy is towards someone else. Example:

- (85) *məhək-nə əy-bu hən-nəw pi-jə-bi*
 he-Nom I-Acc mango give-Refl-Ben(NFu)
 'He gave me a mango (with sympathy towards me)'

(vi) Lastly, it is possible to use the reciprocal and the reflexive suffixes together, in which case the reflexive suffix has its exclusive meaning Example:

- (86a) *məkhoy cak ca-nə-y*
 they food eat-Rec-NFu
 'They ate food with one another'
- (86b) *məkhoy cak ca-nə-jə-y*
 they food eat-Rec-Refl-NFu
 'They ate food with one another by themselves'

10.7 Other related processes

As we had mentioned earlier, the deictic suffix *rək* has the function of changing state verbs into process verbs as one of its extended uses. This, however, does not affect the valency pattern of the verb. The following pairs of sentences exemplify this usage:

- (87a) *məhək əygon-de nəl-li*
 he I-Loc on-NFu
 'He is on (top of) me'
- (87b) *məhək əygon-de nəl-lək-i*
 he I-Loc above-Deict-NFu
 'He started being above me'
- (88a) *cəy ədə phey*
 stick that slant(NFu)
 'That stick is slant'

'That sick became silent'

Chapter 11

TENSE, ASPECT AND MOOD

11.1 Introduction

Tibeto-Burman languages are generally found to give greater prominence to mood than to tense and aspect. Some of them, like Burmese, have been described as 'tenseless' languages. The primary distinction that their verbs make is between realis and irrealis forms, i.e. forms which indicate an event that the speaker considers to be real on the one hand, and the ones which denote hypothetical, possible, proposed or yet to be realized (future) events on the other.

As pointed out in Bhat (forthcoming), there are several morphosyntactic characteristics that occur in languages which are considered to be 'mood-prominent'. In addition to making the realis-irrealis modal distinction as the primary and deep-rooted distinction among the verbal forms, these languages appear to show a greater amount of complexity and variety in the case of the modal category as compared to temporal and aspectual categories. In fact, the latter categories appear to be viewed from a modal point of view in these languages.

Further, some of the disputed concepts like perfect, future, habitual, etc. are grouped with moods rather than tenses or aspects in these languages. The relative ordering of tense, aspect and mood markers also appears to reflect this typological property in that the markers of mood occur closer to the verbal base than those of tense and aspect in these languages.

Manipuri is rather different from these majority of Tibeto-Burman languages on this point in that it does not appear to show many of the characteristics of mood-prominent languages. The basic distinction among its verbal forms is temporal rather than modal, as we point out below. Its verbs show several aspectual distinction but only very few modal distinctions.

11.2 Tense distinctions

The tense distinction in Manipuri is primarily between future and non-future, which occurs not only in the indicative mood but also in the negative; the distinction is retained in relative clauses, questions, exclamatory sentences, and also in certain adverbial constructions.

11.2.1 Future Indicative suffix

The suffix used for denoting future indicative meaning in Manipuri is traditionally considered to be *garl* (which is *kari* after voiceless consonants). Unlike other tense and aspect suffixes, however, it has two different syllables, namely *go* and *ni*, which appear to actually represent two different elements; as we will be pointing out later in this section, it is possible to regard the future suffix proper as *go* and the syllable following it as the copula verb *ni* which otherwise occurs in nominal sentences (see 4.2.1). However, while giving its grammatical analysis in this chapter we have followed the tradition of treating it as a unified

(10a) *mahak beja-de go-go-gani*
 he today market-Loc go-Fu

- (i) 'It might have become red by now' (if you had not covered it)
 (ii) 'It would still be red now'

(iv) As we had mentioned earlier, one might analyse this suffix as involving future *go* followed by copula *ni*. This claim can be supported by the fact that when sentences containing this suffix changed into interrogatives, the verbal form retains only the syllable *go* and takes the emphatic marker before taking the question marker *re*. Examples:

(12a) *mahak gosi beja-de cot-koni*
 he today market-Loc go-Fu
 'He will go to the market today'

(12b) *mahak gosi beja-de cot-ke-de-ra*
 he today market-Loc go-Fu-Emph-Q
 'Will he go to the market today?'

(13a) *tomba lephoy ca-gani*
 Tomba banana eat-Fu
 'Tomba will eat bananas'

(13b) *tomba lephoy ca-go-de-ra*
 Tomba banana eat-Fu-Emph-Q
 'Will Tomba eat bananas?'

Notice that nominal sentences which contain the copula *ni* also drop this copula *ni* when they occur with the question marker *re*. Examples:

(14a) *mahak oja ni*
 he teacher is
 'He is a teacher'

(14b) *mahak oja re*
 he teacher Q
 'Is he a teacher?'

This claim is also supported by the fact that when the future suffix is followed by other suffixes like the infinitive *be* (in relative clauses), or the modal suffix *daw* 'must', it gets reduced to *ga*; in the former case, it also has the emphatic marker *de* occurring after it. Examples:

(15a) *mi eda hayeg cot-koni*
 man that tomorrow go-Fu
 'That man will go tomorrow'

(15b) *hayeg cot-ke-de-be ni-de na-te*
 tomorrow go-Fu-Emph-Inf man-that ill-Perf
 'The man who is to go tomorrow has become ill'

(16a) *mahak-he cidi uno i-gani*
 he-future letter one write-Fu
 'He will write a letter'

- (16b) *mehak-na cithi oms l-go-dow-ri*
 he-Nom letter one write-Fu-mist-NFu
 'He will definitely write a letter'

There is a syllable *go* occurring optionally before the prohibitive *nu* which might probably be identified with the future suffix. Examples:

- (17a) *mehak-pu phu-nu*
 he-Acc beat-Proh
 'Don't beat him!'
- (17b) *mehak-pu phu-go-nu*
 he-Acc beat-Fu-Proh
 'Don't beat him!'

(v) It is possible to identify this future suffix with the desiderative suffix *ge* (with the vowel *e* changing to *o* in the word-medial position, as in the case of the perfect suffix *le* and the non-future negative suffix *de*). This latter suffix will be described in the fourteenth chapter (see 14.3.2).

(vi) In addition to this simple future meaning, the suffix *goni* can also have future habitual meaning, provided that it is used in a proper context. Examples:

- (18) *nommay-de-gi ey hotel esi-do ca-goni*
 next year-Loc-Gen I hotel this-Loc eat-Fu
 'I will eat in this hotel during next year'
- (19) *ey hotel esi-do ca-khi-goni*
 I hotel this-Loc eat-Prog-Fu
 'I will continue to eat in this hotel (during the following days)'

11.2.2 Non-future Indicative suffix

The suffix used for denoting non-future indicative meaning in Manipuri is *li*. It has several alternants depending upon the sound which precedes it (see 2.8 for details). It generally denotes past meaning in the case of dynamic verbs (actions and precesses) and present meaning in the case of state verbs. Examples:

- (20) *mehak-na tabel-de cephu khil-li*
 he-Nom table-Loc put place-NFu
 'He placed the pot on the table'
- (21) *sona-phang-to pek-li*
 hair shirt-Loc stick-NFu
 'The hair stuck to the shirt'
- (22) *ce esi mu-y*
 paper this black-NFu
 'This paper is black'
- (23) *mehak yam-na saw-wi*
 he much-Adv angry-NFu
 'He is very angry.'

(i) If used with the necessary temporal adverbials, however, it can denote past meaning in the case of state verbs as well. Examples:

- (24a) garag ce esi mu-y
yesterday paper this black-NFu
'This paper was black yesterday'
- (24b) garag mehak yam-ne saw-wi
yesterday he much-Adv angry-NFu
'He was very angry yesterday'

(ii) In the case of dynamic verbs also, it can provide present tense meaning, as for example, when the context makes it possible to interpret the sentence in which they occur as habitual or generic. Examples:

- (25) mehak nugthin-de ca-y
he afternoon-Loc eat-NFu
(i) 'He ate in the afternoon'
(ii) 'He usually eats in the afternoon'
- (26) ay-ne u-ne-be kan-de mehak kep-pi
I-Nom see-Rec-Inf time-Loc he cry-NFu
(i) 'He cried when I met him'
(ii) 'He cries whenever I meet him'

(iii) This habitual meaning can be denoted by the non-future suffix in the case of state verbs as well. Example:

- (27) julay-de non meŋ-ŋi
July-Loc rain cloudy-NFu
(i) 'It is/was cloudy in July'
(ii) 'It is generally cloudy in July'

(iv) It has this present (habitual) meaning when used with the habitual suffix *ga* in the case of both dynamic as well as stative verbs. Examples:

- (28) mehak nugthin-de ca-gel-li
he afternoon-Loc eat-Hab-NFu
'He usually eats in the afternoon'
- (29) mehak saw-gel-li
he angry-Hab-NFu
'He is generally angry'

(v) The non-future suffix can also denote past habitual meaning provided that the past meaning is specified by an accompanying temporal adverb. Examples:

- (30) ceŋ phaŋ-de-be-ne ey-ne agra-de ten ca-y
rice get-Neg-Inf-Nom I-Nom Agra-Loc bread eat-NFu
(i) 'I ate bread in Agra because rice was not available'
(ii) 'I used to eat bread in Agra because rice was not available'
- (31) ey-ne nungdaywayrem cat-thok-pe-de mehak-pu u-y
I-Nom evening go-out-Inf-Loc he-Acc see-NFu
(i) 'I saw him in the evening when I went for a walk'
(ii) 'I used to see him in the evening when I go for a walk'

(vi) Unlike the future suffix described earlier, this non-future suffix occurs only in the word-final position. When followed by other suffixes, such as the infinitive *ba*, this tense suffix is left unspecified in the verbal form. Examples:

- (12a) *mi edu neraj lak-i*
man that yesterday come-NFu
'That man came yesterday'
- (12b) *neraj lak-pe mi-du na-y*
yesterday come-Inf man-that ill-NFu
'That man who came yesterday is ill'

12.3 Negative suffixes

Corresponding to the two indicative suffixes described above, Manipuri makes use of two negative suffixes, namely *loy* and *de*, which we may describe as representing a future/non-future tense distinction in the negative. The former has several alternants depending upon the sound which precedes it (see 2.8), whereas the latter has the alternant *te* after voiceless sounds; its vowel changes to *o* in the medial position.

The following pairs of sentences exemplify the contrastive use of these two negative suffixes:

- (13a) *mehak lephoy-du ca-roy*
he banana-that eat-FNg
'He will not eat that banana'
- (13b) *mehak lephoy-du ca-de*
he banana-that eat-NFNg
'He did not eat that banana'
- (14a) *mehak lam-moy*
he hungry-FNg
'He will not be hungry'
- (14b) *mehak lam-de*
he hungry-NFNg
'He is not hungry'

(1) As in the case of the two indicative suffixes described earlier, the non-future negative generally denotes past negation in the case of dynamic verbs and present negation in that of state verbs.² However, ² can denote past negation in the latter case as well, and further, it can denote present negation in the former case when the context allows habitual interpretation. Examples:

- (15) *mehak neraj saw-de*
he yesterday angry-NFNg
'He was not angry yesterday'
- (16) *mehak notel eon-on ca-oc*
he hotel that-Loc eat-NFNg
(i) 'He did not eat in that hotel'
(ii) 'He does not (usually) eat in that hotel'.

(3) The non-future negative form can denote present meaning when used with the habitual suffix *ba*.

- (37) mehak lephoy ca-gen-de
he banana eat-Hab-NFNg
'He usually does not eat bananas'

(iii) The two negative suffixes differ from one another, however, in the relative order in which they combine with aspectual suffixes. The future negative suffix follows the perfect or completive suffix, whereas the non-future negative suffix precedes the perfect suffix, but follows the completive suffix.

When preceded by both the completive as well as the perfective suffixes, the future negative has the past negative (probabilistic) meaning. Examples:

- (38a) mehak lephoy ca-rem-roy
he banana eat-Perf-FNg
'He will not have eaten the banana'
- (38b) mehak lephoy ca-rem-moy
he banana eat-Compl-FNg
'He might not have eaten the banana' (unless you persuaded him)
- (38c) mehak lephoy ca-rem-mo-roy
he banana eat-Compl-Perf-FNg
'He might not have eaten the banana' (because I didn't give him)'
- (39a) mehak lephoy ca-de-re
he banana eat-NFNg-Perf
'He has not eaten the banana'
- (39b) mehak lephoy ca-rem-de
he banana eat-Compl-NFNg
'He had not eaten the banana'
- (39c) mehak lephoy ca-rem-de-re
he banana eat-Compl-NFNg-Perf
'He is not eating banana any more' (he was eating earlier)

(iv) The non-future suffix can also occur with the durative suffix which, however, follows the negative. Examples:

- (39d) mehak lephoy ca-de-ri
he banana eat-NFNg-Dur
'He is not eating the banana'
- (39e) mehak lephoy ca-rem-de-ri
he banana eat-Compl-NFNg-Dur
'He was not eating the banana'

(v) Other aspectual suffixes precede both these negative suffixes. Examples:

- (40) naŋ-ne mehak-pu ki-man-de-re
you-Nom he-Acc fear-much-NFNg-Perf
'You have not been too much afraid of him'
- (41) mehak ten ca-gen-de
he bread eat-Hab-NFNg
'He usually does not eat bread'

11.2.4 Other tense-marking suffixes

As we had mentioned earlier, some of the aspect and mood suffixes have temporal connotations in that some of them obligatorily denote future actions, processes or states, whereas some normally denote past or present meanings.

For example, there are several illocutionary suffixes like the imperative *lu*, prohibitive *nu*, exhortative *si* and concessive *sau* which have an underlying future connotation in the sense that the event that they order, prohibit, exhort, concede, etc. are to occur in the future. Even when these suffixes are associated with aspectual markers which normally have non-future connotations, we obtain references only to future events. Examples:

- (42) *lembi esi-do nang tha-rom-mu*
road this-Loc stone pave-Compl-Imp
'Pave this road with stones' (before you do something else)
- (43) *lanyik eul pa-ro-gum-si*
book this read-Perf-Neg-Con
'Let us not read this book any more'

The two aspect suffixes that can occur in the word-final position, namely the perfect *le* and the durative *li*, on the other hand, provide a non-future connotation when not accompanied by any other suffix. The former denotes a past event that has present relevance, whereas the latter denotes a present durative event. However, both these are basically aspectual rather than temporal suffixes; when used with other suffixes, they allow the temporal meaning to be cancelled; only their aspectual meaning persists.

For example, the perfect suffix indicates an event that had a past relevance when used with the completive suffix, whereas when used with the future suffix, it denotes an event that has future relevance. Examples:

- (44a) *mekhoy khot-no-re*
they quarrel-Rec-Perf
'They have quarrelled'
- (44b) *mekhoy khot-no-rom-me*
they quarrel-Rec-Compl-Perf
'They had quarrelled (before my arrival)'
- (45a) *ey cak ca-re*
I food eat-Perf
'I have eaten food'
- (45b) *ey cak ca-ro-goni*
I food eat-Perf-Fut
'I will start eating food (before your arrival)'

Similarly, the durative suffix denotes a past durative meaning when used with the completive suffix. Example:

- (46a) *mekhoy khot-no-li*
they quarrel-Dur-Compl
'They had been quarrelling'

- (46b) *mekhoi khet-ne-ram-mi*
 they quarrel-Rec-Comp1-Dur
 'They had been quarrelling (but not now)'

11.2.5 Tense or mood

A question has been raised as to whether the distinction between *gani* and *li* occurring in the indicative (and also the one between *loy* and *de* occurring in the negative) is one of tense (future/non-future) as we have described in the previous two sections, or of mood (irrealis/realis). Tibeto-Burman languages are generally considered to use the latter distinction as the most fundamental one among their verbal forms, even though their grammars generally describe it as one of tense (see Bhat, forthcoming, for details). One would therefore expect Manipuri also, being a Tibeto-Burman language, to show a basic irrealis/realis distinction rather than a future/non-future distinction.

There is one basis for this claim in Manipuri itself, namely that the two future suffixes (indicative *gani* and negative *loy*) have past irrealis connotation when they are associated with the completive suffix *lam* as we have described above. However, the two non-future suffixes (indicative *li* and negative *de*) do not appear to have any future realis usage. They occur only in contexts in which the state or event described is either past or present.

Further, the language is unlike the majority of Tibeto-Burman languages in that it does not give greater prominence to mood than to tense or aspect; as will be evident from our description of the modal category (see 11.4), there are only very few suffixes, which are also rather disorganized, that can be grouped under that category. Compared to tense and aspect, mood appears to be poorly grammaticalized. There do occur, however, several modal verbs which take the place of this non-existing affixal system.

11.3 Aspect distinctions

Aspect distinctions are represented in Manipuri by both suffixes as well as prefixes. There are also certain verbal bases that can occur either as adverbials or as main verbs for denoting aspectual distinctions. Some of these verbs also function as suffixes in a way similar to that of other aspect suffixes. This overlapping of verbal roots and suffixes that denote aspectual meanings is reflective of the general tendency of this language, namely that of not maintaining any sharp and clear-cut distinction between roots and affixes.

11.3.1 Perfect suffix

Manipuri uses the suffix *le* for denoting the notion of 'perfect'; this suffix indicates that a given event has been completed but its effect or relevance persists at the time of speaking (present) or at some other specified time (past or future). It shows some of the characteristics of tense suffixes (such as, for example, the occurrence in the word-final position), but it also shows some of the characteristics of aspect suffixes (like occurrence with other tense and mood suffixes).

(i) It has several alternants resulting from the fact that the nature of its initial consonant depends upon the sound which precedes it (see 2.8); further, its vowel also changes to *o* when it is followed by some other suffix. Instances of these allomorphic variations can be found in the examples given below.

(ii) When this perfect suffix is not accompanied by any other suffix, it provides present perfect meaning. We may contrast this usage with that of the simple non-future suffix with the help of the following pairs of sentences:

- (47a) *mehak bejar-de cat-li*
 he market-Loc go-NFu
 'He went to the market'

- (47b) *məhək bejaŋ-de ɔt-le*
 he market-Loc go-Perf
 'He has gone to the market' (He is not here)
- (48a) *ɔy-ne thoŋ thiŋ-ɣl*
 I-Nom door close-NFu
 'I closed the door'
- (48b) *ɔy-ne thoŋ thiŋ-ge*
 I-Nom door close-Perf
 'I have closed the door' (It won't be open now)

The crucial difference between the non-future suffix and perfect suffix is that the former is non-committal regarding the result of the action concerned (the actor might or might not have come back from the market according to (47a), and according to (48a), the door might or might not be open at the time of speaking), whereas the latter (perfect suffix) clearly specifies this point as indicated in the glosses of (47b) and (48b).

(iii) In the case of state verbs, on the other hand, the perfect suffix has a somewhat different (but related) meaning: it indicates that the state concerned has resulted from a completed (unspecified) event. In contrast to this, the non-future suffix merely indicates that the state concerned is in existence. Examples:

- (49a) *una ɔsi kəŋ-ɣl*
 leaf this dry-NFu
 'This leaf is dry'
- (49b) *una ɔsi kəŋ-ge*
 leaf this dry-Perf
 'This leaf has become dry'
- (50a) *ɔŋaŋ ɔsi caw-wi*
 child this big-NFu
 'This child is big'
- (50b) *ɔŋaŋ ɔsi caw-re*
 child this big-Perf
 'This child has grown big'

(iv) The two suffixes (non-future and perfect) contrast with one another after the completive suffix *ɔm* as well; in this position, the non-future suffix denotes the occurrence of an event after the speaker's or actor's arrival (i.e. in his presence), whereas the perfect suffix denotes its occurrence before his arrival. Alternatively, the former may denote an experienced or viewed event and the latter a reported event. Examples:

- (51a) *ɔy-ne məkhəy-de ɔt-pe-de məkhəy khet-ne-rem-mi*
 I-Nom they-Loc go-Inf-Loc they quarrel-Rec-Compl-NFu
 'When I went to their place, they quarrelled'
- (51b) *ɔy-ne məkhəy-de ɔt-pe-de məkhəy khet-ne-rem-me*
 I-Nom they-Loc go-Inf-Loc they quarrel-Rec-Compl-Perf
 'When I went to their place, they had quarrelled (before my arrival)'
- (52a) *məhək-ne ɬəy ɔm ɬək-ɔm-mi*
 he-Nom song ɔm sing-Compl-NFu
 'He had sung a song (while I was there)'

- (52b) mehak-ne isey oma sek-om-me
 he-Nom song one sing-Compl-Perf
 'He had sung a song (before I reached there)'

(v) The perfect suffix is also used in some sentences in order to indicate that the event is going to be carried out very soon; this temporal meaning is apparently derived from its sense of 'current relevance'. Examples:

- (53) ey cat-le
 I go-Perf
 'I am just going'
- (54) mehak cak ca-re
 he food eat-Perf
 'He will eat his food just now'

(vi) When used with the habitual suffix *gen*, it indicates that the habitual event started to occur from a particular point of time. Examples:

- (55) mehak (na-be-de-gi) lephoy ca-gel-le
 he (ill-Inf-Loc-Gen) banana eat-Hab-Perf
 'He has been eating bananas (since his illness)'
- (56a) mehak ten ca-gel-li
 he bread eat-Hab-NFu
 'He usually eats bread'
- (56b) mehak ten ca-gel-le
 he bread eat-Hab-Perf
 'He has been eating bread (from a specified time)'

(vii) It has the meaning 'start to do something' when used with the future suffix *geni*, future negative suffix *loy* and desiderative suffix *ge*. Examples:

- (57a) ey cak ca-geni
 I food eat-Fu
 'I will eat food'
- (57b) ey cak ca-re-geni
 I food eat-Perf-Fu
 'I will start eating food (before your arrival)'
- (58a) ey cak ca-roy
 I food eat-FNg
 'I will not eat food'
- (58b) ey cak ca-re-roy
 I food eat-Perf-FNg
 'I will not start eating food (until you come)'
- (59a) ey cak ca-ge
 I food eat-Des
 'I wish to eat food'

- (59b) *ey cak ca-ro-ga*
 I food eat-Perf-Des
 'I wish to start eating food'

(viti) It provides the meaning of 'continuing to do something' when used with the negative form of the concessive suffix (*gumsi*) and the prohibitive suffix (*ganu*). Examples:

- (60a) *mahak-pu pha-gonu*
 he-Acc beat-Proh
 'Don't beat him!'
- (60b) *mahak-pu pha-re-gonu*
 he-Acc beat-Perf-Proh
 'Don't beat him any more!'
- (61a) *eykhey layrik sei pa-gum-si*
 we book this read-Ng-Con
 'Let us not read this book'
- (61b) *eykhoy layrik sei pa-re-gum-si*
 we book this read-Perf-Ng-Con
 'Let us not read this any more'

(ix) It has the effect of changing the unreal past meaning, provided by the combination of completive *lem* and future *ganu*, into one of possibility. Examples:

- (62a) *mehak bejar-de cat-lem-gani*
 he market-Loc go-Compl-Fu
 'He would have gone to the market' (if you had given him money)
- (62b) *mehak bejar-de cat-lem-ma-gani*
 he market-Loc go-Compl-Perf-Fu
 'He might have gone to the market' (because I do not see him in his room)
- (63a) *medu caw-rem-gani*
 it big-Compl-Fu
 'It would have grown big (if you had put manure)'
- (63b) *medu caw-rem-ma-gani*
 it big-Compl-Perf-Fu
 'It might have grown big (because you had put manure)'

11.3.2 Completive suffix :

In contrast to the perfect suffix described in the previous section, Manipuri uses a completive suffix in order to indicate that the event under consideration has been completed (or will be completed) before some other specified or unspecified event takes place, and further that no effect of the former persists. The distinction is similar to the one between present perfect and past perfect forms of familiar languages, but in this language, the two are not constrained by any tense distinctions. The completive suffix may denote future or past completions of events depending upon the suffixes with which it is associated.

That is, both these suffixes (perfect and completive) can occur with tense suffixes; such an occurrence is obligatory in the case of the completive, but in that of the perfect it is not obligatory as we

have seen in the previous section. The following set of sentences exemplify the contrast between the non-future, perfect and completive (with non-future) suffixes:

- (64a) mahak-he imphal-de-gi lak-i
he-Nom Imphal-Loc-Gen come-NFu
'He came from Imphal'
- (64b) mahak-he imphal-de-gi lak-e
he-Nom Imphal-Loc-Gen come-Perf
'He has come from Imphal' (and is still here)
- (64c) mahak-ne imphal-de-gi lak-am-mi
he-Nom Imphal-Loc-Gen come-Compl-NFu
'He had come from Imphal' (and has gone somewhere else)

(i) When used with state verbs, the completive suffix, like the perfect suffix, provides the inchoative meaning (of becoming something). Examples:

- (65a) thaŋ edu mɔya paŋ-gi
knife that mouth blunt-NFu
'That knife is blunt'
- (65b) thaŋ edu mɔya paŋ-gem-mi
knife that mouth blunt-Compl-NFu
'That knife had become blunt'
- (66a) ce ɛsi mu-y
paper this black-NFu
'This paper is black'
- (66b) ce ɛsi mu-rem-mi
paper this black-Compl-NFu
'This paper had become black'

(ii) The most prominent meaning that is associated with this suffix is the completion of an event before some other event. Its use before the imperative, prohibitive, negative (non-future or future), and desiderative suffixes clearly brings out this prominent meaning. Examples:

- (67a) layrik ɛsi pa-ru
book this read-Imp
'Read this book!'
- (67b) layrik ɛsi pa-rem-mu
book this read-Compl-Imp
'Read this book (before you go)!'
- (68a) ɛy cot-ke
I go-Des
'I wish to go'
- (68b) ɛy cot-lam-ge
I go-Compl-Des
'I wish to go ahead' (You may come later)

- (69a) mehak cat-lry
he go-FNg
'He will not go'
- (69b) mehak cat-lom-moy
he go-Compl-FNg
'He will not go (before your arrival)'
- (70a) mehak-pu phu-gonu
he-Acc beat-Proh
'Don't beat him'
- (70b) mehak-pu phu-rem-gonu
he-Acc beat-Compl-Proh
'Don't beat him (after I leave)'
- (71a) ey lephoy ca-de
I banana eat-NFNg
'I did not eat the banana'
- (71b) ey lephoy ca-rem-de
I banana eat-Compl-NFNg
'I had not eaten the banana (before coming here)'

(iii) Its use with the future suffix *ca* can indicate either (a) an event that is to be completed in future before some other event or (b) an unreal past event. Examples:

- (72a) ey neq-bu hoten-de gay-rem-go
I you-Acc hotel-Loc wait-Compl-Des
'I wish to wait for you in the hotel'
- (72b) ey neq-hu hoten-de gay-rem-goni
I you-Acc hotel-Loc wait-Compl-Fu
'I will wait for you in the hotel'
- (73) neq-ne pi-rem-me-bedi mehak ca-rem-goni
you-Nom give-Compl-Perf-Inf-Cond he eat-Compl-Fu
'He would have eaten (it) if you had given'
- (74) mehak-ne khem-mem-me-be-di ey lay-rem-goni
you-Nom requested-Compl-Perf-Inf-Cond I stay-Compl-Fu
'I would have stayed if you had requested (me to do so)'

(iv) When used with the durative suffix *li*, it indicates that the relevant event or state was existing during a past duration. Examples:

- (75) ey-ne ink-po-de yumthok edu ya-rem-mi
I-Nom come-Inf-Loc roof that lead-Compl-Dur
'When I came that roof had been leaking' (but it is not leaking now)
- (76) yam may cak-khot-lok-po kan-de mehak tum-mem-mi
house fire burn-Def3-Inf time-Loc he sleep-Compl-Dur
'When the house caught fire, he had been sleeping'

11.3.3 Durative suffix

The suffix used for denoting durative meaning in Manipuri is more like tense suffixes in that it generally occurs in the word-final position. In the case of dynamic verbs, it generally provides present durative meaning. Examples:

- (77) mehak hoytup ca-ri
he apple eat-Dur
'He is eating an apple (now)'
- (78) satresiq-na yam-na laq-ŋl
students-Nom much-Adv noisy-Dur
'The students are being very noisy'

(i) In the case of momentary verbs, the suffix can be used only with a plural actor or theme because such events can be thought of as continuing only when carried out by several individuals. Examples:

- (79) kekceŋ pereŋ ome mekon-de ceŋ-ŋl
ant row one hole-Loc enter-Dur
'A row of ants is entering the hole'
- (80) iran-de numit khudij-gi mi yam-ne si-ri
Iran-Loc day every-Gen person much-Adv die-Dur
'In Iran, many people are dying every day'

(ii) In the case of state verbs, on the other hand, the suffix provides the meaning of the state being persistent at the time of speaking. This is apparently due to the fact that the present durative meaning is provided by the non-future suffix itself in the case of these verbs (see 11.2.2). This is true of the habitual forms of dynamic (and stative) verbs as well which are derived by adding the suffix *gen* to them. When the durative suffix is attached to them, they provide the meaning of persistence. Examples:

- (81) mehak ey-bu saw-ri
he I-Acc angry-Dur
'He is still angry with me'
- (82) hawjik nong meŋ-ŋl
now rain cloudy-Dur
'It is still cloudy now'
- (83) ohen oy-je-re-be-su mehak thebek su-gol-li
old become-Refl-Perf-Inf-also he work work-Hab-Dur
'Even after getting old, he still continues to work'

(iii) It may be followed by the infinitive suffix as in relative clauses, and also by the future suffix *geni*; however, it does not provide the simple future continuous meaning in the latter case, but only a statement with doubt as in the following:

- (84) nong nogyay phawbe layrik pa-ri-geni
you midnight until book read-Dur-Fu
'You will be reading the book until midnight' (said in an ironical sense as the speaker does not believe that he would do so)

(iv) When used with the non-future negative suffix *de*, it provides present durative meaning, but when used with the completive suffix, it gives past durative meaning. Examples:

- (85) mehak cak ca-da-ri
he food eat-NFNg-Dur
'He is not eating food'
- (86) mehak cak ca-ram-da-ri
he food eat-Compl-NFNg-Dur
'He was not eating food'
- (87) mehak cak ca-ram-mi
he food eat-Compl-Dur
'He had been eating food (but not now)'

11.3.4 Progressive suffix

There is a suffix *khi* 'progressive' used only with suffixes denoting future such as *gani* 'future', *loy* 'future negative', *lu* 'imperative', *lo* 'persuasive' (both of which drop *l* after it), *hami* 'prohibitive' *sam* 'concessive' and *pe* 'desiderative'. In the case of negative contexts, however, it has the sense of 'not starting' an activity. Examples:

- (88) mehak hotel esi-do ca-khi-gani
he hotel this-Loc eat-Prog-Fu
'He will continue to eat in this hotel'
- (89) ey lam-mi, ca-khi-gani
I hungry-Dur. eat-Prog-Fu
'I am still hungry, so I will continue to eat'
- (90) mehak lak-i-ri-phaw-be ca-khi-gonu
he come-Neg-NFu-until-Inf eat-Prog-Proh
'Do not start eating until he comes'
- (91) neṅ lam-ma-be-di ca-kh-o
you hungry-Perf-Cond eat-Prog-Pers
'If you are hungry please continue eating'

When used with forms like *anuk* 'once', *anirak* 'twice', etc., it denotes the additional occurrence of the given event for the relevant number of occasions. Example:

- (92) ey-ne layrik adu ahumelek pa-khi-gani
I-Nom book that three-times read-Prog-Fu
'I will read that book for three more times'

The suffix is homophonous with the deictic suffix *khi* 'do and go'; the two can be differentiated from one another by context or usage. Examples:

- (93a) ey ca-khi-ge
I eat-Dei4-Des
'I wish to eat and go'
- (93b) ey ca-khi-ge
I eat-Prog-Des
'I wish to continue to eat'

- (94) *məhak ca-rək-khi-ɡəni*
 he eat-Dei3-Prog-Fu
 'He will continue to eat and come'

Notice that the deictic suffix *khi* 'do and go' cannot occur after another deictic suffix *rək* 'do and come' and hence (94) can only contain the progressive suffix.

11.3.5 Habitual suffix

As we had mentioned earlier (11.2.1.2), sentences containing verbal forms with future or non-future *su* can provide habitual (or generic) meaning provided that they are used in the proper context. In order to specify this meaning unambiguously in a sentence, Manipuri uses the suffix *ɡən* which may be followed by future, non-future, perfect and progressive suffixes. Examples:

- (95) *məhak nuŋthin-da ca-ɡəl-li*
 he afternoon-Loc eat-Hab-NFu
 'He usually dines in the afternoon'
- (96) *məhak saw-ɡən-ɡəni*
 he angry-Hab-fu
 'He will usually be angry'
- (97) *na-be-da-ɡi məhak saw-ɡəl-le*
 ill-Inf-Loc-Gen he angry-Hab-Perf
 'He has been usually getting angry since his illness'
- (98) *məhak saw-ɡəl-ləim-mi*
 he angry-Hab-Compl-NFu
 'He used to be generally angry'
- (99) *məhak həwjik-su saw-ɡəl-li*
 he now-also angry-Hab-Dur
 'He is in the habit of being angry even now'

11.3.6 Quantifier suffix

The suffix *mən* is used in Manipuri as a quantifier suffix; it also functions as an independent verb. As a suffix, it denotes that someone is doing something, or something is happening, for too long or for too many number of times. It also has an additional (modal) connotation, namely that the event is undesirable. Examples:

- (100) *məhak-ki yum cak-məl-le*
 he-Gen house burn-much-Perf
 (i) 'His house has burnt too many times'
 (ii) 'His house has burnt too much' (and nothing can be salvaged from it)
- (101) *əy beja-da cat-məl-le*
 I market-Loc go-much-Perf
 'I have gone to the market too many times'
- (102) *əgag ədu law-məl-li*
 child that cry-much-NFu
 'That child cries too much (or too many times)'

When used with state verbs, however, it generally denotes the occurrence of the state or quality to an excessive degree. Examples:

- (103) *phurk sei oyyon-de cin-mol-li*
 shirt this 1-Loc tight-much-NFv
 'This shirt is too tight for me'

- (104) *onag-sig edu pog-mol-li*
 child-Pl that foolish-much-NFv
 'Those boys are very foolish'

It can also be used for denoting excess in one of the arguments that occur in the sentence, such as the actor, theme, location, associate, etc. This latter connotation can be differentiated from the former (verbal aspect) through the use of the adverb *yamne* 'much, many' next to the relevant argument. The argument would generally lose its case marker if the verbal suffix is related to that particular argument. Examples:

- (105a) *ma-ne mi-du-bu kaw-mol-le*
 he-Nom tran-that-Acc call-much-Perf
 'He has called that man a number of times'

- (105b) *ma-ne mi yam-ne kaw-mol-le*
 he-Nom man many-Adv call-much-Perf
 'He has called a number of persons'

- (105c) *ma-bu mi yam-ne kaw-mol-le*
 he-Acc man many-Adv call-much-Perf
 'Too many persons have called him'

Notice that the patient *mi* 'man' is used without the accusative suffix in (105b) and is modified by the quantifier suffix occurring with the verb. When it does occur with the accusative suffix as in the following sentence (105d), however, the verbal suffix modifies the verb itself:

- (105d) *ma-ne mi-yam-bu kaw-mol-le*
 he-Nom man-many-Acc call-much-Perf
 'He has called (a group of) many persons a number of times'

The following sentences exemplify the modification of other types of arguments. Notice that the suffix can also modify an adverbial occurring in the sentence (as in 108b):

- (106a) *e hotel edu-de ley-mol-le*
 I hotel that-Loc stay-much-Perf
 'I have stayed in that hotel too many times'

- (106b) *ey hotel yam-ne ley-mol-le*
 I hotel many-Adv stay-much-Perf
 'I have stayed in too many hotels'

- (107a) *mehak mi edu-go khat-ne-mol-le*
 he man that-Ccnj quarrel-Rec-much-Perf
 'He has quarrelled with that man too many times'

- (107b) *mehak mi yam-ne khat-ne-mol-le*
 he man many-Adv quarrel-Rec-much-Perf
 'He has quarrelled with too many persons'

(108a) *neg-yeu-mal-le*
 you sell-much-Perf
 'You have sold too many things'

(108b) *neg-top-ne-yeu-mal-le*
 you slow-Adv sell-much-Perf
 'You have been too slow in selling'

Another quantifier suffix meaning completely or sufficiently is *phat* which, however, occurs only with the non-future negative suffix. It also appears to be restricted to state verbs. Examples:

(109) *nehak-ki phurit-tu kəŋ-phat-t-ti*
 you-Gen shirt-that dry-complete-Neg-Dur
 'Your shirt is not completely dry'

(110) *neg-ne purək-pe cəy edu saŋ-phat-te*
 you-Nom bring-Inf stick that long-sufficient-Neg
 'The stick that you brought is not sufficiently long'

In the case of state verbs, quantity (or degree) is denoted by several other suffixes; these make primarily a distinction between 'very' and 'slight' of which the former generally involves reduplication of the verb, with the suffix being attached to its first occurrence.

For denoting the notion 'very', the suffix attached most commonly to state verbs is *thrik*, which has its initial consonant unaspirated after verbal bases that have an initial aspirate or fricative. In the case of some of these latter verbs, the initial consonant of the suffix gets voiced as well. The suffix also has the meaning 'unusually' in some of its usages. Examples:

	<i>verb</i>		<i>modified form</i>	
(a)	<i>nan</i>	'clean'	<i>nan-thrik nan</i>	'very clean'
	<i>ten</i>	'short'	<i>ten-thrik ten</i>	'very short'
	<i>kəŋ</i>	'thin'	<i>kəŋ-thrik kəŋ</i>	'very thin'
	<i>yaŋ</i>	'fast'	<i>yaŋ-thrik yaŋ</i>	'very fast'
	<i>ləŋ</i>	'bright'	<i>ləŋ-thrik ləŋ</i>	'very bright'
(b)	<i>thəŋ</i>	'late'	<i>thəŋ-trik thəŋ</i>	'very late'
	<i>səŋ</i>	'green'	<i>səŋ-trik səŋ</i>	'very green'
	<i>hoŋ</i>	'cheap'	<i>hoŋ-trik hoŋ</i>	'very cheap'
(c)	<i>khu</i>	'narrow'	<i>khu-drik khu</i>	'very narrow'
	<i>khoy</i>	'bent'	<i>khoy-drik khoy</i>	'very bent'

(111) *ma-gi ka əsi nan-thrik nal-li*
 he-Gen room this clean-very clean-NFu
 'His room is very clean'

(112) *ma-gi layrik-tu hoŋ-trik hoŋ-gi*
 he-Gen book-that cheap-very cheap-NFu
 'His book is very cheap'

(113) *ma-gi yam-gi ləmbi-da khu-drik khu-y*
 he-Gen house-Gen path-that narrow-very narrow-NFu
 'The road to his house is very narrow'

In addition to this, there are several other suffixes with the same meaning 'very' of which some are restricted to a few bases and some to a single base each. We have recorded the following suffixes of this nature:

<i>suffix</i>	<i>verb</i>		<i>modified form</i>	
<i>driṅ</i>	<i>cum</i>	'straight'	<i>cum-driṅ cum</i>	'very straight'
<i>drit</i>	<i>pa</i>	'thin'	<i>pa-drit pa</i>	'very thin'
<i>pək</i>	<i>tum</i>	'round'	<i>tum-pək tum</i>	'very round'
<i>rok</i>	<i>ḡaw</i>	'white'	<i>ḡaw-rok ḡaw</i>	'very white'
<i>sik</i>	<i>kut</i>	'dented'	<i>kut-sik kut</i>	'very dented'
<i>sok</i>	<i>ḡaw</i>	'white'	<i>ḡaw-sok ḡaw</i>	'very white'
<i>suk</i>	<i>mu</i>	'black'	<i>mu-suk mu</i>	'very black'
<i>sək</i>	<i>pik</i>	'small'	<i>pik-sək pik</i>	'very small'
<i>səṅ</i>	<i>ḡaṅ</i>	'red'	<i>ḡaṅ-səṅ ḡaṅ</i>	'very red'
<i>throg</i>	<i>wəṅ</i>	'tall'	<i>wəṅ-throg wəṅ</i>	'very tall'
<i>droṅ</i>	<i>səṅ</i>	'long'	<i>səṅ-droṅ səṅ</i>	'very long'

Examples:

- (114) *phi əsi pa-drit pa-y*
cloth this thin-very thin-imp
'Make this cloth very thin'
- (115) *ma-gi phi ḡaw-sok ḡaw-wi*
he-Gen cloth white-very white-NFu
'His cloth is very white'
- (116) *yəṅ ədu-gi məməy səṅ-droṅ səṅ-ṅi*
monkey that-Gen tail long-very long-NFu
'The tail of that monkey is very long'

The suffix *throk* 'very' occurs with several verbs like the following:

<i>pək</i>	'broad'	<i>caw</i>	'big'
<i>waw</i>	'dirty'	<i>law</i>	'wide'
<i>van</i>	'not heavy'		

- (117) *əy-gi pət yəṅ-thrik yəṅ-ṅi*
I-Gen luggage light-very light-NFu
'My luggage is very light'

The opposite meaning 'slightly' is denoted, in the case of most of the state verbs, by the combination of the suffixes *da-na* which is to be followed by one of the form-ending tense suffixes. The verbs *mu* 'black' and *saw* 'angry', however, take *raṅ-na* for this purpose, the verb *ḡaw* 'white' takes *ru-na* and the verbs *ḡaṅ* 'red' and *səṅ* 'green' take *ru-na*. Examples:

<i>səṅ-da-na-y</i>	'(it) is slightly green'
<i>khu-da-na-y</i>	'(it) is slightly narrow'
<i>ḡaṅ-loy-na-y</i>	'(it) is slightly red'
<i>mu-raṅ-na-y</i>	'(it) is slightly black'

11.3.7 Aspectual prefixes

There are mainly four different prefixes that are added to verbs in order to indicate two main types of aspectual meanings. The prefixes *pa* and *i* are used for denoting the meaning of completion, whereas the

prefixes *khəp* and *pək* are used for denoting the meaning of suddenness. Two of these, namely *i* and *pək* generally occur with a negative suffix. However, the former prefix is also used, quite frequently, without the accompaniment of the negative.

In addition to these, there are four other prefixes of restricted usage, namely *ca se*, *tə* and *tha*, which have degree modification as their function; these occur mainly with state verbs.

The prefix *pum* has the alternant *pug* when followed by verbs with an initial velar sound (*k*, *kh*, or *g*). The prefix *i*, on the other hand, takes the glide *y* when followed by a verb beginning with *i* and the glide *w* when followed by one beginning with *u*.

Both these prefixes are generally attached to the first member of a reduplicated verbal base. This reduplication affects only the verbal root; suffixes which occur with the verb are attached to the second member of the reduplicated form. Examples:

- (118) *ce ədu pum-cak cak-i*
paper that Compl-burn burn-NFu
'That paper burnt completely'
- (119) *lin-du məkon-da pum-can can-sin-kh-re*
snake-that hole-Loc Complete-enter enter-in-Dei4-Perf
'The snake has completely entered the hole'
- (120) *məhak wari-du pug-kaw kaw-re*
he story-that Compl-forget forget-Perf
'He has forgotten that story completely'

The prefix *pum* generally provides the meaning of carrying out the relevant activity completely to its expected conclusion. Examples:

- (121) *məhak-ne thəg-du pum-phak phak-i*
he-Nom door-that complete-open open-NFu
'He opened that door completely'
- (122) *məhak-ne thəbak-tu pum-təw təw-re*
he-Nom work-that complete-do do-Perf
'He has done that work completely'

In the case of state verbs, this completion involves the attainment of the property to its fullest extent. Examples:

- (123) *oja-ne nəhak-ki thəbak-tu pum-pen pen-li*
teacher-Nom you-Gen work-that complete-satisfy satisfy-NFu
'The teacher is completely satisfied by your work'
- (124) *məhak-ki puk-tu pum-liŋ liŋ-gi*
he-Gen belly-that complete-hard hard-NFu
'His belly has become completely hard'

In the case of some verbs like *khə* 'think', *tə* 'learn', *te* 'hear', and *hə* 'start', it denotes the meaning of doing something completely once more. Examples:

- (125) *məhak-ne jəgəy-da pum-təm təm-mi*
he-Nom dance-that complete-learn learn-NFu
'He has learnt the dance (once again) completely'

- (126) *məhək-ne ʃəʃək-iŋ pum-ʃəw ʃəw-wi*
 he-Nom work-that complete-start start-NFu
 'He started the work once again (with the intention of completing it)'

In the case of the verb *ləy* 'stay', on the other hand, it provides the sense of permanence. Example:

- (127) *məhək məysor-do pum-ləy ləy-gəŋi*
 he Mysore-Loc complete-stay stay-Fu
 'He will stay in Mysore permanently'

It can also have its meaning of completeness shifted from the event to one of its arguments, such that it conveys the meaning of exhaustiveness affecting the argument concerned. Examples:

- (128) *mə-ŋi ləykon əsi-do ləy pum-sat sat-li*
 he-Gen garden this-Loc flower complete-blossom blossom-NFu
 'All flowers of his garden have blossomed'
- (129) *məhək ləyrik pum-ləŋ ləŋ-ŋi*
 he book Compl-throw throw-NFu
 'He threw away all the books'

In the case of state verbs of the dimensional type, it provides the sense of excess. Examples:

- (130) *nəŋ-ne pʊrək-pə cəy pumnomək pum-saŋ saŋ-ŋi*
 you-Nom bring-Inf stick all complete-long long-NFu
 'All the sticks that you brought are too long' (longer than necessary)
- (131) *mə-ne pʊrək-pə cəy pum-tən tel-li*
 he-Nom bring-Inf stick complete-short short-NFu
 'The stick that he brought is too short'

This prefix can be related with the verb *pum* 'to do something all together'; this verb provides the meaning 'whole' in compound words like *ʃəbʊm* 'one whole month' (*ʃə* 'month'), *wəpʊm* 'unbroken bamboo' and *upʊm* 'whole tree'. This latter meaning occurs in some of its usages as a prefix as well. Example:

- (132) *əy-ne əlu-siŋ ədu pum-ʃlʊt ʃlʊt-li*
 I-Nom potato-Pl that complete-boil boil-NFu
 'I boiled the potatoes whole (without cutting)'

As mentioned earlier, the prefix *l* appears to occur more frequently in a negative context than in the affirmative one. Further, it denotes more prominently the sense of doing something unrestrictedly or to an excessive degree, even though it does denote the meaning of completion in some contexts. Examples:

- (133) *məhək-ne wari-du i-kaw kaw-re*
 he-Nom story-that complete-forget forget-Perf
 He has forgotten the story completely
- (134) *glas-siŋ əsi i-caw caw-wi*
 glass-Pl this complete-big big-NFu
 'These glasses are bigger than what is needed'

In the case of state verbs, it generally gives the meaning of degree. Examples:

- (135) *kobithomcet esi i-naw now-wi*
cauliflower this very-fresh fresh-NFu
'This cauliflower is very fresh'
- (136) *kobi esi i-naw now-d-re*
cabbage this very-fresh fresh-Neg-Perf
'This cabbage is only a little bit fresh'

One can emphasize its distributive sense by further reduplicating the prefixed verb. Examples:

- (137) *kelkotta-gi maphom khudig-mak-to i-sa i-sa sa-y*
Calcutta-Gen place each-Emph-Loc very-hot very-hot-NFu
'It is hot everywhere in Calcutta'

The prefix *khəŋ* has the sense of doing, happening and becoming something suddenly, when it is used with action, process and state verbs respectively. Examples:

- (138) *əŋaŋ-du-no skul-da-gi khəŋ-cen cel-li*
boy-that-Nom school-Loc-Gen sudden-run run-NFu
'The boys ran suddenly from the school'
- (139) *upambi-du khəŋ-waŋ waŋ-gi*
plant-that sudden-tall tall-NFu
'The plant became tall suddenly'

As in the case of the prefix *i*, it is possible to reduplicate the prefixed verb in this case also, but the meaning that this provides is one of interruption. Example:

- (140) *əŋaŋ-du-no khəŋ-cen khəŋ-cen cel-li*
boy-that-Nom sudden-run sudden-run-NFu
'The boy ran suddenly with interruptions'

It is possible to relate this prefix with the verb *khəŋ* 'start'; there is, however, a tonal difference between the two.

The prefix *pak* is generally used in negative contexts, but in some cases it occurs in affirmative contexts as well. It has the meaning 'suddenly' in this latter use. Unlike the previous three prefixes, however, it does not involve any reduplication.

Examples:

- (141) *yoŋ-na əŋaŋ-da-gi ləphoy-du pak-lak-i*
monkey-Nom child-Loc-Gen banana-that sudden-snatch-NFu
'A monkey snatched the banana suddenly from the child'
- (142) *məhak-no bon-du pak-pəy-du-no ləŋ-gi*
he-Nom ball-that sudden-pick-that-Adv throw-NFu
'He picked up the ball suddenly and threw'

More frequently, however, it occurs in negative contexts in order to indicate (i) that the relevant action cannot be carried out suddenly or easily, or (ii) that the event takes place only rarely. Examples:

- 142) mohak leithen-de pak-eot-te
he market-Loc sudden-go-Neg
'He hardly goes to the market'
- 143) ey-no para-du pak-tak-pa gam-de
I-Nem lesson-that sudden-teach-Inf able-Neg
'I cannot teach the lesson so easily'

In the case of state verbs, its use in a negative context provides the meaning that it takes some time to attain the relevant state. Examples:

- 144) nonju-tha-de phi pak-kay-de
rainy-season-Loc cloth sudden-dry-Neg
'It takes time for the cloth to be dry during the rainy season'
- 145) thebok esi tow-bo-de mohak pak-hoy-te
work this do-Inf-Loc he sudden-skill-Neg
'It takes time for him to be skilled to do this work'

The four degree modifying prefixes mentioned above occur only with state verbs. One of them, *to*, may involve reduplication for greater emphasis. The prefix, however, is attached to both the *to* of the reduplicated verb. Examples:

- 146) macu esi to-gag to-gag-gi
colour this very-red very-red-NFu
'This colour is extremely red'
- 147) phurit asi to-hop to-hop-pi
shirt this very-loose very-loose-NFu
'This shirt is extremely loose'

The remaining three prefixes require the suffix *no* to be attached to the verbal base. The prefix *ca* has the additional sense of the property being of undesirably high degree. Examples:

- 148) cak odu ca-bet-no-y
rice that very-soft-Rec-NFu
'That (cooked) rice is too soft'
- 149) nehak-ki wakhon odu se-ran-no-re
you-Gen thought that very-wrong-Rec-Perf
'Your thought has become completely wrong'

13.8 Aspectual meaning of spatial affixes

We have pointed out in the eighth chapter, some of the spatial suffixes have aspectual connotations in their usages. The following is a brief summary of those connotations.

(i) Three of the directional suffixes, namely *khat* 'up', *tho* 'down', and *thok* 'out' provide the actual meanings of 'begin', 'continue' and 'finish' (or 'complete') respectively in the case of some transitive verbs. Examples:

tak	'teach'	tak-khat-li	'began to teach'
hay	'say'	hay-got-li	'began to say'

gay	'wait'	gay-tha-y	'continued to wait'
yeg	'look'	yeg-tha-y	'continued to look'
ca	'eat'	ca-thok-i	'finished eating'
cak	'burn'	cak-thok-i	'burnt completely'

(ii) The suffix *khat* 'up' provides the meaning 'begin' when used with state verbs as well; but in this latter case it also adds the inchoative meaning 'become' to it. Examples:

kon	'hard'	kon-khat-li	'started to become hard'
keg	'dry'	keg-khat-li	'started to become dry'

There is an interesting difference between the meaning 'begin' of the suffix *khat* 'up' on the one hand, and of the aspectual verb *haw* 'start' on the other. The former denotes the beginning of an event that may continue (iteratively) for some time, whereas the latter denotes the starting of an event that may occur only once. Examples:

- (152a) mehak-ne phu-get-li
he-Nom beat-up-NFu
'He began to beat (may continue to beat)'

- (152b) mehak-ne phu-be haw-wi
he-Nom beat-Inf start-NFu
'He started to beat (may beat only once)'

(iii) The suffix *sin* 'in' can provide the meaning of 'doing something for a long time' in the case of some dynamic verbs, and that of 'attaining the relevant state completely' in the case of some state verbs. Examples:

phem	'sit'	phem-jil-li	'sat for a long time'
kon	'hard'	kon-sil-li	'became completely hard'

(iv) The suffixes *khat* 'up' and *thok* 'out' can provide the sense of 'gradual' and 'sudden' changes respectively in the case of some dynamic verbs; they can provide related meanings in the case of some state verbs as well (i.e. gradual and sudden changes respectively leading to the relevant states). Examples:

lep	'stop'	lep-khat-li	'stopped gradually'
		lep-thok-i	'stopped suddenly'
sag	'long'	sag-get-li	'became long gradually'
		sag-dok-i	'became long suddenly'
noy	'fat'	noy-khat-li	'became fat gradually'
		noy-thok-i	'became fat suddenly'

(v) The deictic suffix *rak* 'come and do something' has the extended meaning of denoting 'an on-going activity that had started in the past' in the case of durative dynamic verbs, and of denoting 'a gradual process that leads to the relevant state' in the case of state verbs. Examples:

khen	'think'	khol-lak-i	'have been thinking'
thaw	'drive'	thaw-rak-i	'have been driving'
li	'narrate'	li-rak-i	'have been narrating'

gag	'red'	gag-gok-i	'became red gradually'
sa	'hot'	sa-rak-i	'became hot gradually'
hey	'skilled'	hey-rak-i	'became skilled gradually'

11.3.9 Aspectual meaning of case suffixes

The contrast between the use versus non-use of three of the cases suffixes, namely the accusative *hu* locative *do* and genitive *gi*, has the effect of conveying certain aspectual connotations.

(i) Both the accusative as well as the locative suffixes show a distinction between habitual and non-habitual (specific) meanings depending upon whether the suffixes have been left unspecified or specified respectively. Examples:

- (153a) onag-ne huy kaw-wi
boy-Nom dog kick-NFu
'The boy kicks dogs'
- (153b) onag-ne huy-tu kaw-wi
boy-Nom dog-Acc kick-NFu
'The boy kicked a dog'
- (154a) onag-ne cin ka-y
boy-Nom hill climb-NFu
'The boy climbs hills'
- (154b) onag-ne cin-de ka-y
boy-Nom hill-Loc climb-NFu
'The boy climbed a hill'
- (155a) onag ayuk-te saw-wi
boy morning-Loc angry-NFu
'The boy is (generally) angry in the morning'
- (155b) onag-du ayuk-te saw-wi
boy-that morning-Loc angry-NFu
'The boy was angry in the morning (today)'

(ii) The use versus non-use of the genitive suffix after the locative in the case of verbs like *khay* 'collect', *tan* 'learn', *soi* 'borrows' etc. (for denoting the beneficiary or the experiencer) has a comparable effect on the aspectual meaning of the verb: its use denotes a past event whereas its non-use denotes an on-going event. Examples:

- (156a) mohak tombo-do-gi isoy tem-mi
he tomba-Loc-Gen song learn-NFu
'He learns a song from Tomba'
- (156b) mohak tombo-do isoy tem-mi
he Tomba-Loc song learn-NFu
'He is learning songs from Tomba'
- (157a) oy puna-do-gi risorc tow-wi
I Poona-Loc-Gen research do-NFu
'I did research in Poona'

- (157b) *ay puna-de riserc tow-di*
 I Poona-Loc research do-Dur
 'I am doing research in Poona'

(iii) In the case of state verbs, the use of the accusative suffix with the theme (i.e. the projection of the theme as a patient) has the effect of changing the state into a process. Examples:

- (158a) *mehak ey saw-wi*
 he I angry-NFu
 'He is angry with me'
- (158b) *mehak ey-bu saw-wi*
 he I-Acc angry-NFu
 'He shows anger (towards) me'
- (159a) *mehak tombe ningsi-gi*
 he Tomba remember-NFu
 'He has the memory of Tomba'
- (159b) *mehak tombe-bu ningsi-gi*
 he Tomba-Acc remember-NFu
 'He remembers Tomba'

11.3.10 Use of aspectual verbs

There are several verbs in Manipuri which are used for denoting aspectual connotations. We have noted fourteen such verbs, which can be grouped into four different groups as shown below, on the basis of the kind of aspectual meanings that are denoted by them.

Group I : 'start' verbs

hew	'start'	thu	'start quickly'
-----	---------	-----	-----------------

Group II : 'repeat' verbs

han	'repeat'	toy	'frequent'
-----	----------	-----	------------

Group III : 'stop' verbs

- | | | | | |
|-----|------|------------------------|------|-------------------------|
| (a) | kham | 'cause to stop' | thig | 'stop (by obstruction)' |
| (b) | tok | 'stop intentionally' | lep | 'stop (interference)' |
| (c) | pha | 'stop being something' | let | 'almost stop' |
| | khok | 'stop (bleeding)' | | |

Group IV : 'finish' verbs

toy	'finish'	pha	'complete'
cup	'complete (time)'		

(i) 'Start' verbs: The two start verbs can occur with both dynamic as well as state verbs. In the latter case they provide inchoative meaning. They differ from one another in the kind of start (normal or quick) that takes place. Examples:

- (160) *ey-na pug mega-de layrik pa-be hew-wi*
 I-Nom hour five-Loc book read-inf start-NFu
 'I started to read the book at five O'clock'

- (161) *temba-ne tum-be thu-y*
Tamba-Nom sleep-Inf start (quick)-NFu
'Tamba went to sleep quickly'
- (162) *mohak-ne saw-be thu-y*
he-Nom angry-Inf start (quick)-NFu
'He became angry very quickly'

The verb *haw* (but not *thu*) can also be used with abstract or even concrete nouns provided that their use implies an underlying event. Examples:

- (163) *oy-ne thebak haw-wi*
I-Nom work start-NFu
'I started (doing) the work'
- (164) *mohak-ne layrik haw-wi*
he-Nom book start-NFu
'He started (reading) the book'

When used with the infinitive forms of certain resultative verbs, the verb *thu* 'start quickly' shifts the emphasis from the aspectual meaning of 'start' to the manner meaning of being quick; the sentence in such cases indicates completion rather than initiation.

Examples:

- (165) *mohak-ne ca-be thu-y*
he-Nom eat-Inf start (quick)-NFu
'He was quick in (completing) the eating'
- (166) *mohak-ne cak thoq-be thu-y*
he-Nom food cook-Inf start (quick)-NFu
'He was quick in cooking (i.e. in completing the job)'

(ii) 'Repeat' verbs: There is no aspectual verb as such for denoting the continuation of an event; this meaning is generally conveyed by one of the verbal suffixes mentioned above, such as (a) the verb-ending (durative) suffix *li* (11.3.3), (b) progressive *kho* (11.3.4) or (c) the directional *tho* 'down' (11.3.8). However, there do occur two verbs which denote the iteration or repetition of an event, namely *han* 'repeat' and *toy* 'frequent'.

The verb *han* 'repeat' generally occurs with a number word that is meant for denoting the exact number of repetitions, such as *anuk* 'once', *anirak* 'twice', *ahumrak* 'thrice', etc. Examples:

- (167) *mohak wari li-be omuk hal-li*
he story narrate-Inf once repeat-NFu
'He repeated the story once'
- (168) *oy-ne soy sok-pe ahumrak hal-li*
I-Nom song sing-Inf thrice repeat-NFu
'I repeated the singing of the song thrice'

Its use as an aspectual verb is further restricted by the fact that it can generally be used for referring to the repetition of linguistic activities such as *pa* 'read', *i* 'write', *ram* 'teach', *gag* 'speak', etc. For denoting repetitions of other activities, the verb is generally used in its adverbial form. Examples:

- (169) *məhək sən əmuk hən-nə θa-y*
 he money once repeat-Adv send-NFu
 'He sent money once again'
- (170) *məhək sən məri-rək hən-nə pi*
 he money four-times repeat-Adv give(NFu)
 'He gave money four times'

It cannot be used with state verbs; on the other hand, the verb *rov* 'frequent' is comparatively rather unconstrained, as it can occur with both state as well as dynamic verbs. In the case of state verbs, it refers to the frequent occurrence of the event that leads to the relevant state. Examples:

- (171) *məhək-nə cə-be toy*
 he-Nom eat-Inf frequent(NFu)
 'He was frequent in eating'
- (172) *yum əsi yu-be toy*
 house this leak-Inf frequent(NFu)
 'This house is frequent in leaking'
- (173) *məhək-nə saw-be toy*
 he-Nom angry-Inf frequent(NFu)
 'He is frequent in getting angry'

(iii) 'Stop' verbs: The group of stop verbs contains seven different bases indicating seven different stoppages. Four of these form two contrastive pairs, differentiated on the basis of the distinctions (a) causative (*kham* and *thig*) versus non-causative (*tok* and *lep*), and (b) intentional (*kham* and *tok*) versus non-intentional (*thig* and *lep*). Examples:

- (174a) *əy-nə məhək cət-pə kham-mi*
 I-Nom he go-Inf stop-NFu
 'I stopped him going'
- (174b) *məhək cət-pə tok-i*
 he go-Inf stop-NFu
 'He stopped going'
- (175a) *əy-nə məhək cət-pə thig-gi*
 I-Nom he go-Inf stop-NFu
 'I stopped him going (by placing obstructions)'
- (175b) *məhək cət-pə lep-pi*
 he go-Inf stop-NFu
 'He stopped going (due to interference)'

This volitionality distinction gets reflected in the fact that the verb *tok* cannot be used with non-volitional verbs like *cək* 'burn', *yw* 'leak', etc., whereas the verb *lep* can be used with them. Example

- (176) *məy cək-pə lep-pi (*tok-i)*
 fire burn-Inf stop-NFu
 'The fire stopped burning'

The two non-causative stop-verbs can take the causative suffix *hən* for changing into causatives, but the meaning that this derivation provides is rather different, though related:

tok-hen 'stop someone doing something through persuasion (volitionality retained)'
 lep-hen 'stop someone doing something by ordering (no volitionality in the doer)'

Examples.

ey-no mehak isay toin-be tok-hol-li
 I-Nom he song learn-Inf stop-Cs-NFu
 'I (persuaded) him to stop learning the song'

(179) ey-no mehak layrik yon-be lep-hol-li
 I-Nom he book sell-Inf stop-Cs-NFu
 'I stopped him (by ordering) selling the book'

The fifth stop verb *pho* (related to the state verb *pho* 'good') is generally used for indicating that the persons or objects concerned have stopped showing certain undesirable properties. Examples:

(179) mehak saw-be pho-y
 he angry-Inf stop-NFu
 'He stopped being angry'

(180) than asi meya pag-be pho-re
 knife this mouth blunt-Inf stop-Perf
 'This knife has stopped being blunt' (It is sharp now)

The fact that the verb *pho* can also provide the meaning 'good' makes it possible for some of these sentences to be ambiguous on this point. Example:

(181) pambi asi-de pan-be thabi kha-be pho-re
 plant this-Loc bear-Inf cucumber bitter-Inf stop-Perf
 (i) 'The cucumber that this plant bears has stopped being bitter'
 (ii) 'It is good (that) the cucumber that this plant bears is bitter'

Though both *lep* and *pho* denote the stoppage of a person or object showing a characteristic, the two differ from one another in that the former denotes the stoppage of an event that leads to the establishment of the characteristic, whereas the latter denotes the cessation of the characteristic itself. One might probably include the latter in the next group of 'finish' verbs.

The verb *lar* denotes the imminence of stoppage rather than stoppage as such; it can also be used for denoting the occurrence of an event 'haltingly'. Examples:

(182) nugsit sit-po lot-le
 wind blow-Inf stop (almost)-NFu
 'The blowing of the wind has almost stopped'

(183) mehak goni garag-si lak-po lot-li
 he today yesterday-this come-Inf stop (almost)-NFu
 'He has almost stopped coming nowadays'

(184) mehak layrik pa-be lot-li
 he book read-Inf stop (almost)-NFu
 'He reads the book haltingly'

The last verb in this group, namely *khak* has a very restricted usage. It occurs only in the context of bleeding. One can also use the verb *lar* in this context. Examples

- (185a) i thok-po khak-i
blood bleed-Inf stop-NFu
'The bleeding (of blood) stopped'

- (185b) i thok-po lat-li
blood bleed-Inf stop-NFu
'The bleeding (of blood) stopped'

(v) 'Finish' verbs: There are three 'finish' or 'complete' verbs of which *lay* indicates the simple ending of an event, *pha* the completion of an event, and *cup* the completion of time. The second one is generally used with the noun *mopun* 'completion' apparently to emphasize this meaning. Examples:

- (186a) layrik i-be loy-re
book write-Inf finish-Perf
'The writing of the book has been finished' (may have been finished for the day only)

- (186b) layrik i-be mopun pha-re
book write-Inf completion complete-Perf
'The writing of the book has been completed'

- (187a) ey-na thebak loy-re
I-Nom work finish-Perf
'I have finished the work'

- (187b) ey-na layrik pa-be pha-re
I-Nom book read-Inf complete-Perf
'I have completed the reading of the book' (I have learnt the lessons)

11.4 Mood distinctions

As we have mentioned earlier, the question as to whether the primary distinction represented by the two verb-ending suffixes, *li* and *kani* is one of tense (non-future/future) or of mood (realis/irrealis) is under dispute. We have regarded it as one of tense because in most of the usages the two appear to have the function of denoting the relevant temporal distinction.

Manipuri differs from other Tibeto-Burman languages like the neighbouring Mao Naga (Giridhar 1994), or khezha (Kapfo 1993) in not showing a complex system of modal distinctions. It has very few suffixes that can be regarded as modal in their primary connotation. However, there are several verbal bases in this language which are used with the infinitive form of the main verb in order to denote the various epistemic and deontic modal distinctions.

11.4.1 Use of modal suffixes

As mentioned earlier, modal suffixes occurring in Manipuri do not appear to form a regular pattern; they appear to have derived from different sources and can therefore only be listed with examples; they cannot be systematically contrasted..

(i) The suffix *gani* or *ni* can be added to non-future forms of verbs in order to indicate the epistemic (judgement) notion 'suppose'; this suffix may be related to the future suffix *gani* but in this usage it does not provide any future meaning. Examples:

- (188) mahak-su cak ca-ni-ni
he-also food eat-NFu-suppose
'I suppose that he has also taken food'

- 1001) tombo-su yam-do cat-lom-mi-ni
Tombo-also house-Loc go-Comp1-NFu-suppose
'I suppose Tombo also had gone home'

(ii) The suffix *kum* has the meaning 'appears' when used with some verbs like *num* 'sleep', *tok* 'laugh', *rov* 'fly', *nok* 'laugh', etc. In the case of other verbs like *vu* 'leak', *kog* 'bulge', *sum* 'squeeze', it has the meaning 'slightly'. Thus is, in contexts in which the latter (degree) meaning is inapplicable, it appears to provide the modal connotation. The verb which takes this suffix is generally followed by the forms of the auxiliary verb *taw* 'do'. Examples:

- 1002) mehak-ne tok-kum taw-wi
he-Nom resign-appear do-NFu
'He appears to have resigned'
- 1003) mehak-ne sum-gum taw-wi
he-Nom squeeze-appear do-NFu
'He appears to have squeezed (it)'

(iii) Another suffix with related meaning is *da* used in constructions of the following type:

- 1004) mehak ca-khi-da-y
he eat-Dei4-think-NFu
'He appears to have eaten (I think so)'
- 1005) modu nan-khi-da-y
it red-Dei4-think-NFu
'It appears to have become red (I think so)'

(iv) There is a desiderative suffix *ge* 'wish to' which has a wide range of usages. We have treated it as basically an illocutionary suffix, and have described its usage in more detail in a following paper (see 14.3.2).

- 1006) ay cak ca-ge
I food eat-wish
'I wish to eat food'

4.2 Use of modal verbs

Modal meanings are more frequently indicated in Manipuri through the use of modal verbs. These function as auxiliaries to main verbs in that the various verb-ending suffixes are attached to them. The main verbs precede them in their infinitive form.

We have grouped these modal verbs into two main classes depending upon whether they denote (a) the speaker's assessment concerning the actuality of an event (epistemic mood) and (b) the external or internal compulsions which form the basis of this actuality (deontic mood).

Epistemic verbs

- | | | | | |
|----|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------|----------------------------------|
| a) | ciy-ne
low
khen | 'doubt'
'assume'
'think' | tha-je
khen | 'believe'
'know' |
| b) | da
oy
cum | 'appear'
'possible'
'correct' | man
ya
lan | 'appear'
'may'
'incorrect' |

(ii) *Deontic verbs*

(a)	ceŋ	'need'	ta	'ought to'
	phə	'better'	gəm	'can (able to)'
	niŋ	'wish'	həy	'can (skilled)'
	pam	'desire'		
(b)	tek	'persuade'	khan	'dissuade'
	ŋaŋ	'advice'	ni	'request'
	həŋ	'ask'	hav	'ask'

Examples:

- (195a) məhak həyeŋ lak-kəni həy-bə əy-ne khəl-li
 he tomorrow come-Fu say-Inf I-Nom think-NFu
 'I think he will come tomorrow'
- (195b) məhak həyeŋ lak-kə-de-bə mal-li
 he tomorrow come-Fu-Emph-Inf appear-NFu
 'It appears that he will come tomorrow'
- (195c) məhak həyeŋ lak-kəni niŋ-ŋi
 he tomorrow come-Fu wish-NFu
 'I wish (that) he will come tomorrow'
- (195d) əy-ne maŋon-de həyeŋ lak-ne-bə hay
 I-Nom he-Loc tomorrow come-Adv-Inf ask
 'I asked him to come tomorrow'

Chapter 12

MODIFYING CONSTRUCTIONS

12.1 Introduction

There are two main types of modifying constructions called adjectival and adverbial that can be formed in Manipuri. The former modify a noun in a noun phrase, and are derived primarily by adding the infinitive suffix *ho* to verbal forms. The latter modify the verb in a sentence (or the sentence as a whole) and are derived primarily by attaching the suffix *no* to verbal forms.

Both these constructions are sentential in nature; the former can be identified as relative clauses and the latter as adverbial clauses, with both of them having one or more of their arguments being left unspecified. There is also the possibility of regarding the latter constructions as case-marked arguments; that is, the adverbial suffix *no* may be identified with the nominative suffix *na*, as there are other related constructions that can be regarded as ending in other case suffixes like the locative *do* and the conjunctive *sa*. However, this would be in conflict with our claim (4.1.1) that the inflectional suffixes of nouns and verbs are exclusive of one another in this language. Notice, however, that this latter claim is supported by the general structure of this language.

Adverbial meanings can also be represented in this language with the help of affixes or particles that are attached to verbs. There are also nominal constructions, i.e. constructions that contain an infinitive form of the verb, which can be used for denoting adverbial connotations. The fact that noun phrases occurring as arguments on the one hand, and adverbials of different types (location, time, manner, degree, quantity, mood, etc.) on the other, form a gradation rather than two sharply differentiated functions is apparently the basis of this variety in the representation of adverbial notions in this language.

As we will be pointing out in detail later, Manipuri does not appear to have nominal and verbal modifications as distinct grammatical functions; instead, the language appears to treat both of them as lexically 'verbal' functions: a speaker may represent adjectival or adverbial notions through full verbs (with the main verb occurring in its infinitive form), or, alternatively, he may represent them as subordinate (non-finite) forms of verbs that can be attached to nouns or verbs. The 'verbal' nature of these latter constructions is revealed by the fact that they can retain many of the verbal distinctions such as those of tense, aspect, mood, space and voice. This is especially true of adjectival constructions.

12.2 Adjectival modifiers

As we have pointed out in the fourth chapter (4.1.2), Manipuri does not have a distinct word-class of adjectives. Lexical items which translate as adjectives function as regular verbs in this language. They occur with all the verbal suffixes like tense, aspect and mood markers, valency-changing suffixes, and spatial (directional and deictic) suffixes. They do form a subgroup of verbs called statives, but this subgroup includes other types of lexical items like adverbials in addition to these adjectival lexical items, as we have pointed out in the seventh chapter (see 7.2).

In order to use these adjectival verbal bases in the adnominal position, one has to obligatorily attach the relativizing suffix *do* to them; that is, they are like other verbal bases on this point as well. As

suggested by Bhat (1994:193), these adnominal constructions function as presupposed predications rather than as nominal modifiers (see also 4.1.2.iii above). They provide reference-modification rather than reference-modification. These constructions also retain all the tense, aspect and mood distinctions as we will be pointing out below. This absence of reference-modification as a distinct function in Manipuri is correlatable with the above-mentioned fact that it does not have any distinct category of adjectives.

Traditionally, adjectival (verbal) bases which occur with the infinitive suffix *bo* and the prefix *a* are generally regarded as adjectives in Manipuri. Consider, for example, the following noun phrases:

a-naq-bo phi prefix-red-Inf cloth	'red cloth'
ga a-hij-bo fish prefix-raw-Inf	'raw fish'
isig a-sa-bo water prefix-hot-Inf	'hot water'
mi a-can-bo man prefix-like-Inf	'likable person'

All these noun phrases are considered to contain a head noun preceded or followed by an adjective. There is no basis, however, to regard these 'adjectives' as anything different from minimal relative clauses (i.e. relative clauses which retain only the bare verbal base) because non-adjectival verbal bases can also occur in such constructions, and further, all these can have additional arguments or verbal terminations added to them, with the prefix *a* being deleted in such extended constructions. Examples:

mi a-ca-bo man prefix-eat-Inf	'man who ate'
mi a-tij-bo man prefix-gather-Inf	'people who gathered'
aynon-de cam-me-bo ca I-Loc insipid-Perf-Inf tea	'tea which has become insipid for me'
aynon-de yol-la-bo phi I-Loc sell-Perf-Inf cloth	'cloth which has been sold to me'

12.3 Relative clauses

Manipuri makes use of two main types of clauses for carrying out the function of relative clauses (modification of nouns through sentences); they are

- (i) External relative clauses, in which equi-deletion occurs inside the relative clause, and the correlative noun (head noun) occurs outside the clause, and
- (ii) Internal relative clauses, in which equi-deletion occurs outside the relative clause, and the correlative noun is retained inside the clause.

In both these types of relative clauses, the finite verb is changed into a non-finite one by attaching the infinitive suffix *bo* to it. The second type of relative clause, however, is rather infrequently used in the language. It is also more constrained as far as the function of the noun that gets equi-deleted. The most frequently used relative clause is the external one.

The distinction between these two types of relative clauses can be exemplified with the help of the following set of sentences:

- (1a) *caw-he-ne agag-bu phu-y*
 Chaoba-Nom boy-Acc beat-NFu
 'Chaoba beat the boy'
- (1b) *agag-du tombe-gi meca ni*
 boy-that Tomba-Gen son Cop
 'That boy is Tomba's son'
- (1c) *caw-be-ne phu-be agag-du tombe-gi meca ni*
 Chaoba-Nom beat-Inf boy-that Tomba-Gen son Cop
 'The boy whom Chaoba beat is Tomba's son'
- (1d) *caw-he-ne agag-he phu-he-du tombe-gi meca ni*
 Chaoba-Nom boy-Acc beat-Inf-that Tomba-Gen son Cop
 'Chaoba beat the boy -- that (boy) is Tomba's son'

The two sentences, (1a) and (1b), form the basis of the next two sentences, (1c) and (1d), which contain external and internal relative clauses respectively, both formed by embedding (1a) in (1b); (1c) contains an external relative clause in that the head noun *agag* 'boy' occurs only outside the relative clause; there is only a gap to represent this noun inside the relative clause; the latter, (1d), is an internal relative clause in that the noun *agag-bu* 'boy-Acc' occurs inside the relative clause (along with its case suffix), whereas its coreferential noun in the matrix clause has been deleted.

Notice that there is a demonstrative particle *du* occurring outside the relative clause in both these types of relative clauses; it has the function of adding specificity to the noun phrase that contains the relative clause; it is possible to have both these types of clauses occurring without this demonstrative particle, as for example, when a generic or habitual meaning is to be conveyed. Examples:

- (2a) *manipur-do na ca-he mi yam-ne ley*
 Manipur-Loc fish eat-Inf man many-Adv are
 'There are many persons who eat fish in Manipur'
- (2b) *manipur-do mi na ca-be yam-ne ley*
 Manipur-Loc man fish eat-Inf many-Adv are
 'There are many persons in Manipur eating fish'

Further, the demonstrative particle to be used here can be either the remote one, *du*, as in the sentences given above, or the proximate one, *ni* as shown by the following sentences; one may choose either of them depending upon the notion of distance that one wishes to convey through the relevant noun phrase. Examples:

- (3a) *cig-do cak-em-be may-si memangoy-do toy-ne thok-em-mi*
 hill-Loc burn-Comp-Inf fire-this long-ago-Loc frequent-Adv happen-Comp-NFu
 'Long ago, this fire burning in the hills was happening frequently'
- (3b) *cig-do may cak-em-be-si memangoy-da toy-ne thek-em-mi*
 hill-Loc fire burn-Comp-Inf-this long-ago-Loc frequent-Adv happen-Comp-NFu
 'Long ago, fire had been burning in the hills -- this (fire) has been occurring frequently'

Manipuri does not make any formal distinction between restrictive and non-restrictive relative clauses; nouns of different types, as well as pronouns, can freely occur as heads of both these types of relative clauses, as we will be pointing out below.

Relative clauses play an extremely prominent role in this language, they take the place of even 'simple' adjectival modifiers. They may contain all the constituents of a sentence, and can therefore be as complex as a sentence, but generally they are made up of only the verbal base used in its infinitive form with the prefix *o* added to it, apparently for phonological weight. This is especially true of state verbs which characterize the head noun.

12.3.1 Distinctions in the relativized predicate

Verbal forms that get relativized retain all the distinctions that occur in their indicative forms in both these types of relative clauses. Notice that in the following sets of sentences, which exemplify this point, (a) sentences involve external relative clauses, and (b) sentences involve the corresponding internal relative clauses. Notice further, that the non-future suffix has a zero alternant in these constructions, and the suffixes like perfect and non-future negative which end in the vowel *e* have that vowel changed to *o*.

(i) Tense distinctions

- (4a) *ey-ne ca-go-de-be lephoy-du ma-ne pi-geni*
 I-Nom eat-Fu-Emph-Inf banana-that he-Nom give-Fu
 'The banana that I am to eat will be given by him'
- (4b) *ey-ne lephoy ca-go-de-be-du ma-ne pi-geni*
 I-Nom banana eat-Fu-Emph-Inf-that he-Nom give-Fu
 'I will eat a banana -- that (banana) will be given by him'
- (5a) *ey-ne ca-he lephoy-du ma-ne pi*
 I-Nom eat-Inf banana-that he-Nom gave
 'He gave me the banana that I ate'
- (5b) *ey-ne lephoy ca-be-du ma-ne pi*
 I-Nom banana eat-Inf-that he-Nom gave
 'I ate a banana -- that (banana) was given by him'

(ii) Tense in the negative

- (6a) *ey-ne ca-roy-de-be lephoy-du esi ni*
 I-Nom eat-FNg-Emph-Inf banana-that this Cop
 'This is the banana that I will not eat'
- (6b) *ey-ne lephoy ca-roy-de-be-du esi ni*
 I-Nom banana eat-FNg-Emph-Inf-that this Cop
 'I will not eat a banana -- that (banana) is this one'
- (7a) *ey-ne ca-de-be lephoy-du esi ni*
 I-Nom eat-NFNg-Inf banana-that this Cop
 'This is the banana that I did not eat'
- (7b) *ey-ne lephoy ca-de-be-du esi ni*
 I-Nom banana eat-NFNg-Inf-that this Cop
 'I did not eat a banana -- that (banana) is this one'

(iii) Aspect distinctions

- (8a) *ey-ne ca-re-be lephoy-du thummi*
 I-Nom eat-Perf-Inf banana-that sweet
 'The banana that I have eaten was sweet'

- (8b) *ev-ne lophey ca-ra-bo-du thummi*
 I-Nom banana eat-Perf-Inf-that sweet
 'I have eaten a banana -- that (banana) was sweet'
- (9a) *cig-do cak-lom-bo moy-du mut-kh-re*
 hill-Loc burn-Compl-Inf fire-that extinguish-Dei4-Perf
 'The fire that had (been) burning on the hill has been extinguished'
- (9b) *cig-do moy cak-lom-bo-du mut-kh-re*
 hill-Loc fire burn-Compl-Inf-that extinguish-Dei4-Perf
 'A fire had (been) burning in the hill -- that (fire) has been extinguished'
- (10a) *tombe-ne isig khik-i-bo pambi-du cawwi*
 Tomba-Nom water sprinkle-Dur-Inf plant-that big
 'The plant over which Tomba is sprinkling water is big'
- (10b) *tomh-ne pambi-do isig khik-i-bo-du cawwi*
 Tomba-Nom plant-Loc water sprinkle-Dur-Inf-that big
 'Tomba is sprinkling water over a plant -- that (plant) is big'

11.1 Mood distinctions

- (11a) *kep-kum tow-be enan-du tombe-gi moca ni*
 cry-appear do-Inf child-that Tomba-Gen son Cop
 'The child that appears to be crying is Tomba's son'
- (11b) *enan kep-kum tow-be-du tombe-gi moca ni*
 child cry-appear do-Inf-that Tomba-Gen son Cop
 'A child appears to be crying -- that (child) is Tomba's son'

In the case of nominal sentences, relativization is possible if the copula is in its negative form, but not otherwise. Example:

- (12) *oja net-te-be tombe yam-do cot-khi*
 teacher Cop-Neg-Inf Tomba house-Loc go-Dei4
 'Tomba, who is not the teacher, went home'

12.3.2. Distinctions in the coreferential arguments

The two types of relative clauses differ from one another rather sharply in the type of arguments of the relative clause that can be coreferential with the head noun: this argument could be any of the core arguments as far as external relative clause is concerned, but in an internal relative clause, one generally finds only unmarked arguments, such as the theme or patient, occurring as the coreferential argument; it can also be any of the non-core arguments, such as the instrument, material or location, as far as external relative clause is concerned, but none of these can occur as heads of internal relative clauses. This constraint apparently helps to avoid ambiguity in these latter clauses, as we will be pointing out below.

The following sentences exemplify the use of different types of arguments that can function as coreferential to the head noun in external relative clauses:

- (13a) *oy-ne ka-bo u-du cawwi*
 I-Nom climb-Inf tree-that big
 'The tree that I climb is big'

- (13b) *ey-ne ley-be son-du ma-gi ni*
I-Nom purchase-Inf cow-that he-Gen Cop
'The cow that I purchased is his'
- (13c) *ey-ne ga now-be thaw-du phay*
I-Nom fish fry-Inf oil-that good
'The oil in which I fried fish is good'
- (13d) *gerag lak-em-be mi-du tombe-ni*
yesterday come-Compl-Inf man-that Tomba-Cop
'The man who had come yesterday is Tomba'
- (13e) *eygon-de sajik phai-hen-be mi tombe-ni*
I-Loc grass cut-Cs-Inf man Tomba-Cop
'The man who made me cut the grass is Tomba'
- (13f) *mehak-ne u kek-pe than yam-ne thewvi*
he-Nom tree cut-Inf knife much-Adv sharp
'The knife with which he cut the tree is very sharp'
- (13g) *ma-ne sembel thig-he wa-du saggi*
he-Nom fence construct-Inf bamboo long
'The bamboo with which he constructed the fence is long'

The head noun can also occur in any of the case roles (in the matrix clause) as far as external relative clauses are concerned; internal relative clauses are rather constrained on this point as well; in addition to themes and unmarked patients, only locatives and instruments appear to occur as heads of such relative clauses. Examples:

- (14) *mehak-ne phu-re-be engan-du-ne kop-pi*
he-Nom beat-Perf-Inf boy-that-Nom cry-Dur
'The boy whom he has beaten is crying'
- (15) *ey-ne phu-re-he huy-du-bu ma-ne phuy*
I-Nom beat-Perf-Inf dog-that-Acc he-Nom beat
'He beat the dog that I have beaten'
- (16a) *ey-ne ley-be upu-du-de sel hap-pu*
I-Nom buy-Inf box-that-Loc money put-Imp
'Put money in the box that I bought'
- (16b) *ey-ne upu ley-be-du-de sel hap-pu*
I-Nom box buy-Inf-that-Loc money put-Imp
'I bought a box -- put money in it'
- (17a) *ey-ne cam-mo-he than-du-ne u ke-k-i*
I-Nom wash-Perf-Inf knife-that-Nom tree cut-NFv
'I cut the tree with the knife that I have washed'
- (17b) *ey-ne than cam-mo-be-du-ne u kek-i*
I-Nom knife wash-Perf-Inf-that-Nom tree cut-NFv
'I have washed a knife -- I cut the tree with that (knife)'

- (16) *huv-ne cik-pe anan-du-gi ay-ne hidak purok-i*
 dog-Nom bite-Inf boy-that-Gen I-Nom medicine brought-NFu
 'I brought medicine to the boy who was bitten by the dog'

In the case of external relative clauses, the head noun can be any of the various types of nouns mentioned in the fifth chapter, such as a common or a proper noun, pronoun, numeral, location marker or time marker: only indefinite pronouns derived from *wh*-words do not appear to occur as heads of these relative clauses. Internal relative clauses, on the other hand, do not show this kind of variety in the type of nouns that can be used as their heads. Examples:

- (17) *u-gi mekha-de lep-pe mehak-tu phay*
 tree-Gen below-Loc stand-Inf he-that good
 'He, who stood under the tree, is good'
- (18) *mehak-ne pam-de-be oni-du cat-kh-re*
 he-Nom want-Neg-Inf two-that go-Dei4-Perf
 'The two whom he did not want have left'
- (19) *mehak-ne ani pam-de-be-du cat-kh-re*
 he-Nom two want-Neg-Inf-that go-Dei4-Perf
 'He did not want two (persons) -- they have left'
- (20) *vam-ne layrik pa-be tomha-ne punnemak khengi*
 much-Adv book read-Inf Tomba-Nom all knows
 'Tomba, who read lots of books, knows everything'
- (21) *mehak-ne lep-pe mekha-de mi tay*
 he-Nom stand-Inf below-Loc shadow fell
 'The shadow fell below (the place) where he stood'
- (22) *mi-ne pam-de-be nang keya haw-kh-re*
 man-Nom want-Neg-Inf yesterday many pass-Dei4-Perf
 'Many yesterdays that people do not want have passed'

12.2.3 Ambiguity due to loss of case markers

When an external relative clause is formed, an argument occurring inside the clause is equi-deleted along with the case markers that occur with it. Since such clauses can have some of their remaining (non-coreferential) arguments unspecified in the clause, there could be ambiguity concerning the identity of the equi-deleted argument, as can be seen from the following examples:

- (24) *cak in-be anan nungay-re*
 food feed-Inf boy happy-Perf
 (i) 'The boy who feeds food (to a child) is happy'
 (ii) 'The boy who is fed food (by his mother) is happy'
- (25) *layrik tak-pe anan-du ay-gi i-ca ni*
 book teach-Inf boy-that I-Gen I-son Cop
 (i) 'The boy who teaches the book (to someone) is my son'
 (ii) 'The boy whom (someone) teaches the book is my son'

Notice that the above two sentences are ambiguous due to the fact that the equi-deleted coreferential noun in the relative clause can be either an actor or a patient; there is no way to decide as to which of these has been equi-deleted and which has been left unspecified. In the actual usage of such clauses, however,

ambiguities of this type would not generally arise because arguments would be left unspecified in a clause only if its identity can be determined from the speech context.

In the case of internal relative clauses, on the other hand, ambiguities could arise due to the fact that the unspecified head noun could be coreferential with any of the arguments occurring inside the clause. Such ambiguities are generally avoided by allowing only unmarked themes and patients to function as coreferential arguments, as we have pointed out above.

12.3.4 Embedding and staking of relative clauses

Manipuri allows its external relative clauses to be embedded within other external relative clauses; it also allows them to be added one after another, as shown by the following examples.

- (26a) *nəraŋ əy-gi yum-də lak-pə mi-du-də-gi ləy-bə cəphu-du əŋaŋ-du-nə* *thugay*
 yesterday I-Gen house-Loc come-Inf me-that-Loc-Gen buy-Inf pot-that boy-Nom broke
 'The boy broke the pot that (I) bought from the man who came to my house yesterday'
- (26b) *cak ca-hə, səŋom thək-pə, həvnew ca-hə mi həwjik na-rɪ*
 food eat-Inf, milk drink-Inf, mango eat-Inf man now ill-Dur
 'The man who ate food, drank milk, and ate mangoes is now ill'

12.3.5 Use of *wh*-words

It is possible to use a *wh*-word in internal relative clauses in juxtaposition with the noun which is coreferential with the (deleted) head, in order to indicate non-referential meanings, such as the ones conveyed by words like 'whenever', 'whatever', 'whoever', etc. The coreferential noun occurs with the question particle *no* in such a usage. It is possible to use a pronoun in place of the deleted head noun, in which case there would not be any need to use the demonstrative particle in that position. Examples.

- (27) *kərambə layrik-no əy-nə-pam-hə-du məhak-su pammi*
 which book-Q I-Nom like-Inf-that he-also likes
 'He likes whatever book that I like'
- (28) *kərambə əŋaŋ-no skul cət-tə-hə məhak mɪthav phəŋ-ŋə-roy*
 which boy-Q school go-Neg-Inf he toffee get-Perf-FNg
 'The boy who does not go to school will not get toffee'

Manipuri also allows constituent questions ending in the question marker *no* or *ge* to be used as relative clauses (with the infinitive suffix occurring before these particles) in order to denote similar type of non-referential meanings as can be seen in the following sentences:

- (29a) *layrik-tu kədaydə thəm-niŋ-ge*
 book-that where keep-wish-Q
 'Where do you want to keep that book?'
- (29b) *layrik-tu kədaydə thəm-niŋ hə-ge thəm-mu*
 book-that where keep-wish-Inf-Q keep-imp
 'Keep that book wherever you want'
- (30a) *upu-du kədaydə thəm-niŋ-hə-no*
 box-that where keep-wish-Inf-Q
 'Where does (he) want to keep that box?'

- upu-du kedayde tham-niŋ-he-no tham-mu
 box-that where keep-wish-inf-Q keep-imp
 'Keep that box wherever you want'

4.1 Adverbial modifiers

Adverbs do not form a distinct word-class in Manipuri. Adverbial distinctions like those of time, place, manner and aspect are represented by verbal bases (state verbs), whereas those of manner, quantity and degree are expressed by verbal affixes. The former may occur either as independent verbs (i.e. as main verbs in a sentence) or as adverbial constructions which are derived primarily by adding the suffix *no* to them. Since other non-adverbial verbal bases can also occur in constructions of this latter type, we have pointed in the fourth chapter (4.1.3) that adverbs do not constitute a distinct word-class in this language.

Traditionally, adverbs are considered to modify verbs, adjectives and other adverbs, however, Manipuri does not have any distinct category of adjectives (or of adverbs), and hence we can only claim that the above two type of adverbials have only the function of modifying verbs. That is, adverbial modification is nothing but verbal modification in this language.

It is possible to use two or more adverbials with a verb and in such usages, the adverbs may modify verbs either individually or jointly, leading to the possibility of an adverbial modifying another adverbial. Examples:

- makhoy skul-da-gi yam-ne thap-ne celi
 they school-Loc-Gen much-Adv far-Adv went
 'They went very far from the school'
- mahak-ne thu-ne ca-da-ne cot-khi
 he-Nom quick-Adv eat-Emph-Adv go-Deic4-NFu
 'He went away after eating quickly'

It is, however, that there is no formal difference between adverbials which modify an adverbial construction on the one hand, and the ones which modify verbs on the other. In fact the former usage can also be regarded as involving verbal modification, with the clause containing such a modified verb being used in the form of an adverbial.

Spatial and directional distinctions can also be denoted in Manipuri through the use of nominal bases as we have pointed out in the fifth chapter (5.7). These bases occur with the locative suffix and have the function of providing subtle differences in the locations involved. Some of these bases can also occur as independent nouns. There are also temporal nominal bases that denote some of the temporal locations or durations of events and states (see 5.7.4).

12.4.1 Use of the suffix *no*

(i) The most frequently used adverbial suffix in Manipuri is *no*; it can be added directly to state verbs, or sentences containing state verbs, in order to convert them into adverbial constructions. Examples:

- (33) mahak-ne oy-gi upu wan-ne say
 he-Nom I-Gen box tall-Adv made
 'He made my box tall'
- (34) mahak-ne ga odu hŋ-ne purak-i
 he-Nom fish that live-Adv bring-NFu
 'He brought that fish alive'

- (35) tombe-ne haynew hen-ne cay
Tomha-Nom mango much-Adv ate
'Tomha ate mangoes excessively'
- (36) mekhoy skul-de-gi thap-ne cotli
they school-Loc-Gen far-Adv went
'They went far away from the school'
- (37) mehak minay woy-ne gay
he servant like-Adv waits
'He waits like a servant'

It is possible, in most of these cases, to use the state verb as the main predicate rather than as an adverbial, and in order to provide comparable meanings, one may use the main verb occurring in these sentences in their nominalized form. Examples:

- (35a) tombe-ne heynew ca-be helli
Tomha-Nom mango eat-Inf much
'Tomha was excessive in eating the mangoes'
- (36a) mekhoy skul-de-gi cat-pe thappi
they school-Loc-Gen go-Inf far
*'They were far away in going from the school'
- (37a) mehak-ne ey-gi phurit kaw-ne tuy
he-Nom I-Gen shirt short-Adv stitched
'He stitched my shirt short'
- (37b) mehak-ne ey-gi phurit tu-ba kawwi
he-Nom I-Gen shirt stitch-Inf short
*'He was short in stitching my shirt' (i.e. the shirt was short)

(ii) In the case of dynamic verbs (actions and processes), such adverbial constructions can be used only when the verb *u* 'see' occurs as their matrix verb (used in the sense 'appear'). Examples

- (38) mahak layrik adu pa-ne uy
he book this read-Adv appears
'He appears to have read that book'
- (39) tombe-ne koythen-de-gi lak-ne uy
Tomha-Nom market-Loc-Gen come-Adv appears
'Tomha appears to have come from the market'

(iii) Both dynamic as well as non-dynamic (state) verbs can occur with this suffix in their reduplicated form; in the case of dynamic verbs, this form has a continuous, iterative or habitual connotation. Examples.

- (41) mehak cithi i-ne i-ne motem lelli
he letter write-Adv write-Adv time spent
'he spends time writing letters'
- (42) tomb-gi meca kep-ne kep-ne celli
Tomha-Gen son cry-Adv cry-Adv went
'Tomha's son went crying'

(iv) In the case of state verbs, reduplication indicates that the characterization affects a number of objects or individuals rather than a single one. Examples:

- (43) məkhey əsɪ mu-nə mu-nə uy
they this black-Adv black-Adv appear
'They all appear to be black'
- (43a) məhak əy-gɪ upu wəŋ-nə wəŋ-nə say
he I-Gen box tall-Adv tall-Adv made
'He made my box tall (on a number of occasions)'

(v) When added to nominal sentences ending in the copula verb *ni*, the suffix indicates cause or reason. Examples:

- (44) məhak əja ni-nə əy khəŋŋɪ
he teacher Cop-Adv I know
'I know because he is the teacher'
- (45) non ta-hə ni-nə məhak cət-te
rain fall-Inf Cop-Adv he go-Neg
'He didn't go because it rained'
- (46) məhak lak-ə hə-ni-nə əy layrik pa-rə-ge
he come-Perf-Inf Cop-Adv I book read-Perf-Des
'I could read the book because he has come'

(vi) It can be used with the negative form of the copula, *nəte* for obtaining the meaning 'except'. Examples:

- (47) tombe nət-te-nə ətəy ya-roy
Tomba Cop-Neg-Adv other agree-FNG
'Except Tomba, nobody will agree'
- (48) tombe nət-te nə ətəy-nə epkə tɛmbi-de
Tomba Cop-Neg-Adv other-Nom maths teach-Neg
'Excepting Tomba, others cannot teach Maths'

(vii) The adverbial suffix *nə* can be preceded by *ə* or *du* for indicating a simultaneous or preceding event, the two differ from one another in that the use of *du* implies an event carried out in preparation to a following one. Examples:

- (49a) məhak cak ca-de-nə cət-kh-re
he food eat-Emph-Adv go-Dei4-Perf
'He went after eating food'
- (49b) məhak cak ca-du-nə cət-kh-re
he food eat-that-Adv go-Dei4-Perf
'He went after eating food (as he may be late in returning from his journey)'
- (50a) məhak həw jik ca-de-nə tɛy
he now eat-Emph-Adv be
'He is eating now'

- (50b) mehak hawjik ca-du-ne ley
he now eat-that-Adv be
'He is eating now (as he has to leave early)'

The verbal form can occur with the perfective suffix *le* in both these cases in order to indicate that the event has been completed. the perfect suffix can be preceded by the completive suffix in order to denote a reason. Examples:

- (51) mehak cak ca-re-da-ne cat-kh-re
he food eat Perf-Emph-Adv go-Def4-Perf
'He went after eating food'
- (52) mehak cak ca-re-du-ne hai-lak-t
he food eat-Perf-that-Adv return Def3-NF-u
'He returned after eating food'
- (53) mehak ton ley-rəm-mə-du-ne əy-khoy ley d-re
he bread buy-Compl-Perf-that-Adv I-Pl buy-Neg-Perf
'We did not buy bread because he had bought it'

(viii) It is also possible for the adverbial suffix to occur after the negative suffix *de*. This form differs from the one containing the morph *de* mentioned above in that the verbal base occurring before it in the case of the negative suffix is in level tone. Examples:

- (50b) mehak hawjik ca-de-ne ley
he now eat-Neg-Adv be
'He is not eating now'
- (54a) tombə ma-gi layrik thi-da-ne ley
Tomba he-Gen book search-Emph-Adv be
'Tomba is searching his book'
- (54b) tombə ma-gi layrik thi-da-ne ley
Tomba he-Gen book search-Neg-Adv be
'Tomba is not searching his book.'

The negative suffix can be followed by the emphatic *de* in order to indicate the cause or reason in this construction. Examples:

- (55) mehak cini ley-le-de-ne kophi sem-de
he sugar he-Neg-Emph-Adv coffee make-Neg
'He did not make coffee because there was no sugar'
- (56) mehak cak thog-de-de-ne sawwi
he food cook-Neg-Emph-Adv angry
'He is angry because he did not cook food'

(ix) The temporal meaning 'after' can also be indicated by using the conjunctive suffix *ga* after the perfect form of a verb, the perfect suffix can be preceded by the completive suffix in order to emphasize the completion of the event. Examples:

- (57) mehak ton ley ro-gə cat-kani
he bread buy-Perf-Conj go-Fu
'He will go after buying bread'

- (51) mehak layrik pa-re-go cot-khi
he book read-Perf-Conj go-Dei4
'He went away after reading the book'
- (52) mehak layrik pa-rem-me-go cot-khi
he book read-Compl-Perf-Conj went-Dei4
'He went away after (completing the task of) reading the book'

12.4.2 Manipuri forms its purposive clauses by attaching the suffix *ne* to a verb and by adding the relative marker *he* to it: it is possible that this suffix *ne* is the same as the adverbial suffix *ne*. Example

- (9) non-ne mehak-pu layrik pa-rem-ne-he hay-rem-mu
you-Nom he-Acc book read-Compl-Pur-Inf tell-Compl-Imp
'Tell him to complete the reading of the book (by the time we come back)'
- (10) non-ne mehak-pu layrik pa-ne-he hay-rem-mu
you he-Acc book read-Pur-Inf tell-Compl-Imp
'Tell him to read the book'
- (11) mehak-pu laŋ-de-ne-he hay-rem-mu
he-Acc noise-Neg-Pur-Inf tell-Compl-Imp
'As him not to make noise'
- (12) ey-ne medu saŋ-ne-be ciŋŋi
I-Nom that long-Pur-Inf pulled
'I pulled it in order to make it long'
- (13) phi esi ŋaŋ-de-ne-he hotnɔy
cloth this red-Neg-Pur-Inf tried
'I tried not to make this cloth red'

12.4.3 There are certain onomatopoeic expressions that can be used either singly or with reduplication in order to denote adverbial notions of the following types:

	phak	'loudly'	sit sit-ne	'thoroughly'
1) Quantity	laŋkɔp	'slightly'	kabək	'slightly'
2) Time	sət phət	'immediately' 'quickly'	huk pɾəp	'at once (without waiting for permission)' 'fast'
3) Manner	kok khək	'without objection or resistance' 'emphatic'		

Examples

- (14) mehak-ne phak phak nek-i
he Nom loud loud laugh-NFu
'He laughed loudly'

Modifying Constraints

- (65) phi esi lankep lankep ken-ge
cloth this slight slight dry-Perf
'This cloth has become slightly dry'
- (66) mehak-ne set cay
he immediately ate
'He ate immediately'
- (67) mehak-ne thebak edu kok tew-thok-i
he work that immediately do-out-NFu
'He did that work immediately without objection'

Chapter 13

COMPLEMENTATION

13.1 Introduction

Complementation is a grammatical process by which sentences are made to function as the arguments of higher (matrix) sentences. Consider, for example, the following set of sentences:

- (1a) *ay ma-bu khəŋ-gi*
I he-Acc know-NFu
'I know him'
- (1b) *ma-ne həjaɹ-də cət-li*
he-Nom market-Loc go-NFu
'He went to the market'
- (1c) *ay ma-ne həjaɹ-də cət-pə khəŋ-gi*
I he-Nom market-Loc go-Inf know-NFu
'I know his going to the market'

The verb *khəŋ* 'know' needs two arguments, namely the knower and the known, as shown by (1a); in this sentence, both these arguments are represented by specific individuals (the speaker and a third person) denoted by simple pronouns. In (1c), on the other hand, one of these arguments is represented by a sentence, namely (1b), which has been converted, however, into an infinitival complement (sentential argument) by deleting its non-future tense suffix, and by adding the infinitive suffix *pə* to it. In this latter sentence, the second argument is a fact rather than an individual, and that fact (namely 'his going to the market') is being referred to by the sentential argument. Using the infinitival form of a sentence is only one of the three main ways of converting a sentence into a complement in Manipuri. The other two devices are (i) adding a complementizer (the factive *haybə* or the non-factive *hayə*) to the sentence, and (ii) adding the prefix *khu* or *mə* to the predicate.

The following pairs of sentences illustrate the use of these three main ways of producing complements in Manipuri

- (2a) *məhak-ne cak ca-y*
he-Nom rice eat-NFu
'He ate rice'
- (2b) *məhak-ne cak ca-y hay-bə ay khəŋ-gi*
he-Nom rice eat-NFu say-Inf I know-NFu
'I know that he ate rice'
- (2c) *ay cət-kəŋ*
I go-Fu
'I will go'

- (3b) *ay cət-kəni hay-ne hav*
I go-Fu say-Adv say-NFu
'I said that I will go'
- (4a) *məhak-ne layrik pa-y*
he-Nom book read-NFu
'He read the book'
- (4b) *məhak-ne layrik pa-hə ay yəŋ-ŋi*
he-Nom book read-Inf I watch-NFu
'I watched him read the book'
- (5a) *məhak-ne cəl-li*
he-Nom run-NFu
'He ran'
- (5b) *məhak-ki khu-cən phə-y*
he-Gen Com-run good-NFu
'His way of running is good'

13.2. Sentential complements

Sentential complements are generally made up of full-fledged sentences ending either in the non-factive complementizer *hayne* or in the factive complementizer *haybə*. They may also optionally occur without any complementizer as such in the case of some of the complement-taking predicates.

The changes that occur in sentences when they are used as complements with one of the above-mentioned complementizers are primarily meant for adjusting their deictic and pragmatic characteristics into those of matrix sentences. The speaker-hearer identities must be the same in both the complement as well as the matrix sentence, and further, the spatial and motional characteristics that are connected with the speaker and the hearer must also be the same in both of them. There is also a limited amount of equi-NP deletion in these sentences.

13.2.1. Nature of complementizers

As mentioned above, there are two main types of complementizers in Manipuri, namely the non-factive *hayne* and the factive *haybə*; these two complementizers have been derived from the verb *hay* 'say' through the addition of the adverbial suffix *ne* and the infinitive suffix *bə* respectively.

Complements ending in *hayne* refer to a statement whereas the ones ending in *haybə* refer to a fact (a state, process or action); because of this difference, the use of these two complementizers involves certain presuppositional differences. Consider, for example, the following pairs of sentences:

- (6a) *tombe-ne lak-kəni hay-ne ta-y*
Tomba-Nom come-Fu say-Adv hear-NFu
'I heard that Tomba would come (unplanned coming)'
- (6b) *tombe-ne lak-kəni hay-bə ta-y*
Tomba-Nom come-Fu say-Inf hear-NFu
'I heard that Tomba would come (planned coming)'
- (7a) *tombe-ne məhak lak-əm-mi hay-ne əyŋon-də hay-də*
Tomba-Nom he come-Per-NFu say-Adv I-Loc say-Neg
'Tomba has not told me that he had come' (because he hadn't come)

- (7b) *tomba-ne mahak lak-em-mi hay-be oygon-da hay-de*
Tomba-Nom he come-Per-NFu say-Inf I-Loc say-Neg
 'Tomba has not told me that he had come'

The core meanings of these pairs of sentences have been shown to be the same, but each of them shows presuppositional differences. For example, according to (6a), Tomba's coming might not actually have been programmed, whereas according to (6b), it is considered to be a settled fact. Similarly, according to (7a), Tomba's failure to inform the speaker of his arrival might be due to the fact that he had not actually arrived, whereas according to (7b), Tomba had failed to do so in spite of his earlier arrival.

Complement-taking matrix predicates can be divided into three main classes depending upon whether they take (i) the non-factive complements, (ii) factive complements, or (iii) both. It is interesting to note that the predicates belonging to the first group mostly denote the deontic mood, whereas the ones belonging to the second group mainly indicate the epistemic mood.

(i) *Predicates belonging to the first group*

hep	'ask'	nay	say
ni	'request'	pen	'mention'
nan	'advice'	tak	'persuade'
yet	'argue'	cay	'abuse'
nin	'wish'	lep	'decide'
khen	'think'		

Examples:

- (8) *mehak lak-u hay-ne oy-ne tok-i*
he come-imp say-Adv I-Nom persuade-NFu
 'I persuaded him to come'
- (9) *oy-ne ma-hu phu-ge hay-ne dhemka tow-wi*
I-Nom he-Acc beat-Des say-Adv threatening-NFu
 'I threatened him that I would beat him'
- (10) *oy-ne bejar-da cat-ke hay-ne tow-wi*
I-Nom market-Loc go-Des say-Adv try-NFu
 'I tried to go to the market'

(ii) *Predicates belonging to the second group.*

man	'appear'	ya	'possible'
cum	'true'	da	'appear'
kaw	'forget'	ninsan	'remember'
ta	'necessary'	nunqay	'be happy'
oythok	'possible' (used with a negative suffix)		

Examples:

- (11) *mehak lak-kani hay-be oythok-te*
he come Fu say-Inf possible-Neg
 'It is not possible that he will come'
- (12) *mehak lakke-ni hay-be ya-v*
he come-Fu say-Inf possible-NFu
 'It is possible that he will come'

- (13) məhak lak-e hay-bə da-y
he came-Perf say-Inf appear-NFu
'It appears that he has come'

(iii) Predicates belonging to the third group:

khej	'know'	thəje	'believe'
ciŋne	'doubt'	ta	'hear'
u	'see'	ya	'agree'
təm	'fix'	lawthok	'announce'
wa	'worry'	təm	'be the destiny'

Examples.

- (14a) məhak lakka-ni hay-ne əy ciŋne-y
he come-Fu say-Adv I doubt-NFu
- (14b) məhak lak-kəni hay-bə əy ciŋne-y
he come-Fu say-Inf I doubt-NFu
'I doubt that he would come'
- (15a) əy cət-ke hay-ne təm-mi
I go-Des say-Adv fix-NFu
- (15b) əy cət-ke hay-bə təm-mi
I go-Des say-Inf fix-NFu
'I fixed (the programme) that I would go'
- (16a) məhak lakkədə-hə-ni hav-ne əy khej-ŋi
he come-Fu-Inf-Cop say-Adv I know-NFu
- (16b) məhak lakkədə-hə-ni hay-bə əy khej-ŋi
he come-Fu-Inf-Cop say-Inf I know-NFu
'I know that he is to come'

It may be noted here that the meanings of (a) and (b) sentences are the same. The case of the predicate *ninsej* is rather interesting. While occurring with a non-factive complement, it has the deontic meaning 'remind', whereas while occurring with a factive complement, it has the epistemic meaning 'remember'.

Examples

- (17a) məhak ca-gədə-hə-ni hay-ne əy-ne ninsej-ŋi
he eat Fu-Inf-Cop say-Adv I-Nom remaind-NFu
'I reminded (him) that he should eat'
- (17b) məhak ca-gədə-hə-ni hay-bə əy ninsej-ŋi
he eat-Fu-Inf-Cop say-Inf I remember-NFu
'I remembered that he should eat'

A comparable, but rather subtle, meaning difference has been noticed among the pairs of sentences containing the predicates of the third group mentioned above (such as the pairs 14 to 16).

13.2.2. Changes in the complements

There do not seem to be any constraints as to the kind of sentences that can occur as complements with either of the above two complementizers (*hayne* and *haybə*) attached to them. All the tense, aspect and mood distinctions can be retained in fact in these sentences. Examples:

- (18) *ay-ne manon-de kori-gi lak-i-be-no hay-ne hen-gi*
 I-Nom he-Loc why-Gen come-NFu-Inf-Q say-Adv ask-NFu
 'I asked him why he came'
- (19) *ma-ne oyonon-de tombe-ne ca-d-re hay-ne hay*
 he-Nom I-Loc Tomba-Nom eat-Neg-Perf say-Adv say-NFu
 'He told me that Tomba has not eaten'
- (20) *ma-ne oyonon-de lak-konu hay-ne hukum taw-wi*
 he-Nom I-Loc come-Proh say-Adv order do-NFu
 'He ordered me not to come'
- (21) *ma-ne ca-ri hay-be ay khon-gi*
 he-Nom eat-Dur say-Inf I know-NFu
 'I know that he is eating'

However, the sentences do undergo different kinds of obligatory changes in order to get adjusted with their matrix sentences. These changes affect primarily the deictic and pragmatic characteristics of these complement sentences. Only the tense and aspect distinctions remain unchanged.

We may group these changes into the following main sub-headings: (i) changes of person, (ii) changes of temporal adverbials, and (iii) changes of spatial characteristics (i.e. the use of spatial contour markers and certain motion verbs). All these three types of changes are connected with the so-called indirect way of reporting. They occur obligatorily in the use of either of the two complementizers mentioned above. We will be discussing these changes in detail in the following sub-sections.

3i Change of person

Distinctions of person shown by pronouns occurring in complement sentences are to be obligatorily changed so as to suit the ones occurring in the matrix sentence. That is, the speaker and the addressee of these complement sentences are made identical with those of matrix sentences. Examples:

- (22a) *ay mahak-pu pam-mi*
 I he-Acc like-NFu
 'I like him'
- (22b) *tombe-ne oyonon-de non-bu pam-mi hay-ne hay*
 Tomba-Nom I-Loc you-Acc like-NFu say Adv say-NFu
 'Tomba told me that he likes you'
- (23a) *nia kop-pi*
 he cry-NFu
 'He cried'
- (23b) *tombe-ne manon-de ay kop-pi hay-ne hay*
 Tomba-Nom he-Loc I cry-NFu say-Adv say-NFu
 'Tomba told him that I cried'

In (22b) the third person pronoun *mahakpu* of the complement sentence (as seen in (22a)) has been changed into the second person pronoun *nonbu* because the addressee of (22b) happened to be the person whom Tomba is stated to have liked. Similarly in (23b) the third person pronoun of the complement sentence (as seen in (23a)) has been changed into a first person pronoun.

In the following sentence, a similar change of person has occurred in a complement sentence containing the factive complementizer *havba*:

- (24) *tomba-na maḡon-de ey kop-pi hay-bə ey ta-y*
 tomba-Nom he-Loc I cry-NFu say-Inf I hear-NFu
 'I heard Tomba tell him that I cried'

One important exception to this obligatory change of person is the use of imperative sentences as complements. In such sentences, the second person pronoun representing the actor remains unchanged. Examples:

- (24a) *nəḡ lak-kənu*
 you come-Proh
 'Don't come'
- (24b) *ey-na maḡon-de nəḡ lak-kənu hay-na hay*
 I-Nom he-Loc you come-Proh say-Adv say-NFu
 'I told him that he should not come'
- (25a) *nəḡ lak-u*
 you come-Imp
 'Come!'
- (25b) *ma na əynon-de nəḡ lak-u hay-na hay*
 he-Nom I-Loc you come-Imp say-Adv say NFu
 'He told me that I should go'

(ii) Change of temporal adverbials

Adverbs like *nəsi* 'today', *havəḡ* 'tomorrow', *nəraḡ* 'yesterday' are found to get altered in complement sentences in order to suit the temporal system of the matrix sentence. Examples:

- (26a) *av-na havəḡ lak-kəni*
 I-Nom tomorrow come-Fu
 'I will come tomorrow'
- (26b) *tomba-na nəraḡ əynon-de nəsi lak-kəni hay-na hay*
 Tomba-Nom yesterday I-Loc today come-Fu say-Adv say Fu
 'Tomba told me yesterday that he would come today'
- (27a) *məhak-na nəsi isəy təm-geḡi*
 he-Nom today song learn-Fu
 'He will learn the song today'
- (27b) *məhak-na nəraḡ isəy təm-geḡi hay-bə hay-rək-i*
 he-Nom yesterday song learn-Fu say-Inf report-De13-NFu
 'He had reported that he would learn the song yesterday'

Notice that unlike the change of person described in the previous section, these temporal changes persist even when there is conflict between the adverb and the tense of the predicate (of the complement sentence) as seen in (27b). Since the time of the matrix sentence is a day later than that of the complement sentence, *nəsi* 'today' has been replaced by *nəraḡ* 'yesterday'. But the future tense of the complement predicate has been retained unchanged and this has given rise to a conflict which, however, is apparently tolerated by the language.

iii) Spatial changes

There are three main types of changes that come under this sub-heading, namely (a) the change of demonstratives, (b) the change of spatial contour suffixes, and (c) the change between certain pairs of verbs.

(a) The remote and proximate demonstratives, namely *madu* – *adu* 'that' and *masi* – *asi* 'this' respectively get interchanged in complement sentences in order to suit the deictic contexts in which the matrix sentences are being used. Examples:

- (28a) *ey-ne maphem adu-da lak-kani*
 I-Nom place that-Loc come-Fu
 'I will come to that place'
- (28b) *tomba-ne maphem esi-da lak-kani hay-ne hav-rok-i*
 Tomba-Nom place this-Loc come-Fu say-Adv say-Dei3-NF u
 'Tomba had said that he would come to this place'

The demonstrative *adu* has been replaced by *asi* in the complement of (28b) in order to adjust to the fact that the reporting took place at the location mentioned by Tomba.

(b) As we have described in detail in the 8th chapter, the verbal bases of Manipuri can take two distinct pairs of spatial contour suffixes in order to indicate certain spatial distinctions. The suffixes in use are (i) *ra* 'come and do something (at the speaker's location)' versus *ru* 'go and do something (away from the speaker's location)', and (ii) *rek* 'do something and come (towards the speaker) versus *khi* 'do something and go (away from the speaker)'.

If any one of these spatial contour suffixes occurs in the predicate of a complement sentence, one has to necessarily replace it by its opposite member if it is in conflict with the spatial characteristics of the matrix sentence. Examples:

- (29a) *ey-ne maphem esi-da ca-re-geni*
 I-Nom place this-Loc eat-Dei1-Fu
 'I will come and eat at this place'
- (29b) *tomba-ne eyton-da maphem adu-da ca-ru-geni hay-ne hay*
 Tomba-Nom place this-Loc eat-Dei2-Fu say-Adv say-NFu
 'Tomba told me that he would go and eat in that place'

In (29b), both the demonstrative *esi* 'this' and the spatial contour suffix *ra* 'come and do something' (of the predicate *caragani*) have been replaced by *adu* 'that' and *ru* 'go away and do something' respectively indicating that the location of reporting (29a) (i.e. in 29b) is different from that of speaking the original utterance (29a).

- (30a) *ey-ne imphal-da ley-rok-koni*
 I-Nom Imphal-Loc stay-Die3-Fu
 'I will stay in Imphal and come'
- (30b) *tomba-ne imphal-da ley-khi-geni hay-ne hay*
 Tomba-Nom Imphal-Loc stay-Die4-Fu say-Adv say-NFu
 'Tomba said that he would stay in Imphal and go'

In (30b) also, the spatial suffix *rek* (as found in (30a)) has been replaced by *khi* indicating that the reporting of (30a) through the sentence (30b) took place in Imphal itself.

(c) Certain pairs of verbs also show a similar substitution when sentences containing them are used as complements. The most common pair of this type is *cət* 'go' versus *lak* 'come'. Examples:

- (31a) *əy-nə həyən cawbə-gi yum-də cət-kəni*
 I-Nom tomorrow chaoba-Gen house-Loc go-Fu
 'I will go to Chaoba's house tomorrow'
- (31b) *tombə-nə həyən nekəv-gi yum-də lak-kəni hay-nə hay*
 Tomba-Nom tomorrow you-Gen house come-Fu say-Adv say-NFu
 'Tomba said that he would come to your house tomorrow'

In (31b), the proper name Chaoba has been replaced by the second person pronoun *məkəv* 'you (hon)' as Chaoba happened to be the addressee of (31b), and further, the verb *cət* 'to' has been replaced by *lak* 'come' in order to fit with that change.

(iv) Equi-NP deletion or non-specification

In addition to these changes of indirect reporting, complement sentences also undergo certain changes that might be regarded as equi-NP deletion, but the problem here is that the distinction between equi-deletion and non specification is rather difficult to establish.

The change involved here is the following: when there is coreference between an argument of the matrix sentence and an argument of the complement sentence, one of them might be deleted or left unspecified, as seen in the following sets of sentences:

- (32a) *əy cət-kəni*
 I go Fu
 'I will go'
- (32b) *əy məsi lep-pi*
 I it decide-NFu
 'I decided it'
- (32c) *əy cət-kəni hay-nə lep-pi*
 I go-Fu say-Adv decide-NFu
 'I decided that I would go'
- (33a) *ma-nə kəp-pi*
 he-Nom cry-NFu
 'He cried'
- (33b) *ma-nə kəp-pi hay-nə hay*
 he-Nom cry-NFu say-Adv say-NFu
 'He said that he cried'
- (33c) *ma-nə kəp-pi hay-nə əv-nə hay*
 he-Nom cry-NFu say-Adv I-Nom say N Fu
 'I said that he cried'

Notice that in (32c) and (33b) the actor of the matrix sentence has been deleted because of its coreference with the actor of the complement sentence, whereas in (33c) it has been retained because of the absence of any such coreference.

It is rather difficult to differentiate between equi-NP deletion and non-specification in these restrictions because, in longer sentences such as following, the deletion of a coreferential noun phrase is not obligatory.

- (34a) ma-ne eyjon-de cithi ome i-gehi hay-ne ma-ne hay
he-Nom I-Loc letter one write-Fu say-Adv he-Nom say-NFu
'He said that he would write a letter to me'
- (34b) ma-ne eyjon-de cithi ome i-gehi hay-na hay
he-Nom I-Loc letter one write-Fu say-Adv say-NFu
'(He) said that he would write a letter to me'
- (35a) ma-ne eyjon-de ma hoyen lak-koni hay-ne hay
he-Nom I-Loc he tomorrow come-Fu say-Adv say-NFu
'He told me that he would come tomorrow'
- (35b) ma-ne eyjon-de hoyen lak-koni hay-ne hay
he-Nom I-Loc tomorrow come-Fu say-Adv say-NFu
'(He) told me that he would come tomorrow'

The acceptability of sentences in which the arguments of both the matrix and the complement sentences have been specified, in spite of their being coreferential, appears to depend upon the length of these sentences. In very short sentences containing one argument each (such as the sentences (32 and 33) given above), the deletion or non-specification is almost obligatory, whereas in sentences containing two or more arguments (such as 34 and 35), the speaker has the option to delete one of them or to retain both.

Another interesting aspect of these sentences is that when an argument has been equi-deleted, it is sometimes difficult to say whether the argument so deleted is that of the matrix sentence or of the complement. The reason for this is that the argument of the matrix sentence can occur in the initial position as well (i.e. in front of the complement sentence), and further, the language allows the deletion to affect either the argument of the matrix or of the complement.

This latter point can be illustrated with the help of sentences in which the coreferential arguments take different case suffixes in the matrix and complement sentences. Examples:

- (36a) ey ca-d-re
I eat-Neg-Perf
'I have not eaten'
- (36b) ma-ne eyjon-de hay
he-Nom I-Loc say-NFu
'He told me ...'
- (36c) ma-ne eyjon-de ey ca-d-re hay-ne hay
he-Nom I-Loc I eat-Neg-Perf say-Adv say-NFu
'He told me that I had not eaten'
- (36d) ma-ne ey ca-d-re hay-ne hay
he-Nom I eat-Neg-Perf say-Adv say-NFu
'He told (me) that I had not eaten'
- (36e) ma-ne eyjon-de ca-d-re hay-ne hay
he-Nom I-Loc eat-Neg-Perf say-Adv say-NFu
'He told me that (I) had not eaten'

In (36c) both the arguments that show coreference (*aygonda* and *ay*) have been specified, whereas in (36d) the first one has been left out and in (36e) the second one has been left out; (36e) is actually ambiguous in that it can also mean 'He told me that he had not eaten'.

13.2.3. Case markers on complementizers

The complementizer *həne* is basically adverbial in nature, as it is derived by adding the adverbial suffix *ne* to the verb *hay* 'say', whereas the complementizer *haybə* is basically nominal in nature as it is derived by adding the infinitive suffix *bə* to the verb.

This difference is reflected in the fact that the complements ending in *haybə* can be further followed by different case markers depending upon the relation that the complements have with the matrix verb.

However, the case suffixes show somewhat different connotations while occurring after these complements as can be seen from the following description:

(i) The nominative suffix *ne* is used after these complements primarily for denoting the contrastive characterization of an event. Examples:

- (37a) *ma lak-oy hay-bə nuŋŋa-y*
he come-Neg(Fu) say-Inf happy-NFu
'That he will not come is pleasant (to me)'
- (37b) *ma lak-oy hay-bə-ne hen-ne nuŋŋa-y*
he come-Neg(Fu) say-Inf-Nom much-Adv happy-NFu
'That he will not come is more pleasant (to me)'
- (38a) *layrik-si nuŋŋa-y hay-bə phe-y*
book-this interesting-NFu say-Inf good-NFu
'It is good (to say) that this book is interesting'
- (38b) *layrik-si nuŋŋa-y hay-bə-ne phe-y*
book-this interesting-NFu say-Inf-Nom good-NFu
'It is better (to say) that this book is interesting'

(ii) The accusative suffix *bu* is used after these complements in the sense of denoting the theme, but it appears to occur only with the matrix verbs *cum* 'correct' and *əwoy* 'true, real', and that too when the matrix sentence is in the form of a question. Examples:

- (39) *ma lak-oy hay-bə-bu cum-b-rə*
he come-FNg say-Inf-Acc correct-Inf-Q
'Is it true that he will not come?'
- (40) *məhak saw-wi hay-bə-bu əwoy-b-rə*
he angry-NFu say-Inf-Acc true-Inf-Q
'Is it true that he is angry?'

(iii) The locative suffix *də* is used for denoting that the event denoted by the complement sentence constitutes the time in which the event denoted by the matrix sentence occurred. Examples:

- (41) *ma-ne lak-u hay-bə-də əy-ne ya-də*
he-Nom come-Inf say-Inf-Loc I-Nom agree-Neg
'I did not agree when he asked me to come'

- 271 ma-ne ca-w hay-be-de ey ca-y
he-Nom eat-imp say-Inf-Loc I eat-NFu
'When he asked me to eat, I ate'

(ix) The use of the locative suffix *de* along with the genitive *gi* after these complements indicates that the subordinate event is the cause of the main event. Examples:

- 431 ma-ne ca-w hay-be-de-gi ey-khoy ca-y
he-Nom eat-imp say-Inf-loc-Gen we eat-NFu
'We ate because he asked us to eat'
- 441 ma-ne cen purek-i hay-be-de-gi ey-ne cak then-gi
he-Nom rice bring-NFu say-Inf-Loc-Gen I-Nom food cook-NFu
'I cooked food because he brought rice'

(x) The associative suffix *ge* also provides a temporal meaning, namely that the main event occurred immediately after the subordinate event. Examples:

- 451 ma-ne ca-w hay-be-ge ey-khoy ca-y
he-Nom eat-imp say-Inf-Conj we eat-NFu
'We ate immediately when he asked us to eat'
- 461 non cu-y hay-be-ge ey-khoy cen-thok-i
rain pour-NFu say-Inf-Conj I-pl run-away-NFu
'As soon as it rained, we ran away'

(xi) Lastly, the genitive suffix *gi* is used after these complements in order to indicate the reason for the occurrence of the main event. Examples:

- 471 ey-ne ma lak-koni hay-be-gi steson-de cet-li
I-Nom he come-Fu say-Inf-Gen station-Loc go-NFu
'I went to the station because he would be arriving'
- 481 khudon pi-ge hay-be-gi layrik ley
present give-Des say-Inf-Gen book buy-NFu
'I bought a book because I wanted to give a present'

It might be noted here that the type of matrix sentences that can take complements with the case affixes *gi*, *ge* and *de* (i.e. the ones which provide adverbial connotations) are not constrained in the way in which the ones which can take the complements ending in the suffixes *ne* and *hu* are constrained. We might therefore regard the former as adverbials rather than as complements proper.

13.2.4. Non-specification of complementizers

It has been found possible to leave the complementizers *hayne* and *hayho* unspecified in the case of some matrix predicates, and use the sentences on their own as complements. The matrix predicates which allow such a non-specification include all perception and knowledge predicates and also a few utterance predicates (like *hep* 'ask', *hay* 'say' *niq* 'think' and *niqsoq* 'remind') Examples:

- 491 mohak-ne lavrik esi pam-geni hay-ne niq-ni
he-Nom book-this like-Fu say-Adv wish Nfu
'I hope that he will like this book'

- (49b) mahak-ne layrik esi pam-geni nŋ-ŋi
he-Nom brook-this like-Fu wish-NFu
'I hope (that) he will like this brook'
- (50a) mehak-ne ey-bu ca-d-re hay-ne hay
he-Nom I-Acc eat-Neg-Perf say-Adv say-NFu
'He said that I had not eaten'
- (50b) mehak-ne ey-bu ca-d-re hay
he-Nom I-Acc eat-Neg-Perf say-NFu
'He said (that) I had not eaten'
- (51a) mahak-ne nŋm-geni hay-be u-y
he-Nom able-Fu say-Inf see-NFu
'I saw that he would be able (to do it)'
- (51b) mehak-ne nŋm-geni u-y
he-Nom able-Fu say-Inf see-NFu
'I saw (that) he would be able (to do it)'

The various changes mentioned above (that is, the ones which occur in complement sentences that end in *hayne* or *hayba*) are retained in these complementizer-less sentences also. This point supports our claim that these sentential complements are basically of the former type, i.e. the ones ending in complementizers. Examples:

- (52) tombe-ne neran lak-koni hay
Tomba-Nom yesterday come-Fu say-NFu
'Tomba had said that he would come on the previous day'
- (53) ma-ne ey kŋp-pi hay
he-Nom I cry-NFu
'He said that I (the speaker) cried'
- (54) ma-ne eyŋon-de nŋn lak-u hay
he-Nom I-Loc you come-Imp say-NFu
'He told me that I should come'

13.2.5. Additional uses of complementizers

We had seen in 13.2.3 that the use of the case markers *gi*, *ga*, and *de* after factive complements results in the formation of adverbial clauses which denote time, cause and reason. But in all such uses the subordinated sentences retain their basic function of denoting an event.

In the case of the non-factive complementizer *hayne*, however, there is a somewhat different use which provides the adverbial sense of 'deliberately' carrying out an activity. The same verbal base occurs in both the complement as well the matrix sentences. Examples:

- (55) mehak-ne eyŋon-de layrik ŋdu pi-ge hay-ne pi
he-Nom I-Loc book that give-Des say-Adv give-NFu
'He gave that book to me deliberately'
- (56) tombe-ne majon-de kaw-ge hay-ne kaw-wi
Tomba-Nom he-Loc kick-Des say-Adv kick-NFu
'Tomba kicked him deliberately'

In these constructions the complementizer is added to the desiderative form of the verb, and it is apparently this particular form which provides the sense of 'doing something deliberately' to the sentence.

13.3. Infinitival complements

Adding the infinitive suffix *bo* to the predicate is the second grammatical device that is in use in Manipuri for converting sentences into complements. Compared to sentential complements described above, these infinitival complements can be regarded as more noun-like in nature because (i) they occur with additional types of matrix verbs, (ii) they show no tense or tense-bound aspect or mood distinctions, and (iii) they carry out a greater number of noun-like functions in the sentence.

Infinitival complements resemble sentential complements ending in the factive complementizer *haybo* rather than the non-factive complementizer *hayno* in that they can occur with all the matrix predicates that take the former but not the ones which take only the latter. Examples:

(57a) *ma-na cat-li hay-bo ey khon-ni*
he-Nom go-NFu say-Inf I know-NFu
'I know that he went'

(57b) *ma-na cat-po ey khon-ni*
he-Nom go-Inf I know-NFu
'I know his going'

(58a) *ma lak-kani hay-bo ey thajø-y*
he come-Fu say-Inf I believe-NFu
'I believe that he will come'

(58b) *ma lak-po ey thajø-y*
he come-Inf I believe-NFu
'I believe his coming'

(59a) *mohak lak-i hay-bo mal-li*
he come-NFu say-Inf appear-NFu
'It appears that he came'

(59b) *mohak lakpo mali*
he come-Inf appear-NFu
'He appears to have come'

It might be noted here that the matrix predicates which take only the non-factive complementizer *hayno* (i.e. the predicates which convey primarily the deontic mood) can take an infinitival complement provided that the predicate of the complement contains the purposive suffix *na*. Examples:

(60a) *ey-no manon-do layrik pi-yu hay-na ni*
I-Nom he-Loc book give-Imp say-Adv request-NFu
'I requested him that he might give (me) a book'

(60b) *ey-na manon-do layrik pi-na-he ni*
I-Nom he-Loc book give-Pur-Inf request-NFu
'I requested him to give (me) a book'

(61a) *ey-na bejar-do cat-ke hay-na taw-wi*
I-Nom market-Loc go-Des say-Adv try-NFu
'I tried to go to the market'

- (61h) *ey-ne bejar-de cot-nə-be təw-wi*
 I-Nom market-Loc go-Pur-Inf try-NFu
 'I tried to go to the market'

However, these purposive clauses containing the purposive suffix *ne* and ending in the infinitive *be* can occur in any kind of action sentences in order to denote the purpose of that action. They are also restricted to a specific tense, namely the future. Examples:

- (62) *ey-ne ma-ne lak-ne-be cithi i*
 I-Nom he-Nom come-Pur-Inf letter write-NFu
 'I wrote him a letter so that would come'
- (63) *məhak-ne ca-ne-be ey-ne komla khok-i*
 he-Nom eat-Pur-Inf I-Nom orange peel-NFu
 'I peeled an orange for his eating'

We may not therefore regard these purposive clauses as infinitival complements

Another interesting difference between infinitival complements and sentential complements is that in the case of certain perception and epistemic matrix predicates the use of the former gives rise to an ambiguity between a direct reference to the complement on the one hand, and to its content on the other. Consider, for example, the following sentences containing infinitival complements:

- (64) *məhak-ne hay-be ey kaw-wi*
 he-Nom say-Inf I forget-NFu
 (a) 'I forgot that he spoke'
 (b) 'I forgot what he spoke'
- (65) *məhak-ne isey sək-pə ey ta-y*
 she-Nom song sing-Inf I hear-NFu
 (a) 'I heard that she sang a song'
 (b) 'I heard the song that she sang'

This ambiguity does not occur in sentential complements because in order to say something about the content of the complement, one will have to use a question word before the relevant noun phrase. Examples

- (66a) *məhak-ne wa hay hay-be ey kaw-wi*
 he-Nom word say-NFu say-Inf I forget-NFu
 'I forgot that he spoke (something)'
- (66b) *məhak-ne kəri wa hay hay-be ey kaw-wi*
 he-Nom what word say-NFu say-Inf I forget-NFu
 'I forgot what he said'
- (67a) *məhak-ne isey sək-i hay-be ey ta-y*
 he-Nom song sing-NFu say-Inf I hear-NFu
 'I heard that she sang a song'
- (67b) *məhak-ne kəri isey sək-i hay-be ey ta-y*
 he-Nom what song sing-NFu say-Inf I hear-NFu
 'I heard what song he sang'

13.3.1. Types of matrix predicates

As pointed out earlier, infinitival complements can occur with a large number of matrix predicates, these can be subcategorized on the bases of several different factors

(a) First of all, there are a number of stative verbs that can take complements either (i) for characterizing an individual with reference to the events or actions that are being denoted by those complements or (ii) for characterizing those events or actions themselves. Almost all the state verbs that characterize an individual can be used with a complement to characterize that individual with reference to it in this fashion. Examples:

(i) *Characterizing an individual:*

- (68) mehak wa naŋ-be phe-y
he word speak-Inf good-NFu
'He is good in speaking'

- (69) mehak cithi i-be mot-li
he letter write-Inf dirty-NFu
'He is dirty in writing letters'

- (70) mehak thehak tew-be tel-li
he work do-Inf lazy-NFu
'He is lazy in doing the work'

(ii) *Characterizing an event or action*

- (71) mehak-ne phurit lit-pe kew-wi
he-Nom shirt wear-Inf short-NFu
'His wearing the shirt is short'

- (72) mehak-ne way sit-pe sen-ŋi
he-Nom rubbish sweep-Inf clear-NFu
'His sweeping the rubbish is clean'

- (73) ucek esi pay-be sal-li
bird this fly-Inf clear-NFu
'The flying of this bird is far'

There are some predicates like *nan* 'clean' and *khan* 'polite' which can be used ambiguously either for characterizing an individual with reference to an action, or for characterizing the action itself. This distinction can be made overt by leaving the actor unspecified (or equi-deleted) in the former case. Examples:

- (74a) mehak cak theŋ-be nal-li
he rice cook-Inf clean-NFu
'He is clean in cooking (rice)'

- (74b) mehak-ne cak theŋ-be nal-li
he-Nom rice cook-Inf clean-NFu
'His cooking (of rice) is clean'

- (75a) mehak wa naŋ-be khol-li
he word speak-Inf polite-NFu
'He is polite in speaking'

- (75b) *məhak-ne wa ɲaŋ-be khol-li*
 he-Nom word speak-Inf polite-NFu
 'His speaking is polite'

Since the suffix *ne* occurs rather obligatorily in the case of an actor, the pronoun *məhak* 'he' occurring in (74b) and (75b) can be regarded as referring to the actor of cooking and speaking respectively, whereas in (74a) and (75a) it may be regarded as referring to the person that is being characterized by the qualities of being clean and polite respectively. Notice that in these latter cases the pronoun will take the marker *ne* only for providing the comparative sense (more clean or more polite than others)

There are also a few aspectual verbs that can occur as matrix verbs of infinitival complements, these may also be regarded as belonging to the second sub-group of state verbs mentioned above. Examples:

- (76) *məhak mədu-de ley-be new-ri*
 he that-Loc stay-Inf recent-Prog
 'His stay there is recent'
- (77) *məhak-ne lak-pe kuy-re*
 he-Nom come-Inf (long) time-Perf
 'It has been a long time since he came'

(h) Secondly, there are a number of verbs which denote an action that has been carried out (i) with reference to an individual (in connection with the event or action that is being denoted by the complement) or (ii) with reference to the event or action itself. Examples:

(i) *With reference to an individual*

- (78) *əy-ne ma-bu iroy-be tak-i*
 I-Nom he-Acc swim-Inf teach-NFu
 'I taught him swimming'
- (79) *əy-ne ma-bu cəl-pe yeq-ŋi*
 I-Nom he-Acc go-Inf look-NFu
 'I watched him going'
- (80) *əy-ne ma-bu layrik təm-be tha-y*
 I-Nom he-Acc book study-Inf send-NFu
 'I sent him to study books'

(ii) *With reference to an event or action*

- (81) *əy-ne ma-ne isəy sək-pe thiŋ-ŋi*
 I-Nom he-Nom song sing-Inf stop-NFu
 'I stopped his singing a song'
- (82) *əy-ne cak ca-be loy*
 I-Nom food eat-Inf finish-NFu
 'I finished eating food'
- (83) *əy-ne ma-ne ɲaŋ-be ta-y*
 I-Nom he-Nom speak-Inf hear-NFu
 'I heard him speaking'

Some verbs can be used in either of these two functions as can be seen from the following pairs of sentences

- (84a) *ey-ne ma-ne cat-pe kham-mi*
 I-Nom he-Nom go-Inf stop-NFu
 'I stopped his going'
- (84b) *ey-ne ma-bu cat-pe kham-mi*
 I-Nom he-Acc go-Inf stop-NFu
 'I stopped him going'
- (85a) *ey-ne ma-ne cithi i-be yeg-gi*
 I-Nom he-Nom letter write-Inf look-NFu
 'I watched his writing a letter'
- (85b) *ey-ne ma-bu cithi i-be yeg-gi*
 I-Nom he-Acc letter write-Inf look-NFu
 'I watched him write a letter'

It might be noted here that there are two distinct possibilities of equi-NP deletion (as we would be pointing out later (13.3.2 iv) in this chapter), namely (i) of the argument in the complement sentence and (ii) of the argument in the matrix sentence, when these two are coreferential. The above-mentioned distinction is actually indistinguishable from the distinction resulting from this option in equi-NP deletion.

(c) Thirdly, there are two main types of modal verbs that can occur as the matrix verbs of infinitival complements. Both these types of verbs can take the factive sentential complements (i.e. the ones ending in *havbe*) also, and one of them can take, in addition, the non-factive sentential complements as well. Examples for the occurrence of infinitival complements with these matrix verbs have already been given at the beginning of this section.

13.3.2 Sentential distinctions in the complement

The claim that infinitival complements are more noun-like than factive sentential complements can be supported with the help of the following constraints which affect the occurrence of some of the sentential distinctions in complements of the former type:

(i) Absence of tense distinctions

Infinitival complements do not generally show the future/non-future tense distinction; this distinction is necessary in the case of ordinary sentences. There is actually a neutralization of this distinction in these complements. One can use the complements ambiguously in either of these two meanings. Examples.

- (86) *ey ma-ne cat-pe ya-y*
 I he-Nom go-Inf agree-NFu
 'I agreed to his going (future or non-future)'
- (87) *mohak-ne lak-pe ey nuggay*
 he-Nom come-Inf I happy(NFu)
 'I am happy of his coming (future or non-future)'

In most of the instances, however, the actual time of the subordinate action is dependent upon the kind of predicate with which the complement occurs. For example, matrix predicates like *u* 'see', *ta* 'hear', *i:aei* 'know', *tan* 'report', *kaw* 'forget' and *mae* 'appear' generally provide the non-future meaning to their complements, whereas matrix verbs like *ya* 'possible', *ta* 'necessary' and *ovthak* 'possible' (used in a negative context) can only provide the future meaning to them. Examples

- (88) ey məhak cət-pe u-y
I he go-Inf see-NFu
'I saw him go'
- (89) ey məhak lak-pe kaw-wı
I he come-Inf forget-NFu
'I forgot (about) his (past) coming'
- (90) ey məhak cət-pe khəŋ-nı
I he go-Inf know-NFu
'I know that he went'
- (91) məhak lak-pe ya-y
he come-Inf possible-NFu
'It is possible that he will come'
- (92) ey cət-pe ta-y
I go-Inf necessary-NFu
'It is necessary that I go (future)'
- (93) məhak lak-pe oythok-te
he come-Inf possible-Neg
'It is possible that he will not come'

In the case of some of the matrix verbs which ambiguously allow both future and non-future meanings to be assigned to the complement, it is possible to use the future suffix in the complement sentence and thereby disambiguate that sentence. However, such tensed infinitival complements appear to be rather bookish. Examples

- (94a) məhak isey sək-pe oythok-te
he song sing-Inf possible-Neg
'His singing a song is not possible' (future singing or non-future singing)
- (94b) məhak isey sək-kə-de-bə oythok-te
he song sing-Fu-Emph-Inf possible-Neg
'His (future) singing of a song is not possible'
- (95a) məhak wari li-bə nunggay
he story narrate-Inf happy(NFu)
'His narrating the story is pleasant' (future or non-future narration)
- (95b) məhak wari li-ge-de-bə nunggay
he story narrate-Fu-Emph-Inf happy(NFu)
'His (future) narrating of the story is pleasant'

It is also possible to indicate the time of occurrence of subordinate events with the help of temporal adverbials as shown in the following sentences

- (96) məhak ɣəŋŋ lak-pe ey təm-mı
he yesterday come-Inf I report-NFu
'I reported his yesterday's arrival'
- (97) ey həyçə cət-pe ta-y
I tomorrow go-Inf necessary-NFu
'I ought to go tomorrow'

(ii) Aspectual distinctions

The above-mentioned neutralization of tense distinctions gets extended to the use of aspect markers also in the predicates of infinitival complements. There are two distinct aspect markers, namely *le* 'perfect' and *pe* 'durative', which are directly associated with tense. Both these fail to occur in the infinitival complements. The remaining aspect suffixes, on the other hand, such as *lon* 'completive', *geu* 'habitual', *khi* 'progressive', *mon* 'excessive' and *haw* 'co-occurrence' and also aspect prefixes like *pum* 'completely', 'unrestrictedly' and *khag* 'suddenly', which are free of tense distinctions, occur freely in these predicates of infinitival complements. Examples:

- (98) *məhak lak-kən-bə mal-li*
he come-Hab-Inf appear-NFu
'He appears to come habitually'
- (99) *məhak ca-rəm-bə ya-y*
he eat-Compl-Inf possible-NFu
'It is possible that he had eaten'
- (100) *əy medu pum-cak cak-pə u-y*
I it Compl-burn-Inf see-NFu
'I saw it burn completely'

(iii) Modal distinctions

In the case of modal distinctions also, the ones which are associated with tense distinctions are left out of these infinitival complements, whereas the ones which are free of tense distinctions are retained in them. For example, there are two distinct negation suffixes, namely *de* 'non-future negative' and *lov* 'future negative'. Examples:

- (101) *məhak lak-te*
he come-NFNg
'He did not come'
- (102) *məhak lak-oy*
he come-FNg
'He will not come'

In the case of infinitival complements, only the non-future negative suffix can be used for denoting negation, and further, this suffix can ambiguously indicate either future negation or non-future negation. Examples:

- (103a) *məhak həyən lak-te-bə ya-y*
he tomorrow come-NFNg-Inf possible-NFu
'He may not come tomorrow'
- (103b) *məhak nəran lak-tebə nə-t-rə*
he yesterday come-NFNg-Inf Copula-NFNg Q
'Did he not come yesterday?'
- (103c) *məhak nəran lak-əm-də-bə ya-y*
he yesterday come-Compl-NFNg-Inf possible-NFu
'He might not have come yesterday'

Similarly, among the other modal suffixes, the ones which are directly associated with tense (future), such as *lo* 'imperative', *sau* 'concessive', *nu* 'prohibitive', *si* 'proposal' and *ge* 'desiderative' are not allowed to occur in the infinitival complements, whereas the ones which are free of tense distinctions, such as *nig* 'wish to' and *gumtew* 'pretend' are allowed to occur in them. Examples

- (104) mehak-ne cat-nig-be da-y
 he-Nom go-wish-Inf appear-NFu
 'He appears to be desirous of going'
- (105) mehak-ne ca-gumtew-be mal-li
 he-Nom eat-pretend-Inf appear-NFu
 'He appeared to pretend eating'

(iii) Equi-NP deletion

(a) Whenever there is coreferentiality between the arguments of the matrix and complement sentences, the deletion of one of the arguments is obligatory in the use of these infinitival complements. Notice that these complements differ from the corresponding sentential complements; in the latter case, the deletion (or non-specification) is mostly non-obligatory as we have pointed out above (see 13.2.2 iv). Examples

- (106a) ma-ne isay sek-pe ey-ne thiŋ-ni
 he-Nom song sing-Inf stop-NFu
 'I stopped him singing (a song)'
- (106b) ma-ne isay sek-pe thiŋ-ni
 he-Nom song sing-Inf I-Nom stop-NFu
 'He stopped singing (a song)'
- (107a) ey ma-ne cat-pe pam-mi
 I he-Nom go-Inf want-NFu
 'I want him to go'
- (107b) ey cat-pe pam-mi
 I go-Inf want-NFu
 'I want to go'

Notice that there is no coreference in the (a) sentences and hence no deletion either, whereas in the (b) sentences there is coreference and hence deletion as well.

(b) As in the case of sentential complements, the deletion can affect either the argument of the matrix sentence or of the complement sentence. This is evident in the following instances in which the arguments have different case markers in the matrix and complement sentences:

- (108a) ey ma-ne cat-pe pam-mi
 I he-Nom go-Inf want-NFu
 'I want (that) he goes'
- (108b) ey ma-bu cat-pe pam-mi
 I he-Acc go-Inf want-NFu
 'I want him to go'
- (109a) ey-ne ma-ne lavrik tem-be tha-y
 I-Nom he-Nom book study-Inf send-NFu
 'I sent (him so that) he studies the book'

(109b) *ey-ne ma-bu layrik tom-be tha-y*
 I-Nom he-Acc book study-Inf send-NFu
 'I sent him to study the book'

(110a) *ey-ne thebak esi tew-be lu-y*
 I-Nom work this do-Inf difficult-NFu
 'My doing this work is difficult (for me)'

(110b) *eynon-de thebak esi tew-be lu-y*
 I-Loc work this do-Inf difficult-NFu
 '(My) doing this work is difficult for me'

The last pair of sentences (110a,b) appears to indicate the presence of the process of raising in (109b), but actually it involves only the use of a different option in equi-NP deletion. That is, the argument of the matrix verb, *ey pmda*, (as seen in the sentence *thebak esi eyponde hri* 'This work is difficult (for me)'), has been deleted in (110a), whereas that of the complement, *ey* (as seen in the sentence, *ey thebak esi tew-yi* 'I do this work') has been deleted in (110b). Manipuri does not appear to make use of the grammatical process of raising in any of its sentences.

(c) The obligatoriness of equi-NP deletion is restricted to instances in which the infinitival complements are not further followed by any suffixes such as case markers. When they are followed by such suffixes, the deletion is non-obligatory. We have only non-specification of the argument in such instances and not 'deletion'.

Examples

(111a) *ey-ne tak-pe-si-de ey penja-y*
 I-Nom teach-Inf-this-Loc satisfy-NFu
 'I am satisfied by this (my) teaching'

(111b) *ey-ne tak-pe-si-de penja-y*
 I-Nom teach-Inf-this-Loc I satisfied-NFu
 'I am satisfied by this teaching'

(112a) *mehak-ne eyyon-de layrik pi-be-de ey nek-i*
 he-Nom I-Loc book give-Inf-Loc surprise-NFu
 'I was surprised by his giving the book to me'

(112b) *mehak-ne eyyon-de layrik pi-be-de nek-i*
 he-Nom I-Loc book give-Inf-Loc surprise-NFu
 '(I) was surprised by his giving the book to me'

13.3.3. Case markers on complements

Infinitival complements can also show different case relations with the matrix predicate, and can take different case markers in order to indicate these case relations.

(a) First of all, they can take the nominative *ne* for denoting the comparative meaning as seen in the following pairs of sentences:

(113a) *layrik pi-be phe-y*
 book give-Inf good-NFu
 'It is good to give a book'

(113b) layrik pi-be-ne phe-y
book give-Inf-Nom good-NFu
'It is better to give a book'

(114a) mehak si-be pam-mi
he die-Inf want-NFu
'He wants to die'

(114b) mehak si-be-ne pam-mi
he die-Inf-Nom want-NFu
'He prefers to die'

(b) Secondly, they can take the accusative suffix *bu* in order to emphasize the concerned argument
Examples:

(115a) əy-ne ləphoy ca-be yam-ne haw-wi
I-Nom banana eat-Inf much-Adv taste-NFu
'I find the eating of banana very tasty'

(115b) əy-ne ləphoy ca-be-bu yam-ne haw-wi
I-Nom banana eat-Inf-Acc much-Adv taste-NFu
'I find the eating of banana in particular to be very tasty'

(116a) əy-ne layrik-si pa-be thaje-de-ne nuggay
I-Nom book-this read-Inf-Acc believe-Neg-Adv happy(NFu)
'I find the reading of this book to be unbelievably interesting'

(116b) əy-ne layrik-si pa-be-bu thaje-de-ne nuggay
I-Nom book-this read-Inf-Acc believe-Neg-Adv happy(Nfu)
'I find the reading of this book in particular to be unbelievably interesting'

(c) Thirdly, they can take the locative suffix *de* in order to indicate the purpose or limitation of the main event Examples:

(117) yim sa-hə-de cək cəŋ-ŋi
house build-Inf-Loc brick need-NFu
'Bricks are needed for building the house'

(118) əy-ne pa-be-de hal-li
I-Nom read-Inf-Loc first-NFu
'I came first in reading'

(119) əy-ne ma-ne isəy sək-pe-de nok-i
I-Nom he-Nom song sing-Inf-Loc laugh-NFu
'I laughed at his singing (the song)'

It may be noted here that almost all the state verbs can take an infinitival complement with the suffix *de* in order to denote the purpose or limitation of the characteristic under consideration. Examples:

(120) məsi pu-be-de saŋ-ŋi
this carry-Inf-Loc long-NFu
'This is long for carrying'

- (121) *məhak təhək təw-hə-də həy*
 he work do-Inf-1.Loc skill-NFu
 'He is skilled in doing the work'

(d) Lastly, they can take the benefactive suffix *gi* in order to indicate the reason or purpose for the main event. Examples:

- (122) *əy-nə mə-nə phəm-bə-gi cəy*
 I-Nom he-Nom sit-Inf-Gen scold-NFu
 'I scolded him for sitting'
- (123) *nəŋ mədu-də lak-pə-gi kənnə-d-re*
 you that-Loc come-Inf-Gen use-Neg-Perf
 'There is no use of your coming there'

13.3.4. Successive embedding of complements

It is also possible to use two or more infinitival complements successively by embedding each of them in the following complement as can be seen from the following sets of sentences:

- (124a) *məhak kəp-pə təy*
 he cry-Inf frequent-NFu
 'He is frequent in crying'
- (124b) *məhak kəp-pə təy-bə məl-li*
 he cry-Inf frequent-Inf appear-NFu
 'He appears to be frequent in crying'
- (124c) *məhak kəp-pə təy-bə mən-bə yə-y*
 he cry-Inf frequent-Inf appear-Inf possible-NFu
 'It appears to be possible that he is frequent in crying'
- (125a) *məkhəy cə-bə həw-wi*
 they eat-Inf start-NFu
 'They started to eat'
- (125b) *məkhəy cə-bə həw-bə tə-y*
 they eat-Inf start-Inf necessary-NFu
 'It is necessary for them to start eating'
- (125c) *məkhəy cə-bə həw-bə tə-bə məl-li*
 they eat-Inf start-Inf necessary-Inf appear-NFu
 'It appears to be necessary for them to start eating'

The complement taking verbs can be subcategorized depending upon their positions in these embedded structures. For example, some of the modal verbs which can take the factive complementizer *hənnə* only, like *yə* 'may', *də* 'appear', *nəŋ* 'can' and *mən* 'appear' can occur in the last position, whereas others like *kaw* 'forget' and *nəŋgəy* 'happy' occur only before them. Examples:

- (126) *mə-nə cət-pə kaw-bə məl-li*
 he-Nom go-Inf forget-Inf appear-NFu
 'He appears to have forgotten to go'

- (127) *ma-ne cat-pe kaw-he gem-mi*
 he-Nom go-Inf forget-Inf can-NFu
 'He could have forgotten to go'

The modal verbs which can take both the factive *haybe* and the nonfactive *hayna*, on the other hand, precede the above-mentioned predicates as seen in the following sentence:

- (128) *mehak-ne ey-ne cat-pe ya-he ya-y*
 he-Nom I-Nom go-Inf agree-Inf may-NFu
 'He may agree to my going'

Here the first occurrence of *va* is in the sense of 'agree' and in this sense the verb can take complements ending in both *haybe* and *hayna*, whereas the second occurrence of *va* is in the sense of 'may' and in that sense the verb can only take sentential complements that end in *haybe*.

Other types of complement taking predicates like the aspect verbs (*loy* 'finish', *həv* 'start', *yaŋ* 'fast' etc.) and also the characterizing verbs (statives) precede both the above-mentioned types of modal verbs. Examples:

- (129) *ey-ne mehak-ne ca-be loy-be tem-mi*
 I-Nom he-Nom eat-Inf finish-Inf report-NFu
 'I reported his finishing eating'
- (130) *mehak cat-pe yaŋ-be da-y*
 he go-Inf fast-Inf appear-NFu
 'He appears to be fast in walking'

The subclassification of these verbs for successive embedding is actually rather complicated and needs to be studied more thoroughly than we have been able to do.

13.3.5. Other uses of infinitive forms

In addition to their occurrence as complements, the infinitival forms of sentences can also have several other functions in Manipuri, such as the occurrence (a) as relative clauses, (b) in equational sentences before the copula *ni*, (c) in yes-no questions before the particle *na*, (d) in exclamatory sentences before the particle *no* and (e) in adverbial clauses before some of the case markers like *de*, *de-gi* and *gə*.

However, there is an important difference between the use of an infinitive as a complement on the one hand, and its use in any of the above-mentioned functions on the other. In the former case the infinitive forms do not show any tense or tense-bound aspect or mood distinctions as we have seen above (13.3.2), whereas in these latter uses they do show many of these tense or tense-bound aspect distinctions. In addition to this, there are certain other distinctions also between these two types of usages, as we point out below:

(i) As we have pointed out above (13.3.2 iv), equi-NP deletion can affect either the matrix sentence or the embedded sentence in the case of infinitival complements; in the case of infinitive forms used in relative clauses, on the other hand, the deletion can occur only in the relative (embedded) clause. The specification of the noun phrase in the matrix clause as the head of the clause is obligatory. Examples:

- (131a) *mi esi-ne ləphny ca-be ey u-y*
 man this-Nom banana eat-Inf I see-NFu
 'I saw this man eating the banana'

(131b) *mi esi-bu laphoy ca-ho oy u-y*
 man this-Acc banana eat-Inf I see-NFu
 'I saw this man eat the banana'

(131c) *laphoy ca-ho mi esi-bu oy u-y*
 banana eat-Inf man this-Acc I see-NFu
 'I saw this man (who) ate the banana'

Notice that the noun phrase *mi esi* 'this man' has been equi-deleted from the matrix clause in (131a) and from the embedded clause in (131b) in the case of its use in infinitival complements, whereas in (131c), where it occurs in an infinitival relative clause, it has been obligatorily equi-deleted from the embedded clause.

The following set of sentences exemplify this distinction in the use of a different set of case markers in the matrix and embedded clauses:

(132a) *əŋaŋ-na layrik esi pa-ho lay*
 boy-Nom book this read-Inf easy-NFu
 'The boy's reading this book is easy (for him)'

(132b) *layrik esi pa-ho əŋaŋ-de lay*
 book this read-Inf boy-Loc easy-NFu
 '(The boy's) reading this book is easy for him'

(132c) *layrik esi pa-ho əŋaŋ-de sel pi*
 book this read-Inf boy-Loc money give-NFu
 'Give some money to the boy (who) read this book'

(ii) The future/non-future distinction is obligatorily retained in relative clauses but it is generally neutralized in infinitival complements. Examples:

(133a) *mi edu-bu-na hoyeŋ cat-pe oy-ne ya-y*
 man that-Acc-Nom tomorrow go-Inf I-Nom agree-NFu
 'I agreed (that) that man would go tomorrow'

(133b) *hoyeŋ cat-ka-de-be mi na-y*
 tomorrow go-Fu-Emph-Inf man ill-NFu
 'The man who is to go tomorrow is ill'

(134a) *mi edu-bu-na ɳəraŋ lak-pe oy təm-mi*
 man that-Acc-Nom yesterday come-Inf I report-NFu
 'I reported (that) that man came yesterday'

(134b) *ɳəraŋ lak-pe mi edu-na na-y*
 yesterday come-Inf man that-Nom ill-NFu
 'The man who came yesterday is ill'

Notice that the infinitive forms of verbs *cat* 'go' and *lak* 'come' show no tense distinction in their use as complements in (a) sentences, whereas in their use as relative clauses in (b) sentences they do show tense distinction.

(iii) This is true of the use of negative suffixes *te* 'non-future negative' and *loy* 'future negative', as can be seen in the following sets of sentences:

Complements

- (135a) *mi ədu həyən lak-tə-bə ya-y*
 man that tomorrow come-NFNg-Inf possible-NFu
 'It is possible (that) that man may not come tomorrow'
- (135b) *həyən lak-əy-bə mi-du na-y*
 tomorrow come-FNg-Inf man-that ill-NFu
 'That man, who will not come tomorrow, is ill'
- (136a) *mi ədu ɣəraŋ lak-tə-bə ya-y*
 man that yesterday come-NFNg-Inf ill-NFu
 'It is possible (that) that man did not come yesterday'
- (136b) *ɣəraŋ lak-tə-bə mi-du na-y*
 yesterday come-NFNg-Inf man-that ill-NFu
 'That man, who did not come yesterday, is ill'

Notice that the infinitive form of the verb *lak* 'come' occurs in the same form in the two (a) sentences (where it functions as the predicate of a complement), even though it has future negative meaning in (135a) and non-future negative meaning in (136a); it occurs in distinct forms, corresponding to this meaning distinction, in the (b) sentences, in which it functions as the predicate of a relative clause.

(iv) As we have pointed out in the eleventh chapter, perfect and durative suffixes have temporal connotations when used by themselves; the former indicates a past event with present effect (state) and the latter denotes a present (durative) event or state. Infinitives occurring in complements do not show these suffixes whereas the ones occurring in relative clauses do show them. Examples:

- (137a) *cak ca-ri-bə mi-du na-y*
 food eat-Dur-Inf man-that ill-NFu
 'That man, who is eating food, is ill'
- (137b) *cak ca-rə-bə mi-du na-y*
 food eat-Perf-Inf man-that ill-NFu
 'That man, who has eaten food, is ill'

(v) When an infinitive form occurs without any accompanying argument (and without any affixes other than the infinitive suffix), it generally requires the prefix *a* to be attached to it in the case of its use as a relative clause; in its use as a complement, however, this is not necessary. Examples:

- (138a) *əy-nə kəp-pə u-y*
 I-Nom cry-Inf see-NFu
 'I saw crying'
- (138b) *əy-nə ə-kəp-pə mi-hu u-y*
 I-Nom Prefix-cry-Inf man-Acc see-NFu
 'I saw the man who was crying'

Internal relative clauses may appear to be more similar to these complements, as they do not involve equi-deletion of noun phrases from the clause, but they too differ from complements in not taking any case markers. Consider, for example, the following two sentences:

- (139a) *tombə-nə səjik phan-bə-du-də cawbə-nə saw-wi*
 Tomba-Nom grass cut-Inf-that-Loc Chaoba-Nom angry-NFu
 'Chaoba is angry (that) Tomba is cutting the grass'

- (139b) *tombe-ne səjik phan-be-du cawbe-gi ni*
 Tomba-Nom grass cut-Inf-that Chaoba-Gen Cop
 'The grass that Tomba cut is Chaoba's'

Notice that the infinitival complement occurring in (139a) has the locative suffix *de* attached to it. Internal relative clause occurring in (139b) cannot take the locative suffix (or other case suffixes) in this fashion. In order to use the head noun of a relative clause with case markers like the locative, one has to employ the external relative clause as follows:

- (139c) *tombe-na phan-be səjik-ta cawbe-ne thev*
 Tomba-Nom cut-Inf grass-Loc Chaoba-Nom hide-NFu
 'Chaoba hid the grass that Tomba cut'
- (139d) *tomb-ne phan-be-du-de cawbe-ne they*
 Tomba-Nom cut-Inf-that-Loc Chaoba-Nom hide-NFu
 'Chaoba hid the thing that Tomba cut'

Internal relative clauses also differ from complements (and external relative clauses) in not allowing any verbal suffixes to be used in the infinitive form of the verb (see 13.3.4)

13.3.6. Adverbial complements

It has been found possible to use the adverbial forms of sentences also as complements, and it is apparently possible to contrast these with the use of the infinitival forms of sentences as complements. The former are derived by adding the adverbial suffix *ne* to the predicates. Examples

- (140a) *məhak-ne layrik ədu pa-y*
 he-Nom book that read-NFu
 'He read that book'
- (140b) *məhak-ne layrik pa-be əy u-y*
 he-Nom book read-Inf I see-NFu
 'I saw him read the book'
- (140c) *məhak-ne layrik pa-ne u-y*
 he-Nom book read-Adv see-NFu
 'He appears to have read the book'
- (141a) *məhak-ne cak ca-y*
 he-Nom rice eat-NFu
 'He ate rice'
- (141b) *məhak-ne cak ca-be əy u-y*
 he-Nom rice eat-Inf I see-NFu
 'I saw him eat rice'
- (141c) *məhak-ne cak ca-ne u-y*
 he-Nom rice eat-Adv see-NFu
 'He appears to have eaten rice'

The sentences (140b) and (141b) contain the infinitival complement forms of the sentences (140a) and (141a) respectively, whereas the sentences (140c) and (141c) contain their adverbial complement forms. It appears, however, that these adverbial complements are highly constrained in that they can take only the matrix verb *u* 'see' in its extended sense of 'appears to'.

13.4. Prefixed complements

13.4.1. There are two different prefixes, namely *khu* (related to the root *khu* 'hand') and *mə* (related to the third person pronoun *niŋ*) which can be added to the predicates of complement sentences in order to denote (i) the way of carrying out the relevant activity (in the case of action sentences), (ii) the manner in which an event occurs (in the case of process sentences), and (iii) the kind of characteristic that is being specified (in the case of stative sentences)

13.4.2. When these prefixes are added to the verb, the non-case-marked arguments occurring with it take the genitive suffix and the verb loses all the suffixes occurring after it. Examples.

- (142a) məhak-nə cak ca-y
he-Nom rice eat-NFu
'He ate rice'
- (142b) məhak-kɪ cak-kɪ khu-ca phəŋə-de
he-Gen rice-Gen Com-eat nice-Neg
'His way of eating rice is not nice'
- (143a) məy cak-ɪ
fire burn-NFu
'The fire burns'
- (143b) məy-gɪ khu-cak cəm-mɪ
fire-Gen Com-burn right-NFu
'The way of the fire's burning is proper'
- (144a) mə əməmbə kɪ
he darkness fear-NFu
'He fears darkness'
- (144b) mə-gɪ əməmbə mə kɪ əst hən-məl-lɪ
he-Gen darkness Com-fear this more-much-NFu
'His fear of darkness is too much'

13.4.3. It is possible for the second unmarked argument in the complement sentence to remain as it is (i.e. without taking the genitive suffix), but in such a usage the argument has a generic connotation. Examples:

- (145a) məhak-kɪ cɪŋ-gɪ mə-ka
he-Gen hill-Gen Com-climb
'his way of climbing the hill'
- (145b) məhak-kɪ cɪŋ mə-ka
he-Gen hill Com-climb
'his way of climbing hills'
- (146a) əy-gɪ layrik-kɪ khu-pa
I-Gen book-Gen Com-read
'my way of reading the book'
- (146b) əy-gɪ layrik khu-pa
I-Gen book Com-read
'my way of reading books'

13.4.4. If the verbal form has to retain its aspect, mood and other such suffixes, (i.e. when it is not monosyllabic), there is a need to reduplicate the verb, with its first occurrence retaining the suffixes and ending in the infinitive suffix *ho*, and the second occurrence containing only the main monosyllabic verbal root with the prefix *khu* or *ma* occurring before it. Examples

- (147) məhak-ki ciŋ ka-rəm-ho mə-ka
 he-Gen hill climb-Per-Inf Com-climb
 'the way in which he had climbed the hills'
- (148) əy-gi laynɔk pa-hən-ho khu-pa
 I-Gen book read-Cs Inf Com-read
 'the way of my causing (someone) to read'
- (149) əy-gi cak ca-niŋ-ho khu-ca
 I-Gen rice food-wish-Inf Com-eat
 'the way of my wishing to eat'

13.4.5. When the complement sentence contains a case-marked argument or an adverbial phrase (or adjunct) also, the reduplication of the predicate in the above-mentioned fashion is obligatory. Examples.

- (150) əy-ne ma-bu hən-ho khu-hən
 I-Nom he-Acc ask-Inf Com-ask
 'the way of my asking him'
- (151) əy-ne ciŋ-de-gi kum-bo khu-kum
 I-Nom hill-Loc-Gen descend-Inf Com-descend
 'the way of my descending the hill'
- (152) məhak-ki thebak kam-ne təw-ho khu-təw
 he-Gen work careless-Adv do-Inf Com-do
 'the way of his carelessly doing the work'

Notice that the case-marked arguments retain their case-markers in these constructions, and only the unmarked arguments take the genitive suffix

13.4.6. It is also possible for the first occurrence of the predicate (i.e. the one ending in *ho* in the reduplicated construction) to take the genitive suffix, provided that at least one of the arguments of the complement sentence also occurs with the genitive suffix. Examples:

- (153) əy-gi ciŋ kum-bo-gi khu-kum
 I-Gen hill climb-Inf-Gen Com-climb
 'the way of my descending hills'
- (154) məhak-ki thuaw təy-bo-gi mə-təv
 he-Gen oil rub-Inf-Gen Com-rub
 'his way of rubbing the oil'

13.4.7. Almost all the matrix predicates that can take the infinitival complements can also take these prefixed complements. Examples

- (155) ma-gi thebak khu-təw lay
 he-Gen work Com-do easy-Nfu
 'His way of doing the work is easy'

- (156) *ey-ne ɬey-gi khu-ɬek tem-mi*
 I-Nom song-Gen Com-sing learn-NFu
 'I learnt the way of singing the song'

13.4.8. The predicates which take sentential complements containing the complementizer *həy-nə* only (i.e. the deontic modal predicates) can also take these prefixed complements provided that the complements occur with the demonstrative particle *du*. Examples:

- (157) *ey-ne ma-gi khu-ɬot-tu hoŋ-ŋi*
 I-Nom he-Gen Com go-that ask-NFu
 'I asked (him) about his way of going (whether by bus, train, car, etc.)'
 (158) *ey-ne ma-gi thebək khu-tew-du cəy*
 I-Nom he-Gen work Com-do-that abuse-NFu
 'I abused (him) of his way of doing the work'

13.4.9. These prefixed complements can take any of the case suffixes in order to denote roughly the same type of case relations that are denoted by other noun phrases. They differ from other complements on this point. Examples:

- (159) *məhak-ki thebək khu-tew-ne məhak phaw-khi*
 he-Gen work Com-do-Nom he famous-Deid-NFu
 'He became famous by his way of doing the work'
 (160) *ey-ne ma-gi thebək khu-tew-de ya-niŋ-de*
 I-Nom he-Gen work Com-do-Loc like-wish-Neg
 'I do not like the way of his doing the work'
 (161) *məhak-ki thebək khu-tew-bu kena-ne ya-geŋi?*
 he-Gen work Com-do-Acc who-Nom agree-Fu
 'Who will agree to his way of doing the work?'

13.5 Compounded complements

It is possible to regard some of the compound words which are produced by joining a noun with a verb as comparable to the three complement types discussed above because they are able to occur with some of the matrix predicates in positions in which one can normally use only a complement. Examples:

- (162a) *məhak-ne wa ŋaŋ-hə oythok-te*
 he-Nom word speak-Inf possible-Neg
 'His speaking is not possible'
 (162b) *məhak-ki waŋaŋ-du oythok-te*
 he-Gen speech-that possible-Neg
 'His speech is not possible'
 (163a) *məhak-ne cak thoŋ-hə nal-lɪ*
 he-Nom food cook-Inf clean-NFu
 'His cooking of food is clean'
 (163b) *məhak-ki cak thoŋ nal-lɪ*
 he-Gen cooking (food-cook) clean-NFu
 'His cooking is clean'

Notice that the compounds *wapig* 'speech' in (162b) and *ekihon* 'cooking' in (163b) occur in the position of complements. They can, of course, occur in other positions (as nouns) as well.

Chapter 14

ILLOCUTIONARY DISTINCTIONS

14.1 Introduction

We wish to describe in this chapter some of the illocutionary distinctions that can be expressed through Manipuri sentences by making changes in their structures. We have noted three main types of distinctions of this nature, namely (i) interrogatives, (ii) imperatives and (iii) exclamations. We may regard these as 'deriving' from the indicative sentences that we have been describing in the previous chapters, even though there do occur some constraints which appear to indicate that their 'derivation' from indicative forms may not always be a straightforward one.

14.2 Interrogative sentences

Interrogative sentences in Manipuri are mainly of two different types: (i) a statement as a whole can be questioned by attaching the question marker *re* to its predicate, and (ii) one of the constituent elements of the statement can be questioned by replacing that element by the relevant wh-word. We may regard the former as a sentential question and the latter as a constituent question. Examples:

- (1a) mehak-ne yum-de cot-le
he-Nom house-Loc go-Perf
'He has gone home'
- (1b) mehak-ne yum-de cot-le-re
he-Nom house-Loc go-Perf-Q
'Has he gone home?'
- (1c) mehak-ne koday-de cot-le
he-Nom where-Loc go-Perf
'Where has he gone?'

In addition to these two major types of interrogative sentences (1b, 1c), Manipuri also has certain other minor types, such as tag questions formed by repeating the verb with the question marker *re* attached to it, or by adding the particle *ko* or *do* to sentences, and alternative questions in which two different interrogative sentences are joined together. Examples:

- (2a) mehak layrik pay
he book read
'He read the book'
- (2b) mehak layrik pay-ko
he book read-Tag
'He read the book, didn't he?'

- (2c) mehak layrik pay hay, pa-b-re
he book read say, read-Inf-Q
'(They) say that he read the book, didn't he?'
- (3) mehak ca thok-p-re kophi thok-p-re
he tea drink-Inf-Q coffee drink-Inf-Q
'Does he drink tea or (does he drink) coffee?'

14.2.1 Sentential questions

Manipuri forms sentential questions by attaching the particle *re* to the predicate. Most frequently, verbal predicates are changed into their infinitive forms before this question marker is attached to them. It is also possible, however, to attach it directly to verbal forms, especially when the speaker desires to obtain confirmation about a statement that has been made by the addressee.

(i) When attached to the infinitive form of a verb (as in the case of nominalized sentences), the vowel *e* of the infinitive suffix is generally deleted. Examples:

- (13) mehak moy cem-me
he fire light-Perf
'He has lighted fire'
- (14a) mehak moy cem-meh-re
he fire light-Perf-Inf-Q
'Has he lighted fire?'
- (14c) mehak moy cem-mə-re
he fire light-Perf-Q
'He has lighted fire?'
- (15a) mehak lephoy ca-ri
he banana eat-Dur
'He is eating a banana'
- (15b) mehak lephoy ca-ri-b-re
he banana eat-Dur-Inf-Q
'Is he eating a banana?'
- (15c) mehak lephoy ca-ri-re
he banana eat-Dur-Q
'He is eating a banana?'

(ii) The future suffix *kə-ni* has the form *kə-da* (i.e. future suffix *kə* followed by the emphatic *da*) before this question marker. Examples:

- (16a) mehak yum-de cot-koni
he house-Loc go-Fu
'He will go home'
- (16b) mehak yum-de cot-ke-de-b-re
he house-Loc go-Fu-Emph-Inf-Q
'Will he go home?'

- (6c) mehak yum-də cət-ke-də-rə
he house-Loc go-Fu-Emph-Q
'He will go home?'

Notice that this emphatic *də* gets attached to the future negative forms of verbs also (i.e. forms containing the suffix *loy*) when they are followed by the question suffix. Examples:

- (7a) mehak nəsi kəythen-də cət-loy
he today market-Loc go-FNg
'He will not go to the market today'
(7b) mehak nəsi kəythen-də cət-loy-d-rə
he today market-Loc go-FNg-Emph-Q
'Will he not go to the market today?'

(iii) In the case of nominal sentences, the suffix replaces the copula *nɪ*; notice that in the nominalized forms of sentences given above also, *rə* has replaced the copula *nɪ*. Examples:

- (8a) məsi tombə-gɪ phi nɪ
this Tomba-Gen cloth Cop
'This is Tomba's cloth'
(8b) məsi tombə-gɪ phi-rə
this Tomba-Gen cloth-Q.
'Is this Tomba's cloth?'
(9a) mehak lephoy cə-rɪ-bə nɪ
he banana eat-Dur-Inf Cop
'He does the eating of banana'
(9b) mehak lephoy cə-rɪ-h-rə
he banana eat-Dur-Inf-Q
'Does he (do) the eating of banana?'

The copula is retained, however, if it is followed by the negative suffix *də* (which becomes *də* before the question marker). Examples:

- (10a) məsi tombə-gɪ phi nət-tə
this tomba-Gen cloth Cop-Neg
'This is not Tomba's cloth'
(10b) məsi tombə-gɪ phi nət-tə-rə
this Tomba-Gen cloth Cop-Neg-Q
'Is this not Tomba's cloth?'

(iv) One interesting exception to the above-mentioned rule of attaching the question marker directly to verbal forms is that this does not take place after the non-future suffix *li*; in such contexts, we only have sentential questions with infinitive forms of verbs. Examples:

- (11a) *məhak ləphoy ca-y*
he banana eat-NFu
'He ate a banana'
- (11b) *məhak ləphoy ca-h-rə*
he banana eat-Inf-Q
'Did he eat a banana?'
- (12a) *məhak ləphoy ca-rəm-mi*
he banana eat-Compl-NFu
'He had eaten a banana'
- (12b) *məhak ləphoy ca-rəm-mi-rə*
he banana eat-Compl-Dur-Q
'Had he been eating a banana?'

(v) The question marker can also occur after imperative and prohibitive sentences, but in such a usage, they can only have a first person actor; that is, the questions are used by the speaker for obtaining permission for carrying out (or for not carrying out) the relevant actions rather than for eliciting information (see below 14.3.3). Examples:

- (13a) *nəŋ maŋən-de ləphoy pi-yu*
you he-Loc banana give-Imp
'Give him a banana!'
- (13b) *əy maŋən-de ləphoy pi-yu-rə*
I he-Loc banana give-Imp-Q
'Shall I give him a banana?'
- (14a) *nəŋ ləphoy-du ca-gənu*
you banana-that eat-Proh
'Don't eat that banana!'
- (14b) *əy ləphoy-du ca-gənu-rə*
I banana-that eat-Proh-Q
'Should I not eat that banana?'

(vi) Sentential questions generally have the question marker occurring at the end of the sentence (i.e. after the predicate), as we have shown in the examples given so far, it is possible to shift it to other constituents of the sentence in order to place the focus upon those constituents; such sentences, however, will have to be used with their verb in its infinitive form; further, the sentences also need the demonstrative particle *du* to be attached to their infinitive predicate. Examples:

- (15a) *məhak ɣəraŋ keythen-de cəlli*
he yesterday market-Loc went
'He went to the market yesterday'
- (15b) *məhak ɣəraŋ keythen-de cət-p-rə*
he yesterday market-Loc go-Inf-Q
'Did he go to the market yesterday?'
- (15c) *məhak-le ɣəraŋ keythen-de cət-pə-du*
he-Q yesterday market-Loc go-Inf-that
'Is it he that went to the market yesterday?'

- (15d) mahak nɔraŋ-le kəvthen-de cət-pe-du
he yesterday-Q market-Loc go-Inf-that
'Is it yesterday that he went to the market?'
- (15e) mahak nɔraŋ kəvthen-da-re cət-pe-du
he yesterday market-Loc-Q go-Inf-that
'Is it to the market that he went yesterday?'

(vii) Sentences can also be used as questions without attaching the question marker, but by merely changing their intonation; such questions are mainly used for obtaining confirmation regarding a statement that has already been made by the addressee.

14.2.2 Answers to sentential questions

Manipuri does not use any general answers like 'yes' and 'no' to its sentential questions; instead, it has the main verb that has been used in the question being repeated as an answer; if the answer is in the negative, the relevant negative form of the verb is to be used, as shown below:

- (16a) nɔŋ maysur cət-lu-re-b-rə?
you Mysore go-Dei2-Perf-Inf-Q
'Have you gone to Mysore?'
- (16b) cət-lu-re/cət-lu-d-ri
go-Dei2-Perf/go-Dei2-Neg-
'yes' / 'no'
- (17a) nɔŋ maysur cət-lu-go-d-rə?
you Mysore go-Dei2-Fu-Emph-Q
'Will you go to Mysore?'
- (17b) cət-lu-geŋi/cət-roy
go-Dei2-Fu/go-FNg
'yes' / 'no'

In the case of equational sentences, on the other hand, Manipuri has answers that can be equated with the English 'yes' and 'no' but actually these are also the affirmative and negative forms of the copula verb that occurs in equational sentences. The form used is *ma-ni* 'it-is' for 'yes' and *nə-te* 'is-not' for 'no'. Examples:

- (18a) nɔŋ-nə cət-lu-bə-du maysur-d-rə
you-Nom go-Dei2-Inf-that Mysore-Loc-Q
'Is it to Mysore that you went?'
- (18b) ma-ni/nə-te
it-is/Cop-Neg
'yes' / 'no'

14.2.3 Constituent questions

Manipuri forms its constituent questions (i.e. questions which request for information regarding one of the constituent elements of the sentence) by replacing the constituent concerned by a *wh*-word. As we have

pointed out in an earlier chapter (see 5.4), these *wh*-words are formed rather uniformly by the use of the prefix *kə*

With the help of these questions, the speaker is able to obtain information from his addressee about one or more aspects of the sentence under consideration, such as the following:

(i)	<i>identity of a referent</i>	<i>kəna</i> <i>kəri</i> <i>kəməmbə</i>	'who' 'what' 'which'
(ii)	<i>quantity of a referent</i>	<i>kəya</i> <i>kəyada</i>	'how much' 'for how many'
(iii)	<i>nature of an event</i>	<i>kəri</i>	'what'
(iv)	<i>time of an event</i>	<i>kədəwəy</i>	'when'
(v)	<i>location</i>	<i>kədəyde</i>	'where'
(vi)	<i>direction</i>	<i>kədəmdə</i>	'where to'
(vii)	<i>manner</i>	<i>kəməmbə</i>	'how'
(viii)	<i>reason, cause or purpose</i>	<i>kədəwbə</i>	'why'

These *wh*-words merely replace the relevant constituent element in the sentence, they occur in the same syntactic position in which the items that they replace occur. The following examples show the possibilities of replacing some of the major constituents of a given sentence in this fashion

- (19a) *tombə-ne maŋən-de layrik pi*
Tomba-Nom he-Loc book gave
'Tomba gave him a book'

(a) *Replacing existing arguments*

- (19b) *tombə-ne maŋən-de kəri pi*
Tomba-Nom he-Loc what gave
'What did Tomba give him?'

- (19c) *tombə-ne kəna-de layrik pi*
Tomba-Nom who-Loc book gave
'Whom did Tomba give a book?'

- (19d) *kəna-ne maŋən-de layrik pi*
who-Nom he-Loc book gave
'Who gave him a book?'

(b) *Replacing optional arguments*

- (19e) *tombə-ne maŋən-de layrik kədəy-de pi*
Tomba-Nom he-Loc book where-Loc gave
'Where did Tomba give a book to him?'

- (19f) *tombə-ne maŋən-de layrik kədəwəy pi*
Tomba-Nom he-Loc book when gave
'When did Tomba give a book to him?'

- (19g) *tombə-ne maŋən-de layrik kəməmbə pi*
Tomba-Nom he-Loc book how gave
'How did Tomba give a book to him?'

- (19h) tombe-ne mañon-de layrik keydewnebe pi
Tomba-Nom he-Loc book why gave
'Why did Tomba give a book to him?'

(c) *Replacing the predicate or sentence*

- (19i) tombe-ne kən tewwi
Tomba-Nom what did
'What did Tomba do?'

- (19j) kən thok-khi
what happen-Dei4
'What happened?'

Notice that the first three questions (19b-d) exemplify the possibility of replacing the three arguments which actually occur in the statement (19a), the next four (19e-h) show the possibility of questioning optional elements (which are unspecified in 19a) like time, place manner and reason; the last two (19i-j) show the possibility of replacing the main verb and the whole statement respectively.

One can also replace different constituents of a noun phrase, as shown by the following sentences:

- (19k) tombe-ne kərəmbe layrik mañon-de pi
Tomba-Nom which book he-Loc gave
'Which book did Tomba give him?'
- (19l) tombe-ne layrik keya yamne mañon-de pi
Tomba-Nom book how much he-Loc gave
'How many books did Tomba give him?'
- (19m) tombe-ne kərəmbe məkhəl-gi layrik mañon-de pi
Tomba-Nom which type-Gen book he-Loc gave
'What type of book did Tomba give him?'
- (19n) tombe-ne keya-suba layrik mañon-de pi
Tomba-Nom how-number book he-Loc gave
'What number (in a series) of book did Tomba give him?'

Manipuri also allows constituent elements of embedded clauses of different types to be questioned by wh-words. Examples:

- (20a) kəna-gi layrik phey
who-Gen book good
'Whose book is good?'
- (20b) lūpa keya-de-gi ta-hə nəm-mə-roy
ripee how-much-Loc-Gen reduce-Inf able-Perf-FNg
'From which price will you not reduce?'
- (21a) kəna-ne kə-hə ciŋ waŋŋi
who-Nom climb-Inf hill high
'The hill that who climbed is high?'

- (21b) *kədaydə ka-hə mi nɔy*
 where climb-Inf man ill
 *'The man who where climbed is ill?'
- (22a) *məhak kori thoŋ-hə həy*
 he what cook-Inf skilled
 *'In cooking what is he skilled?'
- (22b) *həyɛŋ kaday-də cət-kəni həy nə məhak-nə leppɪ*
 tomorrow where go-Fu that he-Nom decided
 'Where has he decided to go tomorrow?'
- (22c) *kəna lak-t-ri-ŋəy-də tombə-nə cət-kli-rc*
 who come-Neg-NFu-time-Loc Tomba-Nom go-Dec14-Perf
 'Before whose coming did Tomba go?'

(i) There is a distinction between nominal sentences and other types of sentences in the formation of these wh-questions. In the latter case, questions are formed merely by replacing the sentential element to be questioned by a wh-word, whereas in the former case, there is a need to replace, in addition, the copula *ni* by a question marker such as *no* or *ge*. Examples:

- (23a) *cawbə tombə-gi moca ni*
 Chaoba Tomba-Gen son Cop
 'Chaoba is Tomba's son'
- (23b) *cawbə kəna-gi moca no*
 Chaoba who-Gen son Q
 'Whose son is Chaoba?'
- (24a) *ŋəraŋ əŋaŋ əmə lak-pə-ni*
 yesterday boy one come-Inf-Cop
 'A boy came yesterday'
- (24b) *ŋəraŋ kəna lak-pə-ge*
 yesterday who come-Inf-Q
 'Who came yesterday?'

The two question markers *no* and *ge* differ from one another in that the latter can only be used after an infinitive form of the verb, whereas the former (*no*) can be used both after an infinitive form as well as after a nominal predicate.

(ii) Sentences containing the future suffix *kəni* can have a wh-question formed from them in either of these two ways. They may have the question element replaced by the relevant wh-word and in addition to this, they may also have, optionally, the suffix reduced to *kə* and the emphatic marker *də* and the question marker *ge* added to them. There is a slight implicational difference between the two in that the latter may imply a choice out of a set of individuals. Examples.

- (25a) *həyɛŋ tombə lak-kəni*
 tomorrow Tomba come-Fu
 'Tomba will come tomorrow'
- (25b) *həyɛŋ kəna lak-kəni*
 tomorrow who come-Fu
 'Who will come tomorrow?'

- (25c) *heyen kena lak-ka-de-ge*
 tomorrow who come-Fu-Emph-Q
 'Who will come tomorrow?'

The particle *no* cannot be used instead of *ge* in sentences like (25c) with a future suffix.

(iii) Wh-words that have a plural referent can be reduplicated in order to obtain more specific answers about those referents. Examples:

- (26a) *kena lak-em-mi*
 who come-Compl-NFu
 'Who had come?'
- (26b) *kena kena lak-em-mi*
 who who come-Compl-NFu
 'Who are the specific persons that had come?'
- (27a) *nen keday-de cet-lu-y*
 you where-Loc go-Deu2-NFu
 'Where did you go?'
- (27b) *nen keday keday-de cet-lu-y*
 you where where-Loc go-Dei2-NFu
 'Which are the specific places that you have visited?'

(iv) It is possible to replace two or more constituent elements of a sentence with wh-words as can be seen in the following examples:

- (28) *kena-ne keday-de-gi kedawney layrik esi purek-i*
 who-Nom where-Loc-Gen when book this bring-NFu
 'Who brought this book from where and when?'
- (29) *keramha cithi-ne keromha phayl-de hap-keni*
 which letter-Nom which file-Loc put-Fu
 'Which letter is to be put in which file?'

(v) Wh-words can occur with the question particle *no* to form single-word questions of different types, as can be seen from the following examples:

<i>keni-no</i>	'What is that?'
<i>keday-no</i>	'Where is it?'
<i>keromha-no</i>	'How is it?'
<i>kedawney-no</i>	'When is it (going to take place)?'
<i>keyayamha-no</i>	'How much is it?'
<i>keromha-no</i>	'Which one is it?'
<i>keydawhe-no</i>	'Why is it?'

14.2.4 Embedded questions and 'indirect questions'

Manipuri makes a distinction between interrogative sentences that question an element of an embedded clause on the one hand and statements that are traditionally called 'indirect questions' on the other. The

latter are not actually questions: they contain an interrogative clause in the embedded position, and a matrix clause which satisfies the question raised by that embedded clause to a certain extent: it may suppress the actual information that the embedded question demands, but in spite of this, the whole sentence functions as a statement

(i) In the case of interrogative sentences that are embedded with a complementizer, the two types of sentences are differentiated by using the adverbial (non-factive) complementizer in the case of an embedded question and the nominal (infinitive) complementizer, which is factive, in the case of an 'indirect question'. Examples:

- (30a) *heyen kaday-de cat-koni hay-ne mohak-ne lep-pe*
tomorrow where-Loc go-Fu say-Adv he-Nom decide-Perf
'Where has he decided to go tomorrow?'
(30b) *heyen kaday-de cat-koni hay-be ay khong*
tomorrow where-Loc go-Fu say-Inf I know
'I know where to go tomorrow'

More frequently, however, the main verb of the embedded clause is followed by a question marker, namely *ge*, in the case of indirect questions. Examples:

- (31a) *heyen kena cat-koni hay-ne lep-pi*
tomorrow who go-Fu say-Adv decide-NFu
'Who did he decide will go tomorrow?'
(31b) *heyen kena cat-ke-de-ge hay-ho lep-pi*
tomorrow who go-Fu-Exph-Q say-Inf decide-NFu
'He decided (as to) who will go tomorrow'

(ii) As we have pointed out in the previous chapter (13.2.4), sentences that contain matrix verbs like *hav* 'say' and *hag* 'ask' can have the complementizer deleted from their complement clauses. In the case of such sentences, the two types of constructions (embedded questions and indirect questions) are differentiated from one another by changing the embedded verb into an infinitive one in the latter case. Examples:

- (32a) *neran kena lak-i hay-rak-i*
yesterday who come-NFu say-Dei3-NFu
'Who did he say came yesterday?'
(32b) *neran kena lak-pe-ge hay-rak-i*
yesterday who come-Inf-Q say-Dei3-NFu
'He told me who came yesterday'
(33a) *heyen kena lak-koni hay-rak-i*
tomorrow who come-Fu say-Dei3-NFu
'Who did he say will come tomorrow?'
(33b) *heyen kena lak-ke-de-ge hay-rak-i*
tomorrow who come-Fu-Emph-Q say-Dei3-NFu
'He told me who will come tomorrow'

(iii) It is possible to use embedded questions with an infinitive verb for forming a sentence that functions as a question also, but in such a case the *wh*-word needs to be repeated in the matrix clause as in the following examples:

- (34a) *ey-ne kori hay-khi-be-ge mehak-ne kori kheggi*
 I-Nom what say-Die4-Inf-Q he-Nom what knows
 'What does he know I said?'

- (34b) *ey-ne kori hay-khi-be-ge mehak-ne kheggi*
 I-Nom what say-Die4-Inf-Q he-Nom knows
 'He knows what I said'

14.2.5 Tag questions

(i) As mentioned earlier, equivalents of tag questions can be formed in Manipuri by adding question particles to statements or questions. There are two such particles in use, namely (a) *ko*, which is attached to statements, and (b) *do*, which is attached to questions. Examples.

(i) *ko* with statements

- (35) *tombe heyeg lak-koni-ko*
 Tomba tomorrow come-Fu-Tag
 'Tomba will come tomorrow, won't he?'
- (36) *ne-pa-ne kaythel-de cat-li-ko*
 you-father-Nom market-Loc go-NFu-Tag
 'Your father went to the market, didn't he?'
- (37) *mehak isey sek-oy-ko*
 he song sing-FNg-Tag
 'He will not sing, will he?'
- (38) *mehak oja ni ko*
 he teacher Cop Tag
 'He is the teacher, isn't he?'

(ii) *do* with questions

- (39) *tombe heyeg lak-ke-de-re-do*
 Tomba tomorrow come-Fu-Emph-Q-Tag
 'Tomba will come tomorrow, won't he?'
- (40) *mehak layrik pa-b-re-do*
 he book read-Inf-Q-Tag
 'He read the book, didn't he?'
- (41) *mehak cak ca-d-re-do*
 he food eat-Neg-Q-Tag
 'He did not eat food, did he?'

(ii) In addition to these particles, Manipuri also uses tags of different types for forming interrogative sentences. These are generally attached to statements occurring in a reported form in order to obtain confirmation from the addressee. The tags repeat the verbal form of the embedded statement with the question marker *re* being attached to it. Examples:

- (42a) *məhək layrik paɪ hay, pa-b-rə*
 he book read said, read-Inf-Q
 '(They) say he read the book, didn't he?'
- (42b) *məhək layrik pa-de hay, pa-d-rə*
 he book read-Neg said, read-Neg-Q
 '(They) say he did not read the book, did he?'
- (42c) *məhək layrik pa-rəm-mi hay, pa-rəm-b-rə*
 he book read-Compl-NFu said, read-Compl-Inf-Q
 '(They) say he had read the book, hadn't he?'

It is also possible to have more complex tags, as in the following sentence

- (43) *məhək keythen-de cət-li, cət-te-rə-de*
 he market-Loc go-NFu, go-Neg-Q-Tag
 'He went to the market, didn't he?'

14.3 Imperative sentences

We may include under the category of imperatives not only the imperatives proper, but also prohibitives, persuasives, desideratives and concessives, as they share certain interesting characteristics. They denote events that are yet to take place and are generally attached only to verbal bases that denote actions or controllable states. They also share the property of being an external force that tries to induce an action (i.e. they are deontic in nature).

14.3.1 Commands and persuasions

There are two different imperative suffixes, namely *lu* and *lo*, of which the former is used for making a command and the latter for the purpose of persuasion. Corresponding to these, there are also two prohibitives, namely *gəu* and *gəo* (which have shorter forms *nu* and *no* respectively) which are once again used as commands and persuasions respectively. The syllable *gə* occurring in these latter markers may be identified with the future suffix *gə* (occurring in the future suffix *gəu* or *gə-de*) (see 11.2.1). The following sentences exemplify the use of these imperative and prohibitive forms

(a) Command *lu*

- (44) *nəhək həyɛŋ beɪnɔ-de cət-lu*
 you tomorrow market-Loc go-Imp
 'Go to the market tomorrow!'
- (45) *nɛŋ cawbə-gə loyɔ-ne layrik-tu pa-w*
 you Chaoba-Conj together-Adv book-that read-Imp
 'Read that book along with Chaoba!'

(b) Persuasive *lo*

- (46) *nəhək həyɛŋ beɪnɔ-de cət-lo*
 you tomorrow market-Loc go-Pers
 'Please go to the market tomorrow'
- (47) *eyɔn-de isɪŋ kʰəɪ pi-yo*
 I-Loc water some give-Pers
 'Please give me some water'

(c) *Prohibitive gənu/nu*

- (48) yuŋ əsi-də-gi məpən thok-kənu
house this-Loc-Gen out exit-Proh
'Don't go out of this house!'

- (49) nəŋ həy əsɪn-bə ca-gənu
you fruit sour-Inf eat-Proh
'Don't eat the sour fruit!'

(d) *Persuasive prohibitive gəno/no*

- (50) məŋən-də layrik-tu pi-gəno
he-Loc book-that give-Proh
'Please don't give that book to him'

- (51) nə-khoy lay-si-də sok-kəno
you-PI picture-this-Loc touch-Proh
'Please don't touch this picture'

14.3.2 Desideratives and concessives

There are three different suffixes, namely *ge*, *si* and *sənu* which translate as 'let' and are distinguished by the person of their actor; *ge* is used in order to obtain permission for a I person action; *si* is used for initiating a I person (plural) action; and *sənu* is used for allowing or initiating a III person action. The second of these has a special negative form, derived by prefixing *gum* to it. Further, desiderative *ge* can also be used to denote one's desire to do something. Examples:

(a) *Desiderative ge 'I person'*

- (52) əy mə-gi yuŋ-də əmuk-tə cət-ke
I he-Gen house-Loc once-Emph go Des
(i) 'Let me go to his house at least once'
(ii) 'I wish to go to his house at least once'

- (53) mədu kərəm həy-nə təw-gəni əy həy-ge
it how sav-Adv do-Fu I tell-Des
'Let me tell you how to do it'

(b) *Concessive si 'I person plural'*

- (54) əy-khoy keythən-də cət-si
I-PI market-Loc go-Con
'Let us go to the market'

- (55) məhək məphəm əsi-də lak-u həy-si
he place this-Loc come-IMP tell-Con
'Let us ask him to come here'

(c) *Negative concessive gumsi 'I person plural'*

- (56) əy-khoy mə-bu kaw-gumsi
I-PI he-Acc forget-NgCon
'Let us not forget him'

- (57) mehak mephem esi-de lak-u hay-gumsi
he place this-Loc come-imp say-NgCon
'Let us not ask him to come here'

(d) *Concessive senu* 'Ill person'

- (58) anan-sig edu lempak-te sanno-senu
boy-Pl that lawn-Loc play-Con
'Let those boys play in the lawn'

- (59a) mehak lephoy ca-senu
he banana eat-Con
'Let him eat the banana'

- (59b) mehak lephoy ca-de-senu
he banana eat-Neg-Con
'Let him not eat the banana'

It may be noted here that the desiderative *ge* cannot be used with a negative suffix, in order to indicate the negative meaning, one may use the morph *nig* 'wish' with negative suffixes. Example

- (60) ey lephoy ca-nin-de
I banana eat-wish-Neg
'I do not want to eat banana'

14.3.3 Use with other verbal suffixes

(i) All the above-mentioned forms can be used with the particles *ko* or *co* for obtaining greater persuasion or emphasis; *co* is used only with the imperative *lu* in order to tone down their force; *ko* is used with other suffixes like the prohibitive *kenu*, persuasive *lo*, desiderative *ge* and concessives *si* or *senu* for obtaining greater persuasion. Examples:

(a) *co* for toning down a command

- (61) ney bejar-de cat-lu-co
you market-Loc go-imp-particle
'Please go to the market'

(b) *ko* for greater persuasion

- (62) ney mephem esi-de isig hoy-dok-kenu-ko
you place this-Loc water pour-out-Proh-Particle
'Please do not pour water in this place'

- (63) ey-khoy keythen-de cat-si-ko
I-Pl market-Loc go-Con-particle
'Let us go to the market, please'

- (64) ey layrik-si pa-ge-ko
I book-this read-Des-particle
'Let me read this book, please'

(ii) Two of the aspect suffixes, namely *le* 'perfect' and *lawn* 'completive' can occur with some of the above-mentioned imperative suffixes.

The perfect suffix can occur with imperatives, prohibitives and concessives in order to indicate that the relevant action must (or must not) be completed. The completive suffix, on the other hand, can occur

with imperatives, prohibitives, persuasives and also desideratives and concessives, in order to indicate that the relevant action is to be completed (or not completed) before some other action is to be carried out. Examples:

(a) Use of perfect suffix

- (65) *tomba-de cithi i-re-ganu*
Tomba-Loc letter write-Perf-Proh
'Stop writing letters to Tomba'
- (66) *nehak-ne wa hay-d-ri-gay-de mehak ca-re-sonu*
you-Nom speech say-Neg-dur-time-Loc he eat-Perf-Con
'Let him finish eating before you talk (to him)'

(b) Use of completive suffix

- (67) *layrik-tu eyon-de pi-d-ri-gay-de pa-rem-mu*
book-that I-Loc give-Neg-Dur-time-Loc read-Compl-Imp
'Read that book before giving (it) to me'
- (68) *pun ama-gi moman-de ey mehak-ke una-rem-ge*
hour one-Gen before I he-Gen meet-Compl-Des
'Let me meet him before one o'clock'

(iii) It is also possible to use the interrogative *re* with any of the above-mentioned forms. When used with the concessive *si* 'let us', *gumsi* 'let us not' and *sonu* 'let him', we obtain only the questioned form of the corresponding concessive sentences. Examples:

- (69) *mehak-su ney-ge cat-senu-re*
he-also you-Conj go-Con-Q
'Should he also go with you?'
- (70) *ey-khoy mehak-ke gesi unne-gumsi-re*
I-Pl he-Conj today meet-NgCon-Q
'Should we not meet him today?'

When used with the imperative, prohibitive or persuasive suffixes, however, there is a shift in the actor of the actions concerned from second to first person; that is, the question is being used by the speaker to obtain permission from the addressee for carrying out the relevant action. Examples:

- (71) *ey-khoy keythen-de cat-lu-re*
I-Pl market-Loc go-Dei2-Q
'Shall we go to the market?'
- (72) *ey hawjik-mak cak ca-ro-re*
I now-Emph food eat-Pers-Q
'Shall I please eat food now itself?'

Similarly, when the question suffix is used with the desiderative suffix, there is a shift of the actor from first person to second person, that is, the question is being used for asking the addressee whether he is going to carry out the relevant activity. Examples:

- (3) *məhəy lak-i-ri-gey-də nəŋ ca-ge-ro*
they come-Neg-Dur-time-Loc you eat-Des-Q
'Will you eat before they come?'
- (4) *mədu kəram hay-nə təw-gəni nəŋ hay-ge-ro*
it how say-Adv-do-Fu you say-Des-Q
'Will you tell (us) how to do it?'

(ix) The persuasive suffix has a special use, namely that of benediction or curse in some contexts. It can be seen from the following sentences:

- (5) *nəŋ nungay-ro*
you happy-Pers
'Be happy!'
- (6) *nən perikha nəm-mo*
you exam pass-Pers
'May you pass in the exam!'
- (7) *nən-də si-ro*
you-Emph die-Pers
'May you die!'

14.4 Exclamatory sentences

One of the ways in which exclamatory sentences can be formed in Manipuri is to use the wh-words *ləwənbə* 'which' and *kəya* (or *kəyam*) 'how many, how much' in the sense of 'what' and 'how' respectively. Only these two wh-words appear to occur in exclamatory sentences in this language. Further, the predicate of the sentence, if it is verbal, has to be changed into its infinitive form.

Examples:

- (78) *məhak kəya-do phəjə-kh-rəhe*
he how-Loc beautiful-Dei4-Perf-Inf
'How beautiful she is!'
- (79) *nəraŋ nəŋ kəya kən-nə cū-kh-rə-bo*
yesterday rain how hard-Adv rain-Dei4-Perf-Inf
'How heavily it rained yesterday!'
- (80) *kərəmbə nupa-no*
what man-Q
'What a man!'

Verbal predicates allow only a two-fold distinction in these sentences; they may denote either an accomplished (realis) event or state or one that is yet to be accomplished (irrealis). In the former case, the verb occurs with the deictic suffix *khi* 'do and go away' followed by the perfect suffix *le*, whereas in the latter case it occurs with the future suffix *ge* followed by the emphatic *də*. They may optionally occur with the question marker *no*. Examples:

- (81a) *kəya thu-nə cən-kh-rə-bo-no*
how fast-Adv run-Dei4-Perf-Inf-Q
'How fast it has run!'

- (81b) *keya thi-ne cen-ge-de-be-no*
 how fast-Adv run-Fu-Emph-Inf-Q
 'How fast it will run!'
- (82a) *kayam-ne nuṅṅay-kh-rə-be-no*
 how-Adv happy-Dei4-Perf-Inf-Q
 'How nice it is!'
- (82b) *kayam-ne nuṅṅay-ge-de-be-no*
 how-Adv happy-Fu-Emph-Inf-Q
 'How nice it will be!'

In the case of nominal sentences, however, the use of the particle *no* is obligatory

Exclamatory sentences differ from constituent questions (i) in obligatorily requiring the verbal predicates to be changed into infinitive forms and (ii) in allowing the marker *no* to be used optionally after those infinitive forms as mentioned above; they also differ from one another (iii) in the amount of tense, aspect and mood distinctions that can be expressed in the predicate. As we have pointed out above, exclamatory sentences appear to allow only a two-fold distinction, whereas constituent questions allow all the possible distinctions.

In the case of future predicates, however, the two can be identical in form (but different in their intonation) as shown by the following "ambiguous" sentence:

- (83b) *kayam-ne nuṅṅay-ge-de-be-no*
 how-Adv happy-Fu-Emph-Inf-Q
- (i) 'How nice it will be!'
- (ii) 'How nice will it be?'

REFERENCES

- Bhat, D.N.S. 1967. Some notes on Manipuri. *Journal of the Asiatic Society* 9, (12-17).
- 1977. *Pronominalization*. Deccan College, Pune.
- 1989. *Wh-words*. Report submitted to the University Grants Commission.
- 1991. *Grammatical Relations*. Routledge, London.
- 1994. *The Adjectival Category*. John Benjamins, Amsterdam.
- Forthcoming (a) *Tense, Aspect and Mood in Indian Languages*.
- Forthcoming (b) *A Typology of Indian Languages*.
- Bolinger, D. 1967. Adjectives in English: attribution and predication. *Lingua*, 18 (1-34).
- Chelliah, S.L. 1990a. A bibliography of Meiteiron (Manipuri) linguistics. *Linguistics of the Tibeto-Burman area*, 13 (73-86).
- 1990(b). Level ordered morphology and phonology in Manipuri. *Linguistics of the Tibeto-Burman area*, 13 (27-72).
- 1994. *A Study of Manipuri Grammar*. Mouton de Gruyter, Berlin.
- Comrie, B. 1985. *Tense*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.
- Dev, Madhubala P. 1979. *Manipuri Grammar*. Ph.D. dissertation, Deccan College, Pune.
- Dixon, R.M.W. 1982. *Where Have All the Adjectives Gone?*. Mouton Publishers, Berlin.
- 1991. *A New Approach to English Grammar on Semantic principles*. Pergamon Press, London.
- Foley, W.A. and Van Valin, Jr. R.D. 1984. *Functional Syntax and Universal Grammar*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.
- Giridhar, P.P. 1994. *Mao Naga Grammar*. Central Institute of Indian Languages, Mysore.
- Grierson, G.A. 1904. *Linguistic Survey of India*. Vol III, Part II. Reprinted in 1967 by Motilal Banarsidass, Delhi.
- Kapfo 1993. *A Descriptive Analysis of Khezha*. Ph.D. dissertation, Mysore University.
- Levi, J.N. 1978. *The Syntax and Semantics of English Nominal Compounds*. Academic Press, New York.

- Mithun, M. 1984. The evolution of noun incorporation. *Language*, 60 (847-94).
- Perlmutter, D.M. 1978. Impersonal passives and the unaccusative hypothesis. *Berkeley Linguistic Studies*, 4 (157-89)
- Pramodini, N. 1989. Kinship terminology in Meiteilon: A sociolinguistic study. *Linguistics of the Tibeto-Burman Area*, 12 (123-36)
- Rosen, S.T. 1989. Two types of noun incorporation: A lexical analysis. *Language*, 65 (294-317).
- Shastri, G.D.P. 1984. *Mishmi Grammar*. Central Institute of Indian Languages, Mysore
- Singh, Chetan, V. 1976. *Structural Analysis of the Manipuri Language*. Ph.D. dissertation, University of Gauhati, Assam
- Singh, C.Y. 1987. *Some aspects of Meiteiron (Manipuri) Syntax*. Ph.D. dissertation, JNU, New Delhi.
- Singh, Nilamani, M. 1985. *An Outline of Meiteiron Interrogatives*. M.Phil dissertation, Manipur University, Imphal
- Singh, Nonigopal, N. 1987. *A Meitei Grammar of roots and affixes*. Ph.D. dissertation, Manipur University, Imphal.
- Singh, Raghumani, W. 1986. *A Comparative Study of Luphal and Kwatha dialects of Meiteilon*. Ph.D. dissertation, Manipur University, Imphal
- Thadum, P.C. 1980. *A Grammatical Sketch of Meiteilon*. Ph.D. dissertation, JNU, New Delhi.

SUBJECT INDEX

- ablative 117
- accusative 53, 99-100 110-14, 139-40
 - co-occurrence 124
 - pragmatic use 146-8
- action verbs 51, 221-4
 - aspectual 216-7
 - valency 207-18
- adjectives
 - as verbs 41-5
- adverbs
 - as arguments 218
 - as suffixes 45
 - as verbs 45-7, 202-3, 284-9
 - controller 61
 - see* location, time markers
- affected object 110, 119-121
- affrication 12-13
- argument
 - animate 99, 111-2
 - associate 218
 - cause 218
 - hierarchy 231
 - inanimate 111
 - non-core 218-20, 231
 - reason 218
 - relating 125
 - suppression 63
 - unmarked 137-42
- aspect
 - completive 254-6
 - durative 257-8
 - habitual 259
 - perfect 251-4
 - prefixes 263-6
 - progressive 258
 - quantifier 259-63
 - suffixes 158, 251-62
 - verbs 269-73
- aspiration *see* stops
- begin to 178-9, 185
- benefactive 58, 231-5
- beneficiary 120, 130-2
- body part terms 89, 114, 129-30, 168
- case suffixes 52-4, 98-100
 - aspectual meaning 268-9
 - co-occurrence 108
 - distribution 101-2
 - predictable contexts 142-144
 - redundant contexts 139-41
 - unused contexts 144-9
- categories
 - nouns and verbs 40
 - see* adjectives, adverbs
- cause 107, 122-4
- causative 56-8, 222-31
 - as two clauses 227-8
 - contactive 57, 222-4, 232-3
 - hierarchy 231
 - permission 227
 - productivity 226
- causee 110, 113
 - affected 228
 - location 229
- clusters 6-7, 18-19
- comparison 133
- complement
 - case-marking 310-12
 - change of person 294
 - equi-NP deletion 297-9, 309-10
 - spatial change 296-7
 - successive embedding 312-13
 - temporal change 295
- complementation 290
 - adverbial 316
 - aspectual distinctions 308
 - compounded 320
 - infinitival 302-16
 - matrix predicates 304-6
 - modal distinctions 308-9
 - prefixed 317-19
 - sentential 291-301
 - tense distinctions 306-7
- complementizers 58-9, 291-301
 - case marking 299-300

Subject Index

- factive-nonfactive 292-3
- non-specification 300-1
- other uses 301
- completive 144, 179, 185, 254
- compounds 22-36, 68-9
 - adjectival 29
 - coordinate 33
 - disyllabic 25
 - dynamic 30
 - endocentric 25-30
 - exocentric 31-4
 - left-headed 25-30
 - right-headed 30-1
 - trisyllabic 34-7
- conjunctive 102, 133-7
 - as a case marker 53, 135
 - pragmatic use 149
- contrastive reference 143, 145
- controller 103-4, 195-6
- copula 47-50, 64
- coreferential argument 60
- deictic suffixes 185-92
 - aspectual meaning 268
 - temporal meaning 101-2
- deletion of a 18-19
- derivational system 22
 - nominal 37-8
- desiderative 156, 246, 333
 - see imperative
- diphthong 21
- directional suffixes 173-85
 - aspectual meaning 266
- directionality
 - inherently marked 176
 - lacking 178
 - unmarked 175
- durative 181, 251, 259
- emphatic 96
- exclamation 336-7
- external argument 60-3
- future 244-6
 - with aspect 244
 - with copula 245-6
 - as mood 251
- generic 144
- genitive 125-33
 - as a case marker 53, 130
- glides 18
- grammatical relations 54-6
 - hierarchy 231
- habitual 144
- illocutionary suffixes 251, 321-37
- imperative 332-6
 - commands 332-3
 - concessives 333
 - use with other suffixes 334-6
- inchoative 257
- incorporation *see* noun-incorporation
- indefinite pronouns 78-83
 - countable 82
 - non-referential 81
 - referential 79
 - restrictive 83
- inflectional 22
 - nominal 95-7
- instrument 104, 122-3
 - see nominal
- interrogative 321-32
 - answers 325
 - constituent 325-31
 - embedded 329
 - future 328
 - nominal sentences 328
 - sentential 322-5
 - tag questions 331-2
- irregular changes 19
- kinship terms 87-9, 129
 - possessive prefix 89
- lateral
 - alternation with nasal 17
 - alternation with trill 5, 14-17
 - assimilation 15-16
- location marker 90-2, 113
- locative 53, 99-100, 106, 115-24, 199
 - temporal use 92, 118-9
 - unmarked form 115-6
- material 104, 136
- means 105
- medium 104, 136
- modification 43, 276
 - adjectival 276-7
 - adverbial 284-89
 - onomatopoeic 288-9
 - relative clause 276-84
- mood 273-5
 - suffixes 273
 - verbs 274-5
- morphophonemic changes 23-4, 100, 170, 174, 187-8
- natural force 110
- negative 248-9
- nominal inflection 195
- nominalization 127-8, 199-200
- nominalive 53, 99, 101-10, 140, 143

Manipuri Grammar

- co-occurrence 109
- pragmatic use 54, 145
- vs. instrumental 105-10
- non-future 246-8
- habitual 247
- non-specification 302
- non-incorporation 138-9, 165-9, 197-8, 240
- classifier 168-9
- compound 168
- nouns 65
 - common 65-9
 - possessor prefix 67
 - prefix 67
 - underived 65
 - vs. verbs 40-1
- numerals 84-9
 - cardinal 84
 - distributives 86
 - fractions 85
 - multiplicatives 86
 - ordinal 87
- orientation 190-1
- palatalization 9
- passivization 54, 63
- past 191, 250
- patient 50, 118
- perfect 252
- permission 228
- pivot 61
- plural 95-6
- pragmatic relations 54-6, 98, 141-9
- predication
 - presupposed 43
- predictable contexts 142
- present 250
- process meaning 181, 233
 - natural 184
 - sudden 185
- process verbs 51, 161-5, 224-7
 - aspectual 206
 - valency 204-7
- productivity 227
- progressive 260
- pronoun 47, 69-72
 - coreference 60-1
 - demonstrative 71-2
 - dual 71
 - locational 72
 - plural 71
 - special anaphoric 61
- publicly 179-80
- purpose 123-4, 288
- quantifier 262
- realis 244
- recipient 110
- reciprocal 237-9
 - habitual 239
 - obligatory 239
 - see verbs
- reduplication 86
- reflexive 234-6
 - politeness 236
 - see verbs
- relative clause 276-84
 - ambiguity 282-3
 - aspect distinctions 280
 - embedding 283
 - external-internal 277-8
 - mood distinctions 280
 - see modification
 - staking 283
 - tense distinctions 279
 - wh-word 283
- roots and syllables 20-1, 40
- semantic relations 54-6, 98, 219
- sentences
 - nominal 39, 47-50
 - verbal 39, 50-1
- source 110, 113, 115-7, 119, 132
- spatial suffix 160
 - aspectual meaning 269
 - deictic 172
 - directional 172
 - temporal sense 181
 - volitionality 181
- spelling problem 1
- state verbs 44-7, 51, 150-61, 224-7
 - age 153
 - and process verbs 193-6
 - antonymous 155
 - colour 152
 - controllable 155-61
 - dimension 150-1
 - epistemic 155
 - human propensity 153
 - location 154
 - modal 155
 - physical property 151-2
 - quantifying 154
 - speed 153
 - temporal 154
 - valency 193-203
 - value 153

Subject Index

- stops
 - aspiration 5, 12-14,
 - unreleased 9
 - voicing 5, 10-12
- subject
 - see* grammatical relations
- syllable
 - boundary 12
 - relevance 12, 20-21, 40
- tense
 - prominence 3
 - versus mood 252
- tense suffixes 42-3, 158, 243-51
 - other markers 250
- tenseless 243
- theme 50, 62, 137, 142, 169
- time marker 92-5, 137
- tonal distinction 5, 8, 231
- topic 60, 63-4
 - see also* pragmatic relations
- transitivity 56-9
- trill
 - contrast with l *see* lateral
- unaccusatives 56
- unergatives 56
- unexpected 234
- unreal past 244, 256
- valency patterns 160, 193
 - changes 221-42
 - variations 218-20, 221
 - see* action, process, state
- verbal suffixes
 - destructural 169-71
- verbs
 - dynamic 158-285
 - reciprocal 62-134
 - reflexive 61
 - see* process, state verbs
 - subgrouping 150
 - transaction 190
- voicing
 - see* stops
- volitionality 53, 57, 181, 233-4
- vowel length 8-9
- wh-words 73-83, 325-32, 336-7
 - human 73
 - see* indefinite pronouns
- word 20
- word order 56, 63-4

◆ **Person, Klasse, Kongruenz, Kasus, Numerus, Genus**
in den ostbaltischen Sprachen (7 volumes in prep.)

01	VOL. 1: DIE GRUNDLAGEN	W. SCHULZE	288 pp.
02	VOL. 2: DER PERSON	W. SCHULZE	288 pp.

USD / £ / DM
96.25/58.20/128
96.25/58.20/128

◆ **LINCOM Studies in Caucasian Linguistics**

01	A Grammar of Hezhe, with texts and lexicon	HELENA VAN DEN BERG	400 pp.
02	Godoberi	ALEXANDER E. KIRIK	303 pp
03	Kontakthwegter Sprachwandel in der Adygeischen Umgangssprache im Kaukasus und in der Türkei.	MONTKA HONJLO	340 pp

USD / £ / DM
96.25/58.20/138
96.25/58.20/138
96.25/58.20/128

◆ **LINCOM Studies in Germanic Linguistics**

01	Die deutsche Sprache. Vom Indogermanischen bis zum Neuhochdeutschen. Eine Einführung in das Grundstudium, planned for 1997/III	ALFRED OBERBERGER	ca. 240
02	Einführung in die Germanistik, planned for 1997/IV	ALFRED OBERBERGER	ca. 240
03	Swedish Word Accents	ANNE-MARIE ANDREASSON	ca. 240
04	English as a Human Language	J. VAN DER AUWERA & J. VERSCHUREN	ca. 340

USD / £ / DM
ca. 42/23.60/56
ca. 42/23.60/56
ca. 76/44/107
ca. 80/50/128

◆ **LINCOM Studies in Romance Linguistics**

01	African Française (fr.). Le Processus de Dialectalisation du Français en Afrique. Le Cas du Cameroun In prep. 1997/III	PAUL ZANG ZANG	420 pp
03	Workbook for Historical Romance Linguistics	JOHN HEWSON	ca. 100

USD / £ / DM
90/56/128
40/25/60

◆ **LINCOM Studies in Asian Linguistics**

01	A Grammar of Athpare	KAREN EBERT	180 pp
02	Marphatan Thakali	STEFAN GEORG	420 pp.
03	Japanese Phonetics	TSUTOMU AKAMATSU	450 pp.
04	Manipuri Grammar	D. N. S. BHAT & M. S. NINGOMBA	400 pp.
05	Learning to Read Pinyin Romanization and its Equivalent in Wade-Giles	S.-Y. KILLINGLEY	ca. 96
06	Grammatical Relations in Pali and the Emergence of Ergativity in Indo-Aryan	JOHN M. PETERSON	ca. 240
07	Les langues Miao-Yao (Hmong-Mien)	BARBARA NIEDERER	ca. 340

USD / £ / DM
90/56/128
94/56.80/138
80/55/138
94/56.80/125
ca. 34/21/52

◆ **Languages of the Word/Dictionaries**

03	Dictionary of Mbey, ca. 300 illustrations	JOHN KEBDAN	650 pp.
----	---	-------------	---------

USD / £ / DM
129/78/192

◆ **Studien zur Sprachplanung**

01	Wer spricht Esperanto? Kiu parolas Esperanton?	FRANK STOCKER	220 pp.
----	--	---------------	---------

USD / £ / DM
42/25.25/72

◆ **LINCOM Studies in Austronesian Linguistics**

01	The Grammar of Yogan	PHILIP DAVIS, J. W. BAKER, W. L. SPITZ, M. BAEK	ca. 240
----	----------------------	---	---------

USD / £ / DM
ca. 76/44/107

◆ **Linguistic Research Forum (LRF)**

01	A Synoptic Glossary of Athpare, Belhare, Yakhshe	GERD HANSSON (ED.)	140 pp.
----	--	--------------------	---------

USD / £ / DM
54.15/32.70/88

◆ **LINCOM Studies in Theoretical Linguistics**

01	Thoughts on grammaticalization	CHRISTIAN LEHMANN	196 pp.
----	--------------------------------	-------------------	---------

USD / £ / DM
42/25.25

00	Typology of Verbal Constructions. <i>Typology of Verbal Categories and</i> <i>Constructions, planned for 1997/IV</i>	V. NEMALIEV & Z. GUSEVICH (eds.)	430 pp.	90/95/89/125
03	From Space to Time	MARTIN HASPELMATH	190 pp	43/27 50/74
04	Typology of Iterative Constructions	VICTOR S. XOLAKOVSKY (ED.)	490 pp	90/50/142

◆ Linguistic Edition / Edition Linguistik

01	Motivierung im Deutschen	URSULA DOLESCHAL	88 pp	USD / £ / DM 36/22/48
02	The Souletin Verbal Complex (Basque dialect in SW-Frankreich)	ULRICH J. LÜDERS	175 pp	61 65/37 70/82
03	Respekt, Die Grammatikalisierung von Höflichkeit	MARTIN HAASE	120 pp	43 60/26 60/58
04	Unificação e diversificação na Lingüística: pesquisa documental de produção lingüística brasileira contemporânea (1968-1988)	CRISTINA ALTMAN	220 pp	46 60/28 20/64
06	The Yoruba Koiné - Its History and Linguistic Innovations	J. GRINGA FAGBOLUN	200 pp	51 90/31 40/69
07	A Short Textbook on Pidgin and Creoles, planned for 1997/III.	A. KAYE & M. TOSCO	175 pp	61 65/37 70/82
08	Möglichkeiten und Mechanismen kontakthetwigen Sprachwandels	NICOLE NAU	220 pp	46 60/28 20/64
09	Guide to Readability in African Languages	E. NGES CHIA (ED.)	150 pp	42 85/25 90/
10	Syntax des Souletinischen. Beitrag zur Baskischen Grammatik	ULRICH J. LÜDERS	100 pp	39 10/23 70/52
11	Parameter des einfachen Satzes aus funktionaler Sicht	PETER-ARNOLD MUND	120 pp	42 10/25 45/56
12	Vorträge der 4. Münchner Linguistik-Tage.	R. PITTNER & K. PITTNER	150 pp	42 10/25 45/56
13	Texte-Konstruktion, Verarbeitung, Typik	S. MICHAELIS & D. TOPINKA	180 pp	56/34/74
14	Diskursprominenz und Rollensemantik - eine funktionale Typologie von Partizipationsystemen	R. PUSTET	172 pp	42 10/25 45/56
17	Beiträge zu Sprache und Sprachen 2. Vorträge der 5. Münchner Linguistik-Tage.	R. PITTNER & K. PITTNER (HG)	270	36/39/88

◆ LINCOM Handbooks in Linguistics

01	The Languages of the "First Nations". Comparison of Native American Languages from an Ethnolinguistic Perspective.	STEFAN LIEDEKE	148 pp	USD / £ / DM 42 90/25 90/57
02	The Nilo-Saharan Languages	M. LIONEL BENDER	260 pp	94/56 80/125
03	Handbook of Semitic Languages, planned for 1997/IV	JOSHUA FOX	400 pp	94/56 80/125
04	Manual de las lenguas indígenas sudamericanas I	ALAIN FARRE	ca 550 pp	Ca 69/110/45
05	Manual de las lenguas indígenas sudamericanas II	ALAIN FARRE	ca 550 pp	Ca 69/110/45

◆ Linguistic Data on Diskette Service

11	A Cross-Linguistic Dictionary of Adverbial Subordinators	BERND KORTMANN	WP 6.1	26/15 5/38
----	---	----------------	--------	------------

◆ LINCOM Studies in African Linguistics

01	The Lexical Typology of Kikande	NGESSIMO M. MUTAKA	220 pp	USD / £ / DM 55 60/33 65/94
02	Functional Categories and the Syntax of Focus in Tuki	ENOND BLOA	240 pp	54 15/32 75/107
05	The Tonal Phonology of Jita	LAILA J. DOWNING	240 pp	66 20/40/102
06	Bantu Phonology and Morphology	FRANCIS KATAMBA (ed.)	120 pp	42 10/25 45/66
07	Le système verbal dans les langues oungulennes	RAYMOND BOYD (ed.)	207 pp	63 15/38 20/94
11	Classification interne du groupe bantloide. Vol. I.	PASCALLE PIRON	350 pp	94/57/128
12	Classification interne du groupe bantloide. Vol. II.	PASCALLE PIRON	350 pp	97/59/138
13	Tonal Morphology of the Setswana Verb	DENIS CRENSHAW ET AL.	240 pp	68/41/92
14	A Reference Grammar of Mbay	JOHN M. KEEGAN	250 pp	72/42/112
15	Benue-Congo Prosodic Phonology and	CHIA-TAI-OLA OKIE	240 pp	67/42 80/94

105- **Memorias de la Academia de la Lengua**
Le dictionnaire de la Phonétique
 - Mélanges. Étude phonétique et
 phonologique, planned for 1997/IV
 10 **Basque Phonetics and Phonology,**
 1997/IV

J.T. MATTHEWS

ca. 220

USD / £ / DM

◆ LINCOM Studies in Native American Linguistics

- | | | | | |
|----|---|-----------------------------|---------|-----------------------------------|
| 01 | Gramática mulsca | ANGEL LÓPEZ-GARCÍA | 120 pp | USD / £ / DM |
| 02 | Language and Culture in Native North America. Ca. 100 photographs | MICHAEL DÖRR ET AL. (EDS.) | 480 pp. | 46 60/28 20/62
96.30/58 20/128 |
| 03 | Gramática de la lengua Wikarika (Hulchol) In prep | J. L. ITURRIZ & P. GÓMEZ L. | | |
| 04 | Possession in Yucotec, planned for 1997/IV | CHRISTIAN LIEBMAN | 120 pp | 46 60/78 20/62 |
| 05 | Linguistic Acculturation in Mopan Maya | LIEVE VERBECK | 120 pp | 39/27/58 |
| 06 | A Reference Grammar of Warao (Carib language in Venezuela) | ANDRÉS ROMERO-FIGUEROA | 150 pp | 45/31/68 |
| 07 | Zuni: Roots in the Northwest. The Linguistic Origin of a Southwestern Pueblo People | STEFAN LIEBKE | ca. 60 | ca. 31/18/44 |
| 08 | Wakashan, Salishan and Penutian: Lexical Evidence for their Genetic Relationship | STEFAN LIEBKE | ca. 200 | ca. 62/38/88 |
| 09 | Thought-Ethn-Athabaska: Isolated or related to other Native American language groups? In prep | STEFAN LIEBKE | ca. 60 | ca. 31/18/44 |

◆ LINCOM Studies in Slavic Linguistics

- | | | | | |
|----|---|-----------------------------------|---------|-----------------------------------|
| 01 | Back from the Brink | LAURA A. JANDA | 240 pp | USD / £ / DM |
| 03 | Grammar of the Upper Sorbian Language | H. SCHUSTER-SINIC/G. TOOPS (TR.). | 250 pp | 61.70/37 70/82
76 60/46 60/112 |
| 05 | The Semantics of Suffixation | EDNA ANDREWS | 220 pp | 80.50/48 60/107 |
| 06 | The Balkan Slavic Appellative | ROBERT D. GREENBERG | 240 pp. | 66.20/40/96 |
| 07 | The Major Case Constructions of Russian. In prep. | GEORGE FOWLER | 240 pp | 64/44/96 |
| 08 | Space and Time in Russian
A Description of the Locus Expressions of Russian In prep. | WILLIAM J. SULLIVAN | 280 pp. | 80.50/48 60/107 |

◆ LINCOM Coursebooks in Linguistics

- | | | | | |
|----|--|---------------------------|--------|----------|
| 01 | Introduction to Linguistic Field Methods | BERT VAUX & JUSTIN COOPER | | in prep. |
| 02 | Coursebook in Feature Geometry | JOHN NEWMANN | 160 pp | 38/25/67 |
| 03 | Coursebook in Romance Linguistics | J. KLAUSENBURGER | | in prep. |

◆ LINCOM Language Coursebooks

- | | | | | |
|----|-----------------------------|-------------------|---------|-----------------------------|
| 01 | Beginning Sanskrit. Vol I. | DERMOT KILLINGLEY | 180 pp | USD / £ / DM
42/23 60/56 |
| 02 | Beginning Sanskrit. Vol II. | DERMOT KILLINGLEY | ca. 240 | 40/26/66 |
| 03 | Beginning Urdu I | C. M. NAIM | ca. 350 | 50/33/80 |
| 04 | Beginning Urdu II | C. M. NAIM | ca. 350 | 50/33/80 |

◆ Text- und Tonbibliothek sprachlicher Varietäten /CD-ROM Language Library

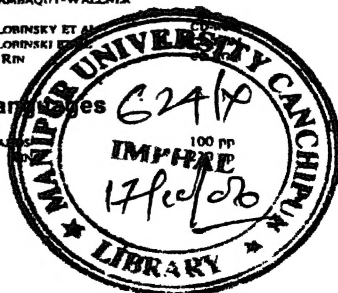
(herausgegeben/edited by Michael Dörr (Gesamtkatalog Berlin) & Peter Schlobinski (Universität Hannover)

USD / £ / DM

- | | | | | |
|----|--|---|--|------------------------|
| 01 | Das Deutsche in Rio Grande do Sul (Südbrasilien) | VIRGINIA SAMBAQUINI-WALLNER | | |
| 02 | Jugendspezifische Sprechweisen Berlinisch | PETER SCHLOBINSKY ET AL. | | 97/58/146 |
| 03 | Das Deutsche in der Colonia Tovar (Venezuela) | PETER SCHLOBINSKY ET AL.
DENISE DA RIN | | 97/58/146
97/58/146 |

◆ LINCOM Studies in Australian Languages

- | | | | | |
|----|---|----------------|--------|----------------------|
| 01 | The Ergative in Proto-Australian | KRISTINA SANDS | 100 pp | USD / £ / DM |
| 02 | The Declarative Intonation of Dyirbal. planned for 1997/IV. | HEATHER B. ... | | 39/24/58
67/37/82 |



Manipuri (called Meiteilon in the language itself) is a Tibeto-Burman language belonging to the Kuki-Chin subgroup. The language is spoken primarily in the valley region of the State of Manipur, India (ca. 700,000 speakers, ca. 300,000 speakers in Burma, ca. 100,000 speakers in Assam, ca. 50,000 in Bangladesh and 30,000 in Tripura).

The grammar of Manipuri shows a number of interesting typological characteristics: There are only two major lexical categories, namely nouns and verbs, with adjectives and adverbs merging rather unrecognizably with verbs. Inflectional markers also split into two distinct categories, namely nominal and verbal inflections with exclusive membership.

The volume contains 14 chapters: Introduction, Phonology, Word-formation, Sentence structure, Nominal category, Use of case suffixes, Verbal category, Directional and deictic verb distinctions, Valency patterns, Tense, aspect and mood, Modifying constructions, Complementation, Illocutionary distinctions.

LINCOM EUROPA
München Newcastle

ISBN 3-89586-191-X